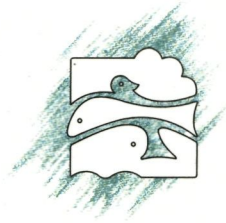


Institute of Nature Conservation



**Macrozoobenthos and waterbirds
in the estuarine environment:
spatio-temporal patterns
at different scales**

Tom YSEBAERT

*instituut
voor
natuurbeho*

ging v.z.w
ut

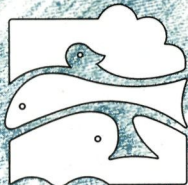


OG
YSEB

This publication should be cited as follows:

Ysebaert, T., 2000. Macrozoobenthos and waterbirds in the estuarine environment: spatio-temporal patterns at different scales. PhD thesis, University of Antwerp. Communications of the Institute of Nature Conservation 16. Brussel, Belgium. 175 pp.

Colofon



Author:

Tom Ysebaert
Institute of Nature Conservation
Kliniekstraat 25
1070 Brussel
e-mail: tom.ysebaert@instnat.be

Cover photographs:

Tom Ysebaert

Editor:

Eckhart Kuijken
General Director of the Institute of Nature Conservation

Prepress and printing:

Enschedé Van Muysewinkel

Depot number:

D/2000/3241/288

ISBN:

90-403-0125-5

NUGI:

821

© 2000, Institute of Nature Conservation, Brussel

Printed on recycled, chlorine-free paper

Institute of Nature Conservation
Kliniekstraat 25, B-1070 Brussel, Belgium.
E-mail: info@instnat.be
Internet: <http://www.instnat.be>
Tel: 02/558.18.11
Fax: 02/558.18.05

UNIVERSITEIT ANTWERPEN

Faculteit Wetenschappen
Departement Biologie

Macrozoobenthos and waterbirds in the estuarine environment: spatio-temporal patterns at different scales

Macrozoöbenthos en watervogels in het Schelde-estuarium
ruimtelijke en temporele patronen

Proefschrift voorgelegd tot het behalen van de graad van
doctor in de wetenschappen aan de
Universitaire Instelling Antwerpen te verdedigen door

Tom YSEBAERT

Promotor: Prof. Dr. P. Meire

Antwerpen, 2000

... Being neither sea nor land, with most of the organisms hidden inside the sediment and tedious to extract, with no inviting place to sit down and reflect for a while, the sediments between the tidemarks and the turbid tidal waters attracted few scientists. Indeed, by all standards, tidal flat ecologists appear somewhat backward: they have neither ship nor diving gear at their disposal, but walk out in rubber boots with a spade in one hand and a bucket in the other as if to collect potatoes; and when they come back from their field work, they are besmeared all over with sticky mud and yet confess they love it ...

K. Reise, Tidal Flat Ecology, 1985



Natuurpunt, Bibliotheek
Graatakker 11
B-2300
België

Dear Colleague,

Please find enclosed the report "*Macrozoobenthos and waterbirds in the estuarine environment: spatio-temporal patterns at different scales*". This report is no. 16 of the Communications of the Institute of Nature Conservation (www.instnat.be). The report is a collection of several scientific manuscripts (both published and submitted), which together constituted the Ph.D. of Tom Ysebaert (obtained in June 2000). The thesis focuses on the role of abiotic environmental variables (environmental constraints) in structuring macrobenthic communities in the estuarine environment. Data from different studies, that describe patterns and gradients in space and time, are used to get insight into the spatial and temporal variability of macrobenthos and to reveal how this variability can be explained and predicted by the environment.

Currently, dr. Tom Ysebaert holds a 2-year post-doc position at the Netherlands Institute of Ecology, Centre for Estuarine and Coastal Ecology (NIOO-CEMO) at Yerseke, The Netherlands.

With kind regards,

Tom Ysebaert

For further information, please contact Tom Ysebaert at:

Dr. Tom Ysebaert
NIOO-CEMO
Netherlands Institute of Ecology
Centre for Estuarine and Coastal Ecology
Korringaweg 7
P.O. Box 140
4400 AC Yerseke
The Netherlands
tel. +31 113 577485
fax. +31 113 573616
e-mail: ysebaert@cemo.nioo.knaw.nl
URL: <http://www.nioo.knaw.nl>



Contents

Chapter one	Introduction	5
Chapter two	The benthic macrofauna along the estuarine gradient of the Schelde estuary <i>T. Ysebaert, P.M. Meire, D. Maes and J. Buijs</i> 1993, <i>Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.</i> 27(2-4): 327-341	18
Chapter three	Large-scale spatial patterns in estuaries: estuarine macrobenthic communities in the Schelde estuary, NW-Europe <i>T. Ysebaert, P. Meire, J. Craeymeersch, P.M.J. Herman and H. Verbeek</i>	31
Chapter four	Spatio-temporal patterns of intertidal macrobenthic communities in the Schelde estuary, NW-Europe <i>T. Ysebaert, P. Meire and N. De Regge</i>	51
Chapter five	A comparison of the macrobenthic distribution and community structure between two estuaries in SW Netherlands <i>P.M. Meire, J. Seys, T. Ysebaert and J. Coosen</i> 1991, In: <i>M. Elliot and J.-P. Ducrotoy, Eds., Estuaries and Coasts: Spatial and Temporal Intercomparisons.</i> Olsen & Olsen, Fredensborg, Denmark, p. 221-230.	73
Chapter six	Zonation of intertidal macrobenthos in estuaries of Schelde and Ems <i>T. Ysebaert, P. Meire, J. Coosen and K. Essink</i> 1998, <i>Aquat. Ecol.</i> 32: 53-71.	83
Chapter seven	The subtidal macrobenthos in the mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary (Belgium): influenced by man? <i>T. Ysebaert, L. De Neve and P. Meire</i> 2000, <i>J. Mar. Biol. Assoc. UK</i> 80, 587-597	98
Chapter eight	Biological and physical characteristics of intertidal, cohesive sediments in the mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary (Belgium) <i>T. Ysebaert, M. Fettweis, P. Meire, M. Sas and H. Mitchener</i> Submitted to <i>Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.</i>	111
Chapter nine	Macrobenthic species response surfaces along estuarine gradients: prediction by logistic regression <i>T. Ysebaert, P. Meire, P.M.J. Herman and H. Verbeek</i> <i>Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.</i> , in press	124
Chapter ten	Waterbird communities along the estuarine salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary, NW-Europe <i>T. Ysebaert, P.L. Meininger, P. Meire, K. Devos, C.M. Berrevoets, R.C.W. Strucker and E. Kuijken</i> 2000, <i>Biodivers. Conserv.</i> 9, 1275-1296	140
Summary	.....	153
Samenvatting	.....	156
References	.....	159
List of reports	.....	173
Acknowledgements	.....	175



Chapter I

General introduction and outline

Introduction

Coastal and estuarine ecosystems represent the vast biomes that join continental lands and oceanic islands with their surrounding seas. Although estuaries can be considered as transition zones or ecotones between the fresh-water and marine habitats, many of their most important physical and biological attributes are not transitional, but unique.

Estuaries form only a small part of the total land area. For example, the several estuaries along Britain's coastal zone make up only 2.3% of the total area of British land (DAVIDSON et al. 1991). The total estuarine habitat of the North Sea shores and Atlantic seaboard (from mid-Norway at 60°N to southern Portugal at 37°N) is estimated at c. 1,895,000 ha (DAVIDSON et al. 1991). The area of British estuaries amounts to approximately 28%, the Wadden Sea between The Netherlands, Germany and Denmark 39.5 %, and the Delta area in south-west Netherlands 3.8%. The Belgian contribution to the estuarine habitat is estimated at 0.1%.

Human pressure and impact on estuaries is very high, as most of the urbanization is concentrated in the coastal zone. On the other hand, it is recognized that estuaries have unique functional and structural biodiversity values. Therefore, these ecosystems are particularly important for integrating sound ecological management with sustainable economics.

This chapter provides the definition and description of an estuary, and then gives a brief introduction to general features of the estuarine environment, revealing the importance of macrobenthos within estuaries, and the importance of estuaries for waterbirds. The major human impacts on estuaries are presented, after which the principles of integrated water management and ecosystem management are defined in view of the management of these unique ecosystems. Finally, the aim and outline of the present study are given.

What is an estuary?

Coastlines are transient on the geological time scale. The precise physical location of estuaries and other coastal landforms is substantially dependent on sea level and is

constantly changing. Present-day estuaries are geologically ephemeral coastal features. They were formed during the last interglacial stage when, between 15,000 and approximately 5000 years ago, the sea level rose 120 m to the present level (DAY et al. 1989).

There are many ways in which estuaries have been defined, but by their very nature as places of transition between land, sea and fresh water, no simple definition readily fits all types of estuarine systems. DAY et al. (1989) describe estuaries as a continuum of types ranging from entirely marine-influenced systems, such as lagoons formed behind wave-generated sand of shingle bars, to deltas created by river processes. In between lagoons and deltas lie estuarine lagoons, estuaries, and estuarine deltas, representing a mixture and gradation of the two extreme coastal environments. Perhaps the most quoted definition of an estuary in the scientific literature is given by PRITCHARD (1967):

« An estuary is a semi-enclosed coastal body of water which has a free connection with the open sea and within which sea water is measurably diluted with fresh water derived from land drainage. »

Certainly one of the most characteristic attributes of most coastal areas and estuaries is the action of the tide (¹), which is not mentioned in Pritchard's definition. In an attempt to address this limitation, FAIRBRIDGE (1980) gave a more comprehensive definition of an estuary:

« An estuary is an inlet of the sea reaching into a river valley as far as the upper limit of tidal rise, usually being divisible into three sectors: (a) a marine or lower estuary, in free connection with the open sea; (b) a middle estuary subject to strong salt and fresh water mixing; and (c) an upper or fluvial estuary, characterized by fresh water but subject to daily tidal action. The limits between these sectors are variable, and subject to constant changes in the river discharge. »

While most estuarine biologists have used Pritchard's definition of estuaries, recent studies in tidal freshwater regions of estuaries have suggested that the definition of Fairbridge is more suitable (MCLUSKY 1999). Pritchard's landward boundary is the chemical one: where the chlorinity falls below 0.001‰ and the ratios of the major dissolved ions change significantly from their values in seawater. Fairbridge's landward boundary is physical: the upstream limit of a measurable tide. For some estuaries the

(¹) *Latin aestus* : heat, boiling, tide



difference is trivial, but for others the upper limit of the "Fairbridge estuary" can be tens of kilometers landward of the "Pritchard estuary" upper limit, which is certainly the case for the Schelde estuary. Nowadays, it is recognized that freshwater tidal reaches are part of the estuarine system. Following the Venice symposium (1958), via PRITCHARD (1967) and FAIRBRIDGE (1980), to MEIRE & VINCX (1993), we can now define estuarine regions as per Table 1.1 (MCLUSKY 1993, 1999).

Estuary types include fjords, rias, coastal plain estuaries, lagoon or bar-built estuaries, embayments, etc. This thesis deals with coastal plain estuaries, sometimes called 'drowned river valley estuaries'. Maximum depths in these inlets are generally less than 30 m and the central channel is often sinuous. Extensive mudflats and marshes often occur and the estuary is usually floored by varying thickness of recent sediment, often mud in the upper reaches, but becoming increasingly sandy towards the mouth.

and dynamic systems. The small volume of water per m² of sediment surface, the presence of intertidal flats and very shallow subtidal areas, and the generally well-mixed nature of the water column, are physical conditions that intensify the exchange of matter and energy between the water column and the sediment system (intense benthic-pelagic coupling, HEIP et al. 1995). As so, estuaries support important ecosystem functions: biogeochemical cycling and movement of nutrients, purification of air and water; mitigation of floods, maintenance of biodiversity, etc. (DAILY et al. 1997; DE GROOT 1997; MEIRE et al. 1998). A world wide estimation of the economic value of the ecosystem functions (services and goods) pointed out the important contribution of wetlands and estuaries to these functions (COSTANZA et al. 1997).

Perhaps the most distinctive feature that contrasts estuaries from other biomes is the nature and variability of the physicochemical forces that influence these ecosys-

Table 1.1. Classification of estuarine divisions (MCLUSKY 1993, 1999).

Division	Tidal	Salinity (psu)	Venice system
River	Non-tidal	< 0.5	Limnetic
Head	The highest point to which tides reach		
Tidal fresh	Tidal	< 0.5	Limnetic
Upper	Tidal	0.5 – 5	Oligohaline
Inner	Tidal	5 – 18	Mesohaline
Middle	Tidal	18 – 25	Polyhaline
Lower	Tidal	25 – 30	Polyhaline
Mouth	Tidal	> 30	Euhaline

Estuaries that link freshwater and marine ecosystems represent perhaps the most obvious landscape boundary in aquatic ecology. Despite their intimate connection with freshwaters, however, estuaries are commonly studied as part of the marine sciences, and there has been little interaction among freshwater and estuarine researchers. As a consequence, the upper, freshwater tidal parts of estuaries are often neglected in both marine and freshwater ecological studies (e.g. ODUM 1988).

The estuarine environment

General characteristics and ecosystem functions

Estuaries are the main transition zones between the freshwater of the land and the salt water of the oceans. They concentrate waters from very large land surfaces into relatively small areas. Estuaries, in general, are shallow, open

tems. Within small geographic regions, many estuaries experience widely varying conditions of temperature, salinity, concentrations of a wide variety of chemicals, and plant and animal densities, much of which is mediated by water movement over relatively short time scales (MCLUSKY 1989; DAY et al. 1989).

Estuaries consist of a complex mixture of many different habitat types. These habitats do not exist in isolation, but rather have physical, chemical and biological links between them, for example in their hydrology, in sediment transport, in the transfer of nutrients and in the way mobile species move between them both seasonally and during single tidal cycles. Even small estuaries are typically composed of a mosaic of between four and nine major habitat types (subtidal, intertidal mudflats, intertidal sandflats, marshes, shingles, rocky shores, lagoons, sand-dunes and grazing marshes/coastal grassland) (DAVIDSON et al. 1991). Within these broad categories of habitats, a diverse array of smaller habitat forms exist along a vertical gradient going from the deep subtidal up to the upper shore and along a longitudinal gradient going from the marine zone, over the brackish zone to the freshwater tidal zone. Most charac-



teristic habitats of estuaries are tidal flats and marshes. Tidal flats are important components of macro- and mesotidal estuaries and coastal systems all over the world. They are complex macromorphological structures, shaped in close relation to hydrodynamic factors in the estuary. A single tidal flat can consist of a series of habitats ranging from small sand dunes and mega-ripples to extensive flat muddy areas and may be inhabited by very different biological communities.

Despite the many different habitat types, the relatively large and unpredictable variations in salinity (physiological stress) and water movement (physical stress) tend to limit the number of animal and plant species capable of adapting to these rigorous conditions (MCLUSKY 1989; DAY et al. 1989). As a result, in general fewer species live in estuaries than in either the freshwater rivers above the tidal limit or the truly marine habitats outside estuaries. However, it has been suggested that despite low taxonomical diversity estuarine ecosystems have high functional diversity (COSTANZA et al. 1993).

Although estuaries generally contain relatively few species, the abundance and biomass of organisms is usually very high. Estuaries and coastal marine ecosystems are also cited among the most productive biomes of the world, and serve as important life-support systems also for human beings (DAY et al. 1989; COSTANZA et al. 1993). Other highly productive systems, such as coral reefs and tropical rain forests, differ greatly in how their productivity is achieved. Reefs and tropical rain forests efficiently recycle the limited resource of materials through a very diverse ecosystem. In contrast the low diversity estuarine ecosystems achieve their very high productivities through the continuous arrival of new supplies of nutrients.

Being open systems, estuaries also serve as important connections between rivers and the sea for many anadromous (ocean dwelling but spawning in estuaries and rivers) and catadromous (freshwater dwelling but spawning in seawater) species. Estuaries are important nursery grounds for several (commercial) fish and crustacean species, as they find plenty of food and shelter in the shallow subtidal and intertidal zones. Especially marshes are important feeding and spawning areas (e.g. CATTRIJSSE et al. 1997).

Macrobenthos

Macrobenthos is a central element of estuarine ecosystems and plays a key role in benthic and pelagic food chains, being an important food resource for epibenthic crustaceans, fish and birds. Humans harvest many species of shellfish and crustaceans. According to their size, benthic organisms are classified as micro-, meio- and macrobenthos. Macrobenthos are commonly defined as organisms retained on a 1000 µm mesh size, although they are sometimes defined as organisms retained on either a 500 or 300

µm mesh. Macrobenthos is composed of Mollusca, Polychaeta, Echinodermata, Crustacea and a few other groups.

Macrobenthos plays an important role in benthic remineralization processes (HERMAN et al. 1999), both directly as an important component of the system, and indirectly through its structuring effect on the sediment community. The presence of (macro)benthic organisms may largely affect sediment transport processes, by influencing the physical stability and erodability of natural cohesive sediments (e.g. LUCKENBACK 1986; MOURITSEN et al. 1998; PATERSON & BLACK 1999).

Similar to all ecological communities, intertidal and shallow subtidal soft-sediment communities are influenced by a variety of physical and biological processes that operate over different space and time scales. Physiological stresses can be particularly important in highly fluctuating environments such as estuaries in general, and intertidal habitats in particular. Figure 1.1 gives a schematic representation of the main environmental variables that are involved in structuring macrobenthic communities. River run-off and tidal action will determine to a large extent the chemical and physical characteristics of estuaries. The presence of macrobenthic species and assemblages in estuaries depends on their tolerance for different salinities (BOESCH 1977; WOLFF 1983; HOLLAND et al. 1987), as well as a suite of other physical factors that could affect their physiology, such as temperature and oxygen and the degree of immersion/emersion arising from the tidal regime (REISE 1985; PETERSON 1991). The major physical factors thought to influence distributions of macrobenthos in soft-sediment habitats are sediments (e.g. GRAY 1974; RHOADS 1974; MEIRE et al. 1994), nutrients and food supply (both quantitative as qualitative) (e.g. PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978, 1987; DAUWE et al. 1998; HERMAN et al. 1999, *in press*) and hydrodynamic processes (NOWELL & JUMARS 1984; WARWICK et al. 1991; HALL 1994; SNELGROVE & BUTMAN 1994). Hydrodynamic variables such as current velocity, bed shear stress, and wind-wave activity have been recognized as influencing larval settlement and post-settlement transport (e.g. GRANT 1983; COMITTO et al. 1995), availability of particulate food resources (e.g. WARWICK & UNCLES 1980) as well as the stability of the substratum by mobilizing bed material, including macrofauna (e.g. WARWICK et al. 1991; BELL et al. 1997). Food availability, especially the role of primary productivity, either through the phytoplankton or the microphytobenthos, may be the prime limiting factor for benthic biomass (HERMAN et al. 1999, *in press*).

Benthic populations are also, to a certain extent, controlled by biotic interactions, such as predation and inter- and intraspecific competition (PETERSON 1979; REISE 1985; reviews in WILSON 1991; OLAFSSON et al. 1994). The relative importance of processes determining the spatial-temporal distribution of macrofaunal species may depend on the scale considered (SCHNEIDER 1994; THRUSH et al. 1999).



Biological interactions and life history strategies are thought to operate within constraints imposed by large-scale physical factors, but will regulate local patterns of benthic community succession and structure (ZAJAC & WHITLATCH 1985; OLAFSSON et al. 1994; LEGENDRE et al. 1997, THRUSH et al. 1997).

Macrobenthic communities are good indicators of biotic integrity and reflect the present state of the estuarine ecosystem. Macrobenthos is often used in monitoring programmes as ecological bioindicator for possible changes in the system. As a consequence, a lot of studies have investigated the structure of macrobenthic communities in relation to the abiotic environment, coupling the dominance patterns (e.g. ABC method, WARWICK 1986) or functional life-history characteristics (e.g. trophic structure) (PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978; BOESCH & ROSENBERG 1981, RAKOCINSKI et al. 1997; GASTON et al. 1998) of the macrobenthos to human impacts.

Waterbirds

Birds benefit from the high level of primary and secondary productivity of estuaries, and for many waterbird species estuaries are of vital importance for one or more stages of their life cycle. Most significant in temperate estuaries are the large numbers and variety of species of migrant and wintering waterbirds (waders and wildfowl),

that depend on the abundant biomass of estuarine producers and consumers as a food supply for winter survival and for further migration to more southerly wintering grounds (PIENKOWSKI & EVANS 1984; PERSMA 1987, 1994; SMIT & PERSMA 1989; DAVIDSON et al. 1991; ENS et al. 1994; BEINTEMA & VAN VESSEM 1999). Within the East Atlantic Flyway (SMIT & PERSMA 1989), the annual migration route of populations of waders and waterfowl between the breeding and wintering quarters, including the stopover areas, the Delta area (SW Netherlands), the Wadden Sea and several British estuaries are very important either as a refueling site (in spring and autumn), or as a wintering site. This immediately stresses the international importance of tidal areas such as the Schelde estuary.

Estuarine waterbirds feed mainly on three classes of food: plants, invertebrates and fish. Therefore, they can be classified into three functional groups: herbivores, benthivores, and piscivores. Macrobenthos is the main food source for benthivores such as waders and diving ducks. Herbivores depend mainly on the presence of suitable marshes. Therefore, distribution patterns of waterbird species are to a great extent related to the distribution of their food (EVANS et al. 1984; MEIRE et al. 1989; DAVIDSON et al. 1991).

Waterbirds are a significant link between estuaries and human society. Being situated high in the estuarine food-web, waterbirds are important consumers and will react on changes or human impacts in the water system (e.g. MEIRE

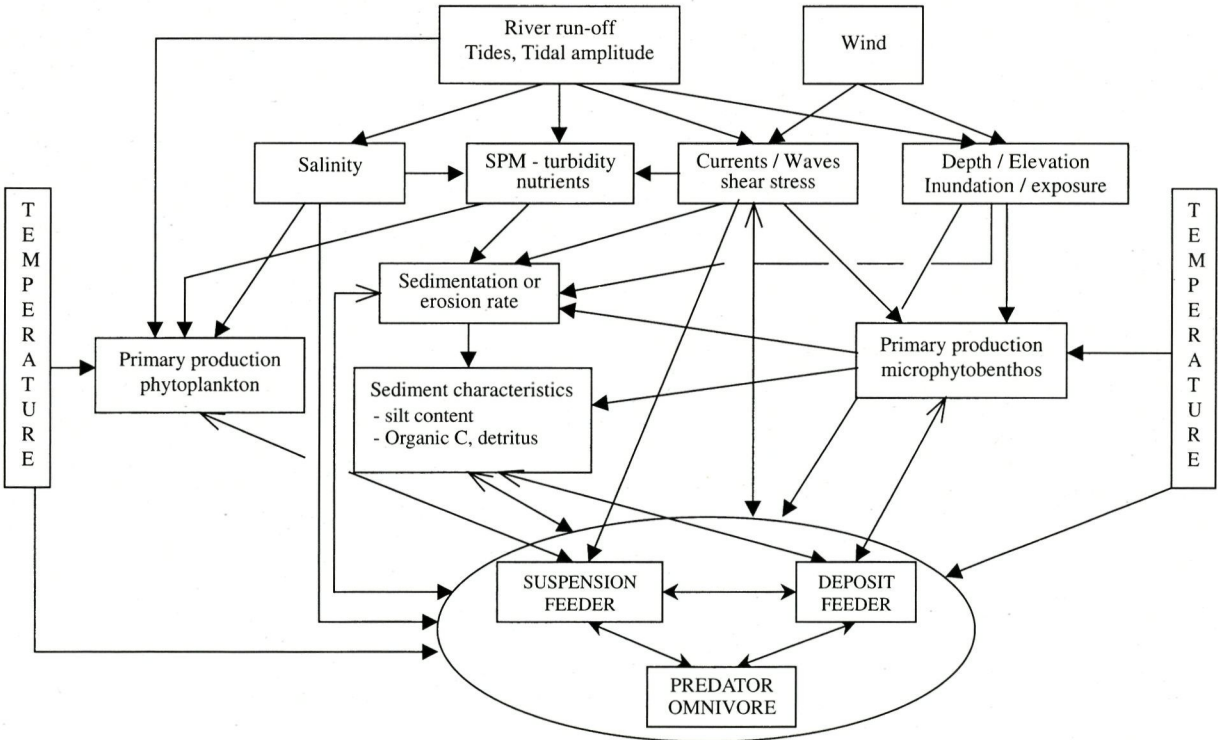


Figure 1.1 A schematic representation of the major environmental variables and their role in structuring macrobenthic communities in the estuarine environment.

et al. 1989; DAVIDSON et al. 1991). This, and because the general public is sensitive to birds, waterbirds are widely used as an important indicator and tool to protect wetland habitats (KUSHLAN 1993; MOSER et al. 1993; SCOTT & ROSE 1996). It is widely accepted that the number of waterbirds using a wetland site is a good indicator of that site's biological importance. Several international agreements and conventions on the protection and conservation of habitats in general and wetlands in particular rely to a great extent on the occurrence of (water)bird populations. Perhaps the best known convention for the conservation of wetlands is the Ramsar Convention (Convention of Wetlands of International Importance Especially as Waterfowl Habitat, Ramsar 1971, Paris Protocol 1982, Regina Amendments 1987) (MATTHEWS 1993; DAVIS 1994).

Humans and estuaries

Humans have lived in or near coastal zones and estuaries for tens of thousands of years. Especially the increasing industrialization and urbanization over the last 200 years have affected great changes to many formerly rural estuaries and shores. It is estimated that nowadays 67% of the global population lives on the coast or within 60 km of the coast and the percentage is still increasing (HAMMOND 1992). Within 30 years this population will be doubled (NORSE 1994). Furthermore, many of the largest cities in the world, where population growth rates are highest, are near the coast. Urban centres have developed along with their consequent port infrastructures, coastal manipulation, waste disposal, and commercial and recreational use of resources. This has led to considerable habitat loss, degradation and fragmentation in the coastal zone (GRAY 1997).

Estuaries are subject to a wide array of human impacts, the most important of which are: land-claim, coastal protection, sea defence and barrage schemes, urbanization, industrial, port and related economic developments, shipping, waste discharge, pollution with toxic substances, global climate change, fisheries, species introductions and invasions, tourism and marine litter. As a consequence of the increased discharge of organic wastes, many European estuaries were virtually dead by the early and middle part of the 20th century (MCLUSKY 1999). Along with the discharge of waste, destruction of the estuarine habitat through land-claim schemes has in some cases removed over 90% of the natural habitat (DAVIDSON et al. 1991). Many of the estuaries of Europe have been drastically changed by construction works (land-claim and flood protection). One clear trend in European estuaries has been the modernization of shipping practices, resulting in more and deeper dredging of the channels or construction of deeper-water harbours. Examples of both practices can be seen all over Europe.

Human influences on estuarine biodiversity are reflected in both acute and chronic effects over various temporal and spatial scales, that ultimately lead to broad-scale loss of productive habitats and altered or impaired community structure and function.

More details on the threats to coastal and estuarine systems are reviewed by e.g. DAY et al. (1989), DAVIDSON et al. (1991), SUCHANEK (1994), GRAY (1997) and MCLUSKY (1999).

Integrated water management and ecosystem management

We should manage so as not to deny future generations the opportunities and resources we enjoy today

The negative impact of human activities and the widespread deterioration of estuarine habitats clearly point out the need of a sound estuarine management. In recent years, sustainability has become an explicitly stated goal of natural resource management (e.g. CAIRNS 1997, 1999). In practice, however, management approaches have often focused on maximizing short-term yield and economic gain rather than long-term sustainability (CHRISTENSEN et al. 1996). Management practices often failed as a result of (1) insufficient or inappropriate information, both about the state of the ecosystem and also about the impact of human activities (economic and non-economic), (2) insufficient coordination between different levels and sectors of administration, and (3) insufficient participation and consultation of the relevant stakeholders and their policies. Sectoral management solutions will not produce long-term solutions. Especially in complex ecosystems such as the coastal zone and estuaries, which are influenced by a myriad of interrelated driving forces and pressures including geomorphological, hydrological, socio-economic, administrative, institutional and cultural systems, with processes operating over a variety of space and time scales, attempts to manage these ecosystems sustainably will fail unless they consider concurrently the entirety of the many systems that have a significant influence on the dynamics of the coastal zones and estuaries.

Several management concepts and strategies have been worked out to bring the principles of sustainability and wise use into practice. Only "integrated" approaches taking into consideration all the characteristics and processes that typify and change estuarine ecosystems have any chance of securing a sustainable future. In the coastal zone such approaches are known under the common name of ICM, ICZM or ICMM (Integrated Coastal Management,



Integrated Coastal Zone Management or Integrated Coastal and Marine Management) (e.g. CICIN-SAIN & KNECHT 1998; DONE & REICHELT 1998). But estuaries not only are an important part of the coastal zone, they also form the connection between the river basin and the coastal sea. Within river basins, the concept of "integrated water management" (IWM) or "integrated catchment management" was developed, analogous to the ICM concept. Integrated water management is the coordinated and integrated development, management and restoration of water-systems in such a way that it fulfills the quality objectives for both the ecosystem and the human use functions without endangering the multifunctional use of future generations. The formulation of objectives and the resulting weighing of functions and land use must depend on a thorough knowledge of the functioning of the water-system and its natural limits.

Both ICM and IWM require integration of all relevant policy areas, sectors, and levels of administration, but also integration of science and knowledge and how to apply these in sound management strategies. Ecosystem management can contribute to the integration required in IWM and ICM through the compilation of scientific knowledge of the functioning of the system and the translation of this knowledge into different management options and strategies. Ecosystem management is management driven by explicit goals, executed by policies, protocols and practices, and made adaptable by monitoring and research on our best understanding of the ecological interactions and processes necessary to sustain ecosystem composition, structure and function (CHRISTENSEN et al. 1996). Ecosystem management involves aspects of both basic and applied ecology, biology and other natural sciences and, more importantly, the application of scientific principles to the management of natural resources.

Since estuarine ecosystems are dynamic and showing large spatial, seasonal and inter-annual variations, which are not at the moment predictable from ecological theory as it stands, an extensive, coherent and systematic approach to the observation of the changing state of ecosystems is necessary. This implies well designed long-term monitoring, the development of sound (predictive) ecological models and a multidisciplinary approach. Identifying how the effects of ecological/environmental processes change with variation in spatial and temporal scale is one of the most important issues facing ecologists (THRUSH et al. 1999).

Aim of the present study

The general aim of the present study is to contribute to a better understanding of the environmental variability of estuarine soft-sediment ecosystems. Generating this understanding will lead to better predictions of future change to ecological systems, which is a prerequisite for improving conservation and management strategies.

The study is concentrated on **macrobenthos** and **waterbirds** in the Schelde estuary. Macrobenthos is an important component of estuarine ecosystems. The evaluation of effects of human induced changes will likely involve an analysis of possible responses of the benthos. Waterbirds are good indicators of environmental changes because of their position at the top of the food web. Waterbirds are widely used in monitoring programmes as an indicator of the value of wetland habitats.

The specific aims are therefore:

1. to describe spatio-temporal patterns in occurrence of soft-sediment macrobenthos in the Schelde estuary, with emphasis on the relation between macrobenthos and their environment at different scales;
2. to compare the spatial distribution of intertidal macrobenthos in the Schelde estuary with that of other NW-European estuaries (Oosterschelde and Ems estuary);
3. to statistically model and predict distribution patterns of macrobenthic species occurrence in the Schelde estuary;
4. to describe and evaluate the value of the Schelde estuary as wetland habitat for waterbird communities along the estuarine salinity gradient.

Outline of the thesis

This thesis is focused on the role of abiotic environmental variables (environmental constraints) in structuring macrobenthic communities in an estuarine environment. Data from different, mainly monitoring studies, that describe patterns and gradients in space and time, are used to get insight into the spatial and temporal variability of macrobenthos and to reveal how this variability can be explained by the environment.

The structure of macrobenthic communities is usually described using a variety of techniques. These range from a separate analysis of individual populations, typically focusing on the more abundant species or those species considered to be ecologically important, over an analysis of functional groups (e.g. trophic groups) and several univariate summary statistics (diversity measures, dominance curves), to multivariate techniques that consider species data, sample data and eventually environmental variables simultaneously.

(JONGMAN et al. 1995; LEGENDRE & LEGENDRE 1998). As no single method addresses all aspects of community structure, a combination of methods is also used in this study. Some of these methods are also applied to study the waterbird communities.

The **first part** considers spatio-temporal patterns in macrobenthic species and communities along the estuarine salinity gradient. A first paper (**chapter 2**) deals with the zonation of intertidal macrobenthos (diversity, abundance, biomass and species distributions) along the estuarine salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary. This paper is based on a sampling of 50 intertidal locations from the mouth of the Schelde estuary up to the freshwater tidal zone.

A second paper (**chapter 3**) describes the spatial distribution patterns of macrobenthos on an estuarine macro- and meso-scale, in relation to the predominant estuarine environmental variables salinity, depth, current velocity and sediment characteristics. Indicator species, trophic structure and community structure are defined along the estuarine gradients through multivariate analysis. For this purpose, a very large data set of 3112 samples was constructed, based on data collected by different institutes in the period 1980-1997.

A third paper (**chapter 4**) deals with the spatial and temporal variation in macrobenthic species composition, species assemblages and functional diversity along the salinity gradient in the Schelde estuary. The analysis involves the identification of the factors controlling the observed spatial and temporal patterns of variability in the macrobenthic communities. The study was carried out at five locations in the Schelde estuary, which were sampled monthly during a two-year period (1993-1994). Spatial analysis included regional (among salinity zones) and local (muddy versus sandy) sampling locations.

The **second part** compares the intertidal benthic communities of the Schelde estuary with benthic communities of other NW-European estuaries. In a first paper (**chapter 5**) a comparison is made between the Westerschelde and the Oosterschelde. In the Westerschelde the normal estuarine gradient from a brackish to a marine tidal system is found, whereas in the Oosterschelde major coastal engineering works have profoundly changed the character of the area, turning the system into a coastal basin without salinity gradient and a low turbidity. The intertidal macrofauna of both estuaries was studied in 1987 and the macrobenthic distribution and community structure in relation to the prevailing environmental factors was analyzed by means of multivariate analyses.

In a second paper (**chapter 6**) a comparison is made with the Ems estuary, which is, like the Schelde estuary, an estuarine ecosystem with still a complete salinity gradient, including a freshwater tidal zone, of more or less the same

latitude but with a different degree of antropogenic stress. Based on a large dataset, collected in the period 1980-1990, the spatial occurrence of macrobenthic species and communities, and the faunal change along the salinity gradient, including the freshwater tidal zone, was analyzed.

In the **third part**, more detailed observations on the macrobenthic distribution patterns in the mesohaline part of the estuary are described. A first paper (**chapter 7**) deals with the subtidal macrofauna of the Beneden Zeeschelde. The macrobenthos of the subtidal, mesohaline zone of the Schelde estuary (Belgium) was sampled in October 1996 and 1997 at 54 and 73 sampling locations respectively. The results are compared with the species diversity along the complete Schelde salinity gradient and with data from 1952 (LELOUP & KONIETZKO 1956). Possible effects on benthic communities of dredging operations and other anthropogenic influences, like the occurrence of hard substrates within the sediment are discussed.

In a second paper (**chapter 8**) the variations in zoobenthos and microphytobenthos (algal biomass) occurrence between spring (April) and autumn (September) are investigated in relation to environmental characteristics of cohesive sediments, based on a sampling of ten locations on three mudflats in the intertidal mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary. Not only macrobenthos ($> 1000 \mu\text{m}$), but also the smaller fraction of the zoobenthos (sieved through 500 and 250 μm mesh size), as well as the vertical distribution of the benthos in the sediment are considered.

The **fourth part** deals with the development of statistical models to predict macrobenthic species response to (changes in) environmental conditions in estuarine ecosystems. In **chapter 9** so-called response curves and surfaces are fitted through mathematical relations obtained by logistic regression. Based on the associations between the probability of occurrence of estuarine macrobenthic species and abiotic environmental variables, predictions of macrobenthic species distributions are generated. The same data as in chapter 2 were used.

The **fifth part** describes estuarine gradients at a higher trophic level, namely by looking at the distribution patterns of waterbirds along the estuarine salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary (**chapter 10**). The relation of the observed diversity and community patterns with the functional and habitat diversity of the Schelde estuary as well as the effect of recent conservation measures to preserve this habitat are discussed.

The chapters of this thesis are prepared as individual publications, some of which have already been published in international journals, others accepted or (to be) submitted (see table of contents). This approach leads inevitably to some overlap between the chapters, especially concer-



ning materials and methods and parts of the introductions and discussions. A description of the Schelde estuary is summarized hereafter, and hence can be skipped by the reader in each chapter. Several reports form the basis of the work presented here and are listed separately.

Study area: The Schelde estuary

Geographical situation

The river Schelde is a lowland-river, which takes its rise in the northern part of France (St. Quentin) and flows into the North Sea near Vlissingen (The Netherlands). The total catchment area is approx. $21.86 \cdot 10^3 \text{ km}^2$ (Figure 1.2). The total length of the river is 355 km, the fall over the total river length is at most 100 meters. Approximately ten million people live in the total Schelde river basin.

The estuary of the river Schelde extends from the mouth at Vlissingen (km 0) till Gent (km 160), where the tidal movement is stopped by a complex of sluices (Figure 1.3). The major tributaries of the estuary are the Rupel, the Durme and the Dender.

The Schelde estuary is the only remaining true estuary of southwest Netherlands. Major coastal engineering works, mainly for flood protection, have profoundly changed the character of the other estuarine branches. Some estuaries (e.g. Krammer, Haringvliet) have become freshwater lakes, while others have become non-tidal brackish (Veerse Meer) or saline (Grevelingen) areas. The Oosterschelde was partly closed from the sea by a storm surge barrier, but the cut off of freshwater inflow turned the area into a marine tidal bay (SMAAL & NIENHUIS 1992; NIENHUIS & SMAAL 1994).

The Zeeschelde (105 km), the Belgian freshwater tidal and upper/inner part of the estuary, is characterized by a single ebb/flood channel, bordered by relatively small mud-flats and marshes (28% of total surface). The surface of the Zeeschelde amounts to 44 km². Human activities are mainly concentrated in the Zeeschelde, where agglomerations and industries are located close to the river banks. The intertidal zone is often absent (e.g. quays, wharfs) or very

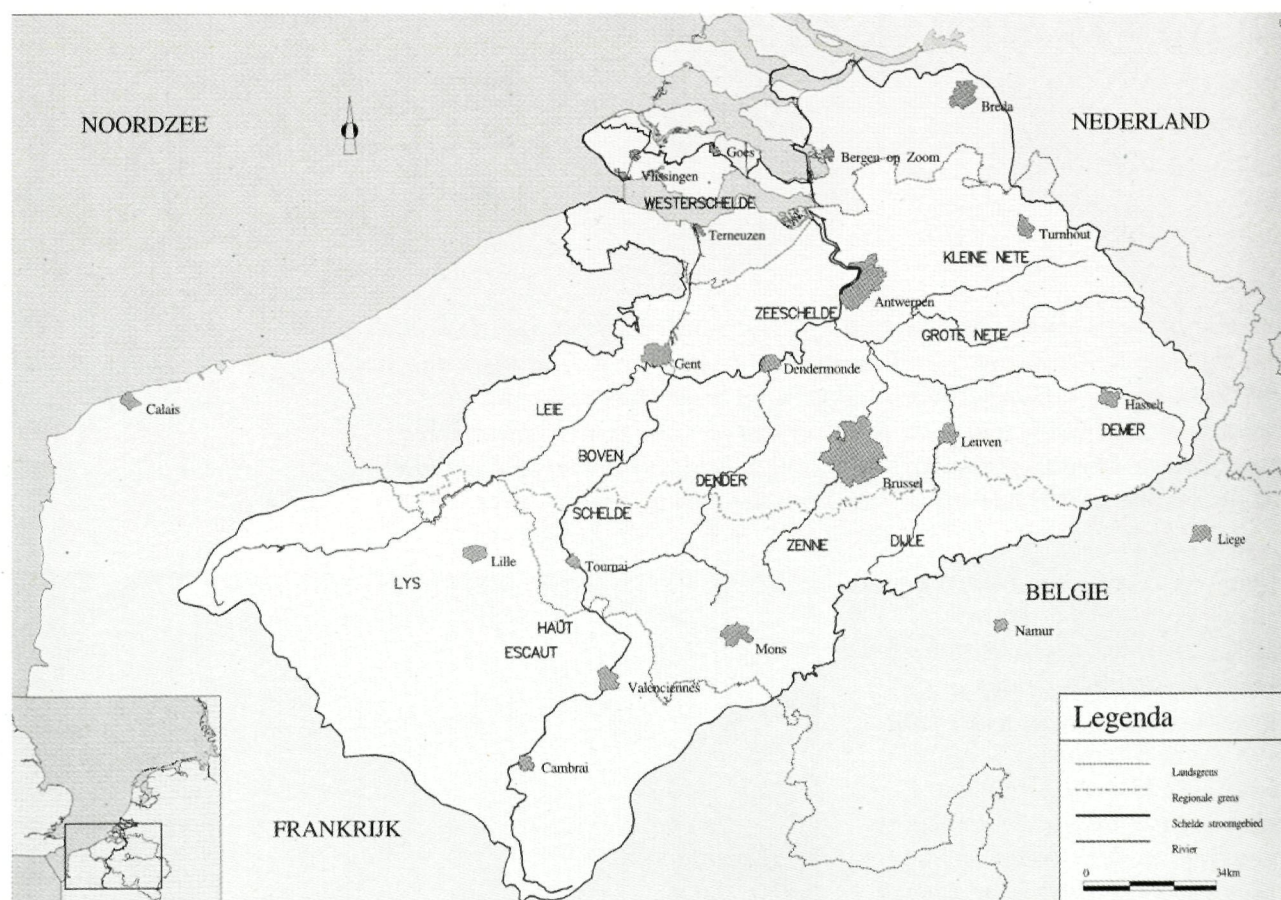


Figure 1.2. The catchment area of the river Schelde.



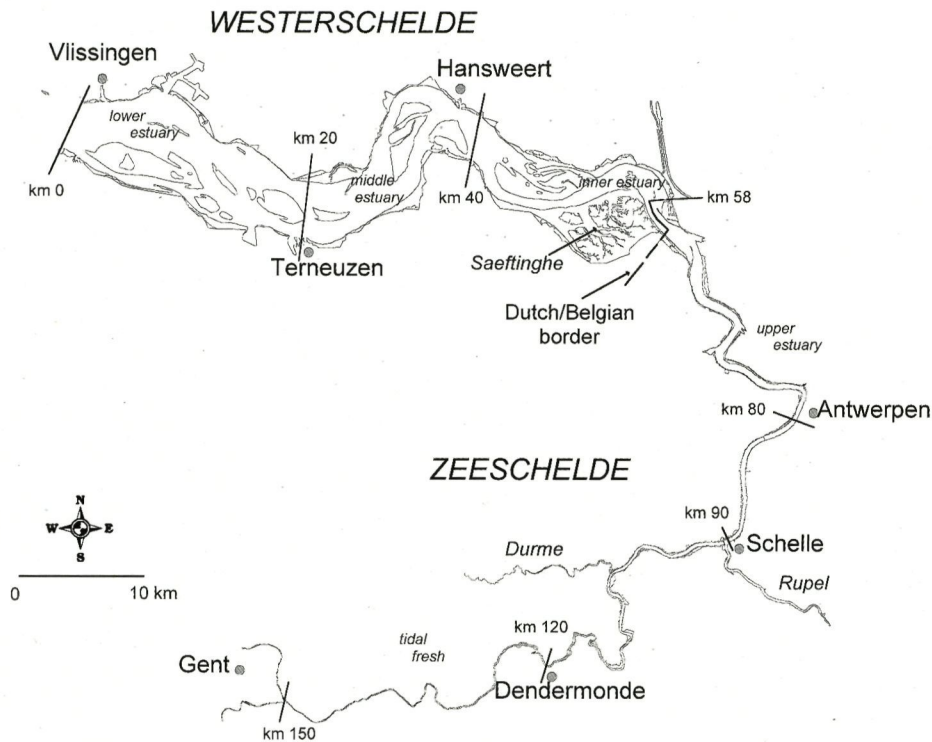


Figure 1.3. Map of the Schelde estuary.

narrow. Upstream of Dendermonde, the estuary is almost completely canalized (HOFFMANN & MEIRE 1997). The Zeeschelde is sometimes further subdivided into the 'Beneden Zeeschelde' between the Dutch/Belgian border and Antwerpen and the 'Boven Zeeschelde' between Antwerpen and Gent.

The middle and lower estuary, called the Westerschelde (58 km), is a well mixed region characterized by a complex morphology with flood and ebb channels surrounding several large intertidal flats and salt marshes. The surface of the Westerschelde amounts to 310 km², with the intertidal area covering 35%. The average channel depth is approximately 15-20 m. In the lower and middle estuary a multiple channel equilibrium exist.

& HERMAN 1995). Only the most seaward region has a residence time of 10-15 days.

Due to the funnel-shaped morphology of the estuary, the mean vertical tidal range is maximal in the freshwater tidal reaches (maximum tidal range at Schelle: 5.33 m, CLAESSENS 1988). In Vlissingen the mean vertical tidal range is 3.80 m, near the Dutch-Belgian border 4.94 m, in Antwerpen 5.19 m and in Gent 2.0 m. The ratio between the duration of rising and falling tide decreases from 0.88 at Vlissingen to 0.75 at Schelle and 0.39 at Gent.

The maximum tidal velocity at the mouth is about 0.9 m s⁻¹, in the Beneden Zeeschelde 1.1 m s⁻¹ and between Antwerpen and the Rupel 1.2 to 1.3 m s⁻¹ (BAEYENS et al. 1998).

Freshwater flow and tidal influence

The mean river discharge at Schelle (90 km from the mouth), amounted to 104 m³ s⁻¹. Being a typical rain-fed river, river discharge varies among seasons. During winter, the mean river discharge amounts to 180 m³ s⁻¹, with exceptional values up to 600 m³ s⁻¹. Average summer values decrease to 60 m³ s⁻¹, with minimal values down to 20 m³ s⁻¹ (BAEYENS et al. 1998).

The residence time of the water ranges from one to three months, depending on the river discharge (SOETAERT

Salinity

The longitudinal salinity profile of the Schelde estuary is primarily determined by the magnitude of the river discharge (Fig. 1.4), with the transition between fresh and salt water being particularly smooth. The estuary is well-mixed (except during peak discharges), which means that vertical salinity gradients are small or negligible.

A polyhaline zone stretches out from the river mouth (km 0) to the vicinity of Hansweert (km 40). Between Hansweert and the Dutch-Belgian border (km 58) a mesohaline zone is located. The section between the border

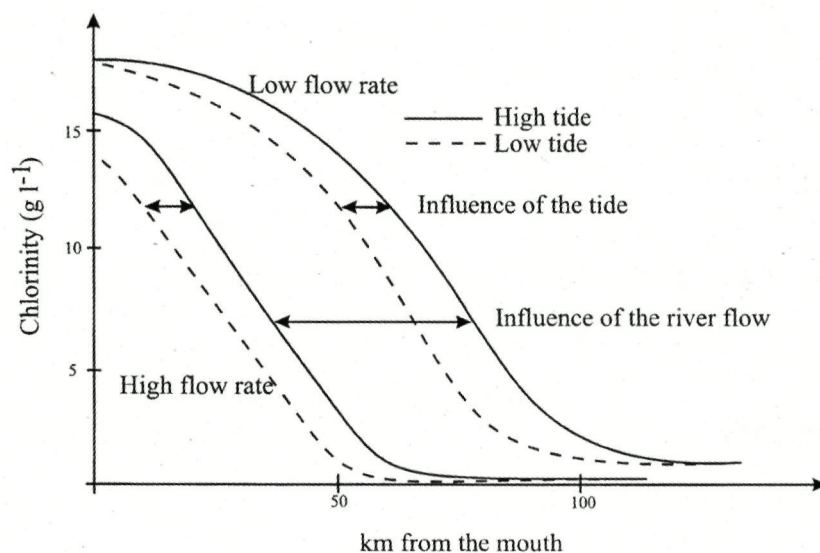


Figure 1.4. The influence of river flow and tide on the salinity profile (after Baeyens et al. 1998).

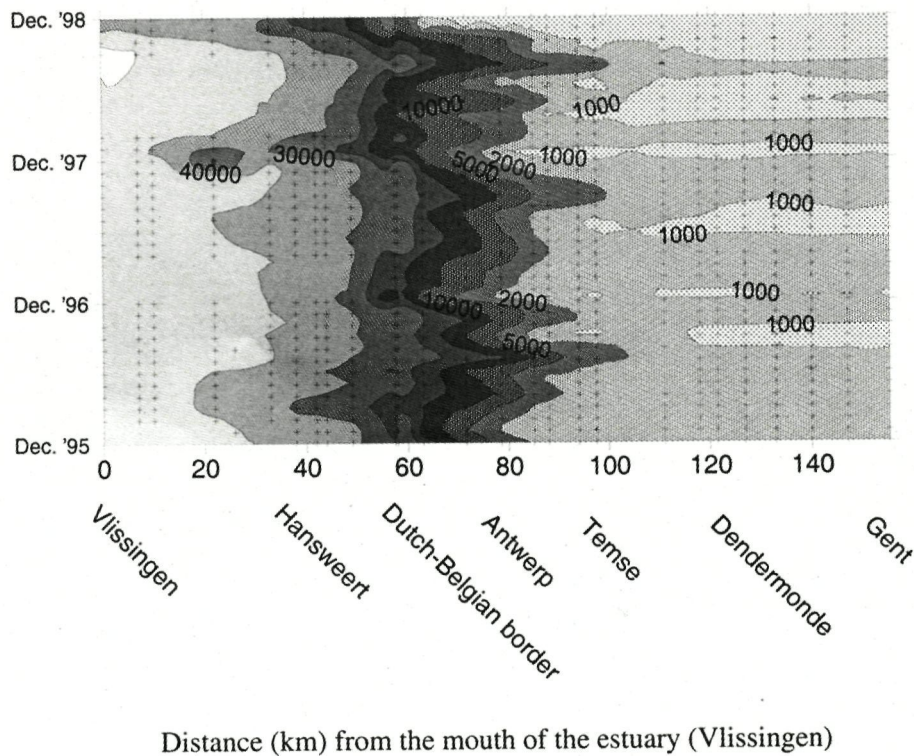


Figure 1.5. Spatio-temporal variation in specific conductivity ($\mu\text{S cm}^{-1}$) in the Schelde estuary in the period 1996-1998 (after Van Damme et al. 1999).



and the vicinity of Antwerpen (km 80) is characterized by a steep salinity gradient.

The zone between Antwerpen and the Rupel is an oligohaline zone. The fluvial estuary, upstream from the Rupel (km 90), is the fresh water tidal zone.

The spatio-temporal evolution in salt content is very sensitive to the seasonal change in river discharge and to a lesser extent to the fortnight tidal oscillation, which is of smaller amplitude. Salinity-shifts over a distance of 20 km are normal between seasons, as indicated by the changes in specific conductivity along the estuary in the period 1996-1998 (Fig. 1.5).

Maximum turbidity zone

Temperate, well-mixed, tidal estuaries are generally characterized by the presence of a maximum turbidity zone (MTZ) in the region of low salinity. The MTZ consists of an area where a large amount of cohesive sediments are accumulated and where these sediments are continually deposited and resuspended by the tidal flow. The distribution of suspended matter is influenced by a range of inter-related processes (e.g. temperature and biological activity, fresh water discharge and salinity, hydrodynamic conditions and turbulence, mineralogical composition, chemical conditions, aggregation and flocculation). In the Schelde estuary the turbidity maximum is situated at about 110 km from

the mouth during dry periods and at about 50 km during wet periods (WOLLAST & MARIJNS 1981). Two maximum turbidity zones might be observed, one at the fresh-water/seawater interface, and a second one originating from tidal asymmetry. More details on the MTZ can be found in BAEYENS et al. (1998), FETTWEIS et al. (1998) and HERMAN & HEIP (1999a,b).

The combination of favourable hydrodynamic conditions, several fine suspended matter sources, and the flocculation process, led in the salinity zone 2-10 psu to a bottom sediment that contains locally a high percentage of fine material (fine sand to mud, sometimes even a non-compacted, mobile hyperpycnal or fluid mud layer) (BAEYENS et al. 1998). Bottom sediments of the Westerschelde consist of sand (coarse, medium-coarse and medium-fine) except on the tidal flats.

Water quality

Due to high input of allochthonous organic matter and nutrients in the upper and freshwater tidal estuary, microbial activities are intense and oxygen depletion occurs frequently. Under unfavourable conditions, i.e. high temperatures and low river flows, the entire upper estuary could be anoxic in the late seventies (VAN DAMME et al. 1995). Because of ongoing wastewater treatment, dissolved oxygen concentrations increased during the eighties, and this

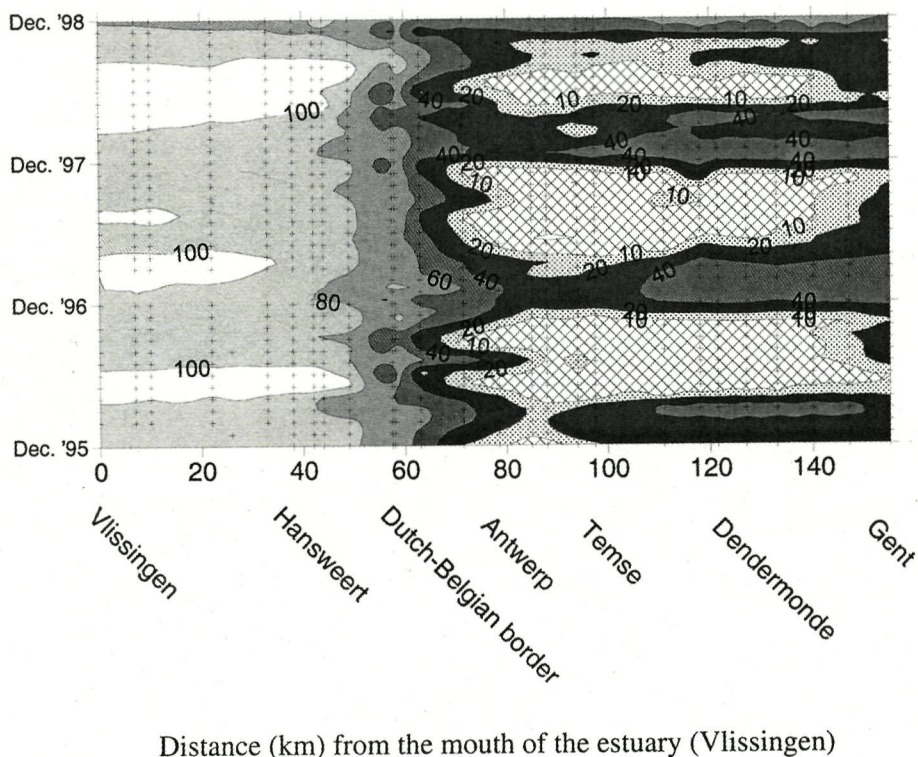


Figure 1.6. Spatio-temporal variation in percentage of oxygen saturation in the Schelde estuary in the period 1996-1998 (after Van Damme et al. 1999).



improvement continues in the 1990's (VAN DAMME et al. 1995; VAN ECK et al. 1998). However, oxygen conditions are still low in the upper estuary, especially during summer (Figure 1.6). Oxygen conditions improve considerably towards the Dutch/Belgian border, and in the Westerschelde the water column becomes fully oxygenated.

Still an important source of pollution remains, as the city of Brussel still discharges untreated wastewater through the Zenne and Rupel in the Schelde estuary. In 2000 a first wastewater treatment plant will come into operation, a second one is tendered.

The huge amount of respiration suggests a heterotrophic system (HEIP et al. 1995). Indeed, annual gross bacterial production exceeds net primary production, even in the marine part, although differences there become rather small (GOOSEN et al. 1995, 1999).

The improvement in water quality resulted in a first recovery of fish live in the Zeeschelde, mainly near the Dutch/Belgian border (e.g. MAES et al. 1998a, 1998b).

Human impacts

Despite the Schelde estuary is the only estuary left with a free connection to the North Sea in the Delta area of southwestern Netherlands, preserving its unique salinity gradient, human activities have had tremendous impact on the Schelde ecosystem.

In the past 200 years 150 km² of tidal area were lost due to land reclamation. The last decade still between 13-16% of the total surface of the Schelde estuary was lost, which was mainly due to loss in intertidal area. Until recently, the Schelde estuary (Westerschelde) was mainly seen as the maritime access to the harbour of Antwerpen. The harbour of Antwerpen, one of the biggest in Europe, is still expanding. Most of this industrialization occurs in the surrounding valley, but in the last decade also harbour expansion was realized within the estuary itself. Two container terminals were built near the Dutch/Belgian border, and a new tidal container dock is planned.

To guarantee a minimum depth for the ships to enter the harbour of Antwerpen, huge amounts need to be dredged (yearly average 10-12*10⁶ m³). To improve the access to the harbour, a further deepening program has been proposed, which will increase the dredging activities by more than 50 %. The deepening of the estuary altered the surface distribution of channel bottom, shallow water areas, sandbanks, mudflats en tidal marshes. Side channels shrunk. Flats became more streamlined and their edges steepened by erosion (VROON et al. 1997).

Besides the huge amounts of nutrients and organic carbon that are discharged into the estuary, also elevated concentrations of micropollutants such as heavy metals, PAHs, PCBs and organochlorine pesticides are observed, both in the water column as in the sediments (e.g. VAN ECK & DE ROOIJ 1993; VAN ZOEST & VAN ECK 1993; ZWOLSMAN & VAN ECK 1993; BAEYENS et al. 1998; VAN ECK et al. 1998; ZWOLSMAN 1999).

As a consequence of not being closed of from the sea, safety constructions (dikes) were built along the whole estuary. Along the Zeeschelde the SIGMA-plan is still ongoing (GRARE 1998).

Habitats at present

Table 1.2 gives the surface of the intertidal (tidal flats and marshes) and the subtidal zone along the Schelde estuary. Tidal flat surface is by far the largest in the Westerschelde, and area 3 is also characterized by the presence of the marsh of Saeftinghe, one of the largest brackish marshes in NW-Europe. In the Zeeschelde a relatively large surface of freshwater tidal marshes is present, which is on a European scale a very rare habitat.

Management in the Schelde estuary

As in many other European estuaries, water quality in the Schelde estuary was already bad in the early fifties (VAN MEEL 1958), and in the sixties and seventies the situ-

Table 1.2. Surface area (ha) of the intertidal zone (tidal flats and marshes) and subtidal zone in the different areas along the Schelde estuary. Areas 1-3: Westerschelde. Areas 4-6: Zeeschelde.

Area	Classification	Tidal flats	Marshes	Subtidal	TOTAL
1	lower/middle (polyhaline)	2898	51	10,195	13,144
2	middle/inner (poly/mesohaline)	2456	76	6564	9069
3	inner (α -mesohaline)	3020	2383	3342	8745
4	inner/upper (β -meso/oligohaline)	514	181	2005	2700
5	upper/tidal fresh (oligohaline/limnetic)	196	297	948	1441
6	tidal fresh (limnetic)	9.5	30.5	250	290
TOTAL	whole estuary	9093.5	3018.5	23,304	35,389



ation deteriorated further. Without exaggeration, it can be stated that the Zeeschelde and its major tributaries were merely an open sewer in the sixties and early seventies. Growing awareness of environmental problems prompted legislation in The Netherlands and Belgium, aiming to reduce the industrial and domestic waste water discharges. As a result, the water quality of the Schelde estuary started to improve (VAN DAMME et al. 1995; VAN ECK et al. 1998). Despite this growing awareness for a better water quality, management in the Schelde estuary was mainly dictated by the economic development of the port of Antwerpen and by the safety considerations. Also management was mainly sectoral, with no real coordination between the different member states of the Schelde basin.

It is only recently that it is recognized that ecological recovery of the estuary must be achieved in the framework of integrated water management (International Schelde Symposium 1991, 1995, 1998). At the moment, both Belgium (Flanders) and The Netherlands are working together on a Long Term Vision for the Schelde estuary. Several management plans are in concept (e.g. VAN DEN BERGH et al. 1999), and scientific research is being incorporated within the ideas of integrated water management. For instance, ideas are being worked out to integrate both the safety considerations as the structural and functional biodiversity of the estuarine ecosystem (e.g. controlled inundation areas as protection against flooding can be designed in such a way that these areas also function as real intertidal areas with a daily tidal rhythm). The OMES project (Onderzoek Milieu-Effecten SIGMA-plan), a multi-disciplinary research project, aims at building an ecosystem model for the Schelde estuary, in which the different management strategies can be evaluated (MEIRE et al. 1997).

Further reading

The Schelde estuary is one of the most extensively studied and well-documented estuaries in NW Europe. General descriptions of the Schelde estuary have been published by e.g. SAEIJS (1977), HEIP (1988, 1989), WOLLAST (1988), BAEYENS et al. (1998) and VAN DAMME et al. (1999, *subm.*). In MEIRE & VINCX (1993), HEIP & HERMAN (1995) and HERMAN & HEIP (1999) many papers deal with morphological, physical, chemical and ecological aspects of the Schelde estuary.



Chapter 2

The benthic macrofauna along the estuarine gradient of the Schelde estuary

T. Ysebaert, P.M. Meire, D. Maes and J. Buijs

Abstract

The intertidal benthic macrofauna of the Schelde estuary (The Netherlands and Belgium) was sampled in late autumn of 1990 at 50 stations along the whole salinity gradient (between Vlissingen and Dendermonde), including the freshwater tidal part. All stations were situated in sheltered areas with a relatively muddy sediment.

Species richness, diversity and total biomass of the benthic macrofauna decreased along the salinity gradient from Vlissingen to Dendermonde, while total density showed no clear trend. Especially the oligohaline and freshwater tidal part of the Schelde estuary was characterized by a very impoverished benthic community, composed only of Oligochaeta. No other species (freshwater, marine or brackish) was observed in this part of the estuary. The marine part had a more diverse macrozoobenthos structure than that of the brackish part. Species found only in the marine zone are *Cerastoderma edule*, *Tharyx marioni*, *Eteone longa*, *Nephtys hombergii* and *Capitella capitata*. In the brackish part of the estuary, *Corophium volutator* was a typical, dominant species. However, a lot of the dominant species were common in both the marine and brackish part of the Schelde estuary (e.g. *Heteromastus filiformis*, *Pygospio elegans*, *Nereis diversicolor*, *Macoma balthica*).

The observed gradient in species composition and dominance is compared with some other European estuaries. The marine and brackish part of the Schelde estuary is quite similar to other European estuaries. The freshwater tidal part, however, was more impoverished.

Introduction

Estuaries and the nearby coastal zones are characterized by steep gradients in chemical, physical and biological features. However, many studies have been restricted to small parts of these gradients and are mainly focussed on

the marine or brackish part of the estuary. In most ecological studies on estuarine ecosystems, research on the tidal freshwater environments, which are essential parts of an estuary, has been neglected. ODUM (1998) attributed this phenomenon to the fact that limnologists ignored tidal freshwater environments because of the presence of oceanic tidal influence, and marine ecologists neglected these areas because they contain freshwater and are inhabited primarily by freshwater organisms.

This study deals with the occurrence of macrozoobenthos along the whole estuarine gradient in the Schelde estuary, including the freshwater tidal part. The tidal part of the river Schelde represents one of the few remaining European estuaries that are characterized by a natural salinity gradient from salt water, over brackish water to freshwater. As such, the Schelde estuary has a unique ecological value. Unfortunately, this estuary is also one of the most polluted estuaries, due to large industrial, agricultural and domestic waste effluents (WOLLAST 1988; LUDIKHUIZE 1989; HUPKES 1990; VAN ECK et al. 1991). Also extensive dredging activities and expanding harbour activities have a large morphological impact on the Schelde ecosystem (CLAESSENS et al. 1991; PIETERS et al. 1991).

Freshwater and marine benthic macrofauna have been identified as a suitable ecological group for monitoring and detecting the effects of stress and pollution (PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978; BAYNE et al. 1988; GRAY 1989) and community structure of estuarine macrobenthos has been used as an indication of water and sediment quality (WARWICK 1986; WARWICK et al. 1987; AUSTEN et al. 1989; HARREL & HALL 1991). A survey of the benthic community along the Schelde estuary may therefore not only give valuable information on the ecological diversity along the whole estuarine gradient, but also on the present pollution status of the estuary. The objectives of this study were to characterize the intertidal benthic communities along the whole estuarine gradient of the Schelde estuary.

Materials and methods

Study area

The river Schelde has its source in Saint-Quentin (France) and it flows into the North Sea after 350 km. The influence of the tide is perceptible up to Gent (Belgium), where it is stemmed by a weir. The total length of the Schelde estuary between Gent and Vlissingen is 160 km (Figure 2.1). The width is about 50 m at Dendermonde, 250 m at Temse, 500 m at Antwerpen and 4.5 km at Vlissingen. The maximal width is 7.8 km. The mean tidal range increases from 3.8 m at Vlissingen, 4.5 m at Hansweert and 4.9 m at Antwerpen, to a maximum of 5.2 m at Kruibeke; it diminishes more upstream to about 2 m near Gent.

Upstream the Dutch/Belgian border, the upper estuary (called Zeeschelde) is characterized by a more or less single tideway. Brackish water and freshwater tidal marshes and mudflats are situated along the dikes. However, the width of the intertidal area is generally less than a few tens of meters. Only at a few locations there are larger mudflats and marshes. Downstream the Dutch/Belgian border, the more or less single tideway changes into a wide bed, characterized by large intertidal sand flats with meandering channels and gullies, the so-called Westerschelde (Figure

2.1). Brackish water and saltwater marshes and mudflats are situated at the outer edges, often several hundreds of meters wide.

The sediment of the Schelde estuary ranges from sandy to clayish, depending on hydrodynamic forces and sediment discharges (OENEMA et al. 1988). In the channels and gullies as well as on the sand flats, the sediment is mainly sandy. In the more sheltered areas the sediment is muddy. Sandy sediment is found far upstream in the estuary. Mud characterizes the sediment of the freshwater intertidal area.

The freshwater input of the Schelde amounts on average $100 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$. Seasonal fluctuations in drainage range from high values during winter (average $180 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$, maximum $500\text{--}600 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$) to low values during summer (average $50 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$, minimum $10 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ or less). Quantitatively, the river discharge of $5 \cdot 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ per tide is negligible compared to the mean tidal flood volume of $1100 \cdot 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ per tide near Vlissingen. This results in a very well mixed estuary with a relatively large transition zone from salt to freshwater, as reflected in the chlorinity gradient (Figure 2.2). The chlorinity decreases from c. $16.6 \text{ g Cl}^- \text{ l}^{-1}$ near Vlissingen to c. $4.5 \text{ g Cl}^- \text{ l}^{-1}$ at the Belgian-Dutch border; near the tributary Rupel the water becomes fresh ($< 0.3 \text{ g Cl}^- \text{ l}^{-1}$). Generally spoken, the whole estuary can be divided into three main zones: a marine (polyhaline) zone between Vlissingen and Hansweert, a brackish (mesohaline and oligohaline) zone between Hansweert and the tributary

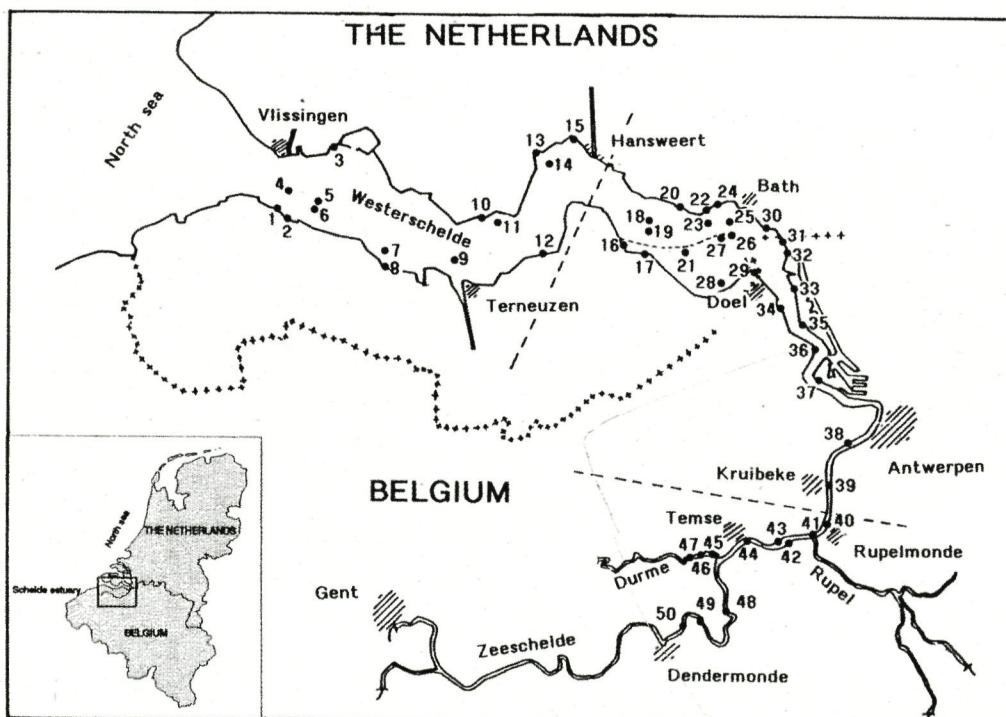


Figure 2.1. The Schelde estuary with the locations of the sampling stations (1-50).

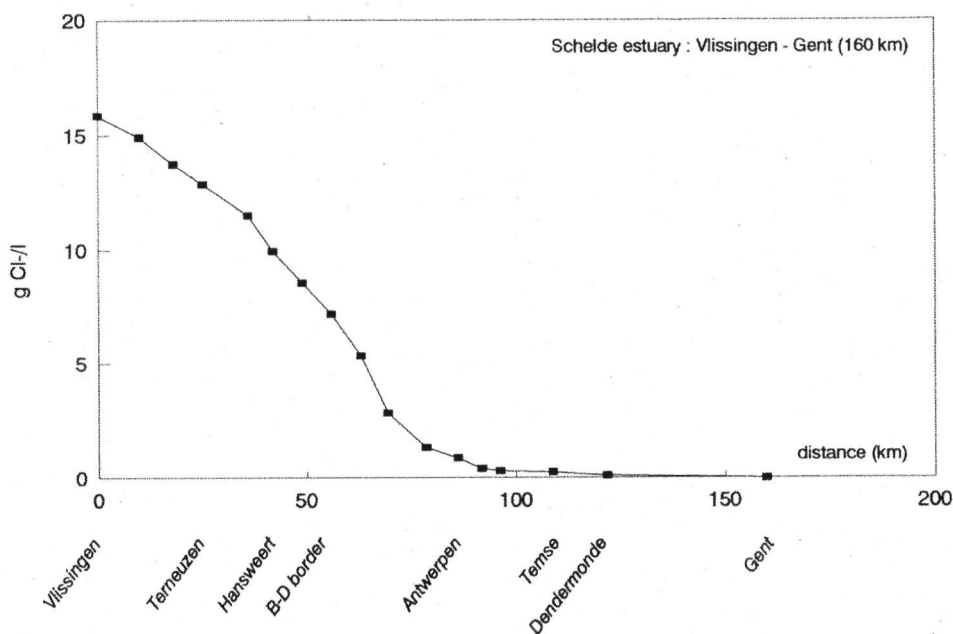


Figure 2.2. Mean annual chlorinity gradient in the Schelde estuary.

Rupel, and a freshwater zone (limnetic zone) more upstream. Seasonal and annual fluctuations in chlorinity may be large, especially in the brackish zone (variations up to 10 g Cl⁻ l⁻¹ occur on a single location). The water column is well mixed because of the tidal movement; the vertical chlorinity gradient is less than 0.2%.

The Schelde estuary is heavily contaminated with heavy metals and organic micropollutants and experiences a huge organic matter input. The concentrations of PCBs, PAHs and cadmium are high in the freshwater and brackish part of the estuary. Most of the pollutants behave conservatively and concentrations generally decrease when salinity increases, as a result of the mixing of riverine and marine particulates (VAN ZOEST & VAN ECK 1990; VAN ECK et al. 1991). The large organic matter load causes oxygen depletion in the Schelde river and in the upper estuary. The upper estuary is often anoxic, especially in the summer period (ANONYMOUS 1990; VAN ECK et al. 1991). These (near-) anoxic conditions may prevail as far as the Dutch-Belgian border. Table 2.1 gives some physical and chemical characteristics of the water column along the whole estuarine gradient.

Sampling and laboratory analysis

The macrozoobenthos was sampled in the autumn of 1990 (September/October) at 50 sampling stations situated between Vlissingen and Dendermonde (Figure 2.1). All stations were situated in the intertidal zone, especially in sedimentation areas, at approx. 1.5 m above mean low

water. On each station 15 small cores (diameter 4.5 cm) were taken to a mean depth of 25 cm and 5 large cores (diameter 15 cm) to a mean depth of 40 cm. The large cores were sieved in the field through a 3 mm mesh. All benthic samples were preserved in 4% neutralized formalin. Samples for sediment analysis were taken using a PVC core of 6.7 cm diameter to a depth of 10 cm. 6-8 cores taken per station, were mixed and preserved in a refrigerator at 4°C.

In the laboratory the samples of the small cores were sieved through a 1 mm mesh and sorted after staining with 0.02% Rose Bengal. The organisms were identified to species level, except in the genera *Spio* and *Polydora*, in Nemertini and in Oligochaeta, and counted. The large cores were only used for estimation of density and biomass of large and deep living species (e.g. *Arenicola marina*, *Mya arenaria*). The ash-free dry weight (AFDW) biomass was measured by drying all specimens at 105°C for 12 h and ashing at 500°C. Surface sediment characteristics (median particle size, mud content (fraction < 63 µm), organic matter and pH) at all stations were determined by standard methods.

Water quality characteristics were obtained from fixed locations near the sampling stations (data from 'Rijkswaterstaat' (Dutch part) and IHE (Belgian part) (See Table 2.1)

Data analysis

Data were first organized into a samples by species matrix. Species diversity was measured using the Shannon-



Table 2.1. Physical characteristics and water quality parameters (annual average of 1990 with standard errors) along the whole estuarine gradient at Vlissingen (1), Terneuzen (2), Hansweert (3), Dutch-Belgian border (4), Kruibeke (5), Temse (6), Dendermonde (7) and Melle (8). Data from 'Rijksinstituut voor Integraal Zoetwaterbeheer en Afvalwaterzuivering' (station 1–4: c. 12 observations per year), and 'Ministerie van Volksgezondheid en Leefmilieu, Instituut voor Hygiëne en Epidemiologie' (station 5–8: c. 5 observations per year).

Location	1	2	3	4
Distance (km)	160	137	124	111
Tidal range (m)	3.8	4.2	4.5	4.9
Width (m)	5000	5500	4300	2500
Chlorinity (g Cl ⁻¹)	17.8 ±0.1	14.9 ±0.3	11.3 ±0.4	6.0 ±0.5
O ₂ Water (mg ⁻¹)	8.9 ±0.3	8.5 ±0.3	8.1 ±0.3	3.9 ±0.5
BOD ₅ Water (mg ⁻¹)	0.7 ±0.2	0.9 ±0.3	0.6 ±0.2	2.6 ±0.3
NH ₄ ⁺ (mg N ⁻¹)	0.09 ±0.01	0.14 ±0.02	0.14 ±0.05	0.83 ±0.20
NO ₂ ⁻ (mg N ⁻¹)	0.03 ± 0.01	0.05 ± 0.01	0.07 ±0.01	0.15 ±0.02
NO ₃ ⁻ (mg N ⁻¹)	0.88 ±0.15	1.58 ±0.21	2.89 ±0.31	4.56 ±0.35
o-PO ₄ (mg P ⁻¹)	0.11 ±0.02	0.19 ±0.01	0.26 ±0.01	0.35 ±0.02

Location	5	6	7	8
Distance (km)	78	63	40	6
Tidal range (m)	5.2	5.1	3.7	2.0
Width (m)	350	250	100	50
Chlorinity (g Cl ⁻¹)	0.8 ±0.4	0.4 ±0.2	0.2 ±0.1	0.1 ±0.01
O ₂ Water (mg ⁻¹)	1.2 ±0.7	1.3 ±0.8	1.3 ±1.1	1.4 ±0.7
BOD ₅ Water (mg ⁻¹)	3.7 ±0.5	6.8 ±1.5	8.0 ±1.8	6.4 ±0.6
NH ₄ ⁺ (mg N ⁻¹)	5.97 ±1.66	7.66 ±2.13	9.84 ±2.99	11.3 ±3.56
NO ₂ ⁻ (mg N ⁻¹)	0.1 ± 0.05	0.1 ± 0.06	0.14 ±0.10	0.21 ±0.13
NO ₃ ⁻ (mg N ⁻¹)	1.70 ±1.05	1.34 ±1.08	3.51 ±1.42	2.23 ±1.26
o-PO ₄ (mg P ⁻¹)	0.85 ±0.16	1.23 ±0.35	1.54 ±0.37	1.95 ±0.49

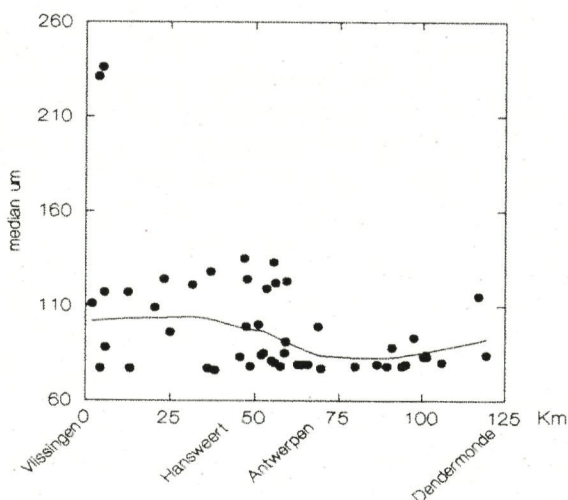


Figure 2.3. Median particle size of sediment (μm) at the sampling stations.

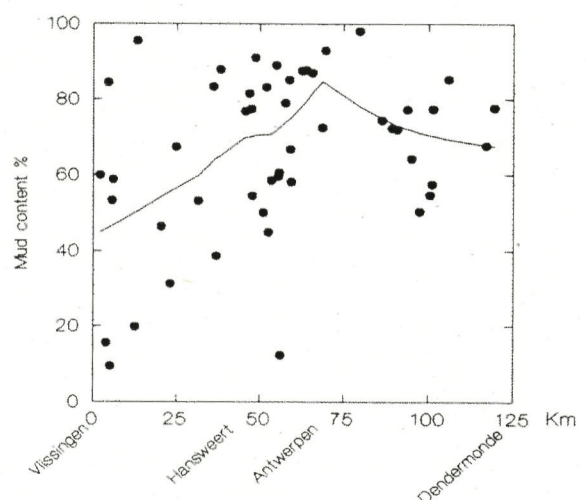


Figure 2.4. Mud content (fraction $< 65\mu\text{m}$) of sediment at the sampling stations.



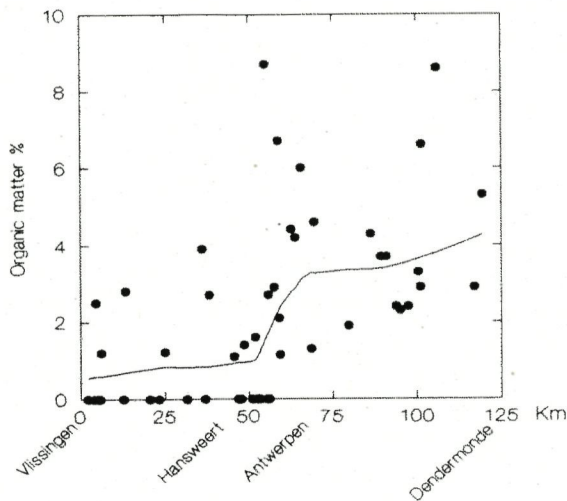


Figure 2.5. Organic matter content (%) of sediment at the sampling stations.

Wiener function H' (PIELOU 1996). All statistics were performed with the statistical package SYSTAT (WILKINSON 1990). Abiotic and biotic characteristics along the longitudinal gradient were fitted with a smoothing line, using the option LOWESS of the SYSTAT package. It smoothes by running along the X values and finding predicted values from a weighted average of nearby Y values.

Sorensen's index (SORENSEN 1948) of similarity was calculated to compare overlap of species between each pair of subareas using the formula

$$s = \frac{2C}{A + B}$$

where C is the number of species common to both subareas, and A and B are the number of species occurring in each subarea.

The between-subarea similarity matrix was then projected as a series of curves plotted for subareas ordered along an environmental (i.e. salinity) gradient, the so-called coenocline similarity projection (CSP, see BOESCH 1977). The subareas were defined by the longitudinal salinity gradient and consist of 4 to 6 stations.

Numerical classification (TWINSPAN, see HILL 1979), based on species abundance, was used to assess multispecies patterns. Only species that were observed in five or more stations were used for the analysis. Two stations (3 and 36) were not used in the analysis. All absolute abundances were transformed by $x = \log(x+1)$. Cut levels used in the TWINSPAN analyses were: 1.00, 2.00, 3.00, 4.00, 5.00, and 6.00.

Table 2.2. List of observed macrobenthic species and their frequency of occurrence (%) in the sampling locations. Trophic position: DF=Deposit Feeders; FF=Filter Feeders; O=Omnivores; P=Predators

Species name	Code	Occurrence
Annelida		
<i>Anaitides mucosa</i> (P)	ANAI MUCO	2
<i>Arenicola marina</i> (DF)	AREN MARI	14
<i>Capitella capitata</i> (DF)	CAP1 CAPI	20
<i>Eteone longa</i> (P)	ETEO LONG	38
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i> (DF)	HETE FILI	58
<i>Nephtys caeca</i> (P/O)	NEPH CAEC	2
<i>Nephtys hombergii</i> (P/O)	NEPH HOMB	22
<i>Nereis diversicolor</i> (O)	NERE DIVE	62
<i>Nereis succinea</i> (O)	NERE SUCC	10
<i>Oligochaeta</i> (DF)	OLIG	84
<i>Polydora spec.</i> (DF)	POLY SPEC	32
<i>Pygospio elegans</i> (DF)	PYGO ELEG	58
<i>Scolecopsis squamata</i> (U)	SCOL SQUA	2
<i>Scoloplos armiger</i> (DF)	SCOL ARMI	6
<i>Spio spec</i> (DF)	SPIO SPEC	18
<i>Tharyx marioni</i> (DF)	THAR MARI	24
Mollusca		
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i> (FF)	CERA EDUL	34
<i>Ensis minor</i> (FF)	ENSI MINO	12
<i>Hydrobia ulvae</i> (DF)	HYDR ULVA	26
<i>Macoma balthica</i> (DF)	MACO BALT	62
<i>Mya arenaria</i> (FF)	MYA AREN	12
<i>Mysella bidentata</i> (FF)	MYSE BIDE	6
<i>Mytilus edulis</i> (FF)	MYTI EDUL	2
<i>Retusa obtusa</i> (P)	RETU OBTU	2
<i>Scrobicularia plana</i> (DF)	SCRO PLAN	32
<i>Tellina fabula</i> (DF)	TELL FABU	4
Arthropoda		
<i>Bathyporeia pilosa</i> (DF)	BATH PILO	10
<i>Carcinus maenas</i> (O)	CARC MAEN	4
<i>Corophium arenarium</i> (DF)	CORO AREN	10
<i>Corophium volutator</i> (DF)	CORO VOLU	30
<i>Crangon crangon</i> (P)	CRAN CRAN	18
<i>Cyathura carinata</i> (U)	CYAT CARI	10
<i>Gastrosaccus spinifer</i> (P)	GAST SPIN	2
<i>Sphaeroma rugicauda</i> (DF)	SPHA RUGI	2
Nemertini		
<i>Nemertini spec.</i> (P)	NEME SPEC	6

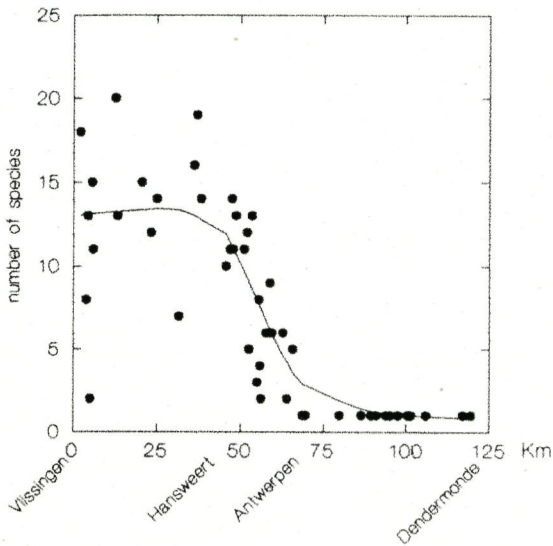


Figure 2.6. Number of species per sampling station.

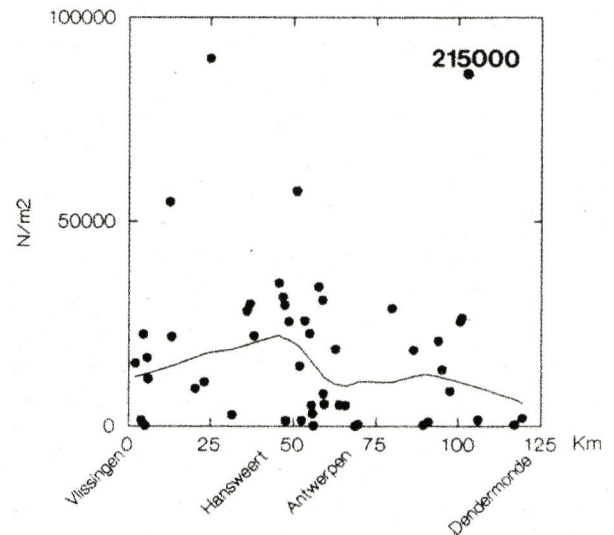


Figure 2.8. Mean total population density ($N\ m^{-2}$) per sampling station.

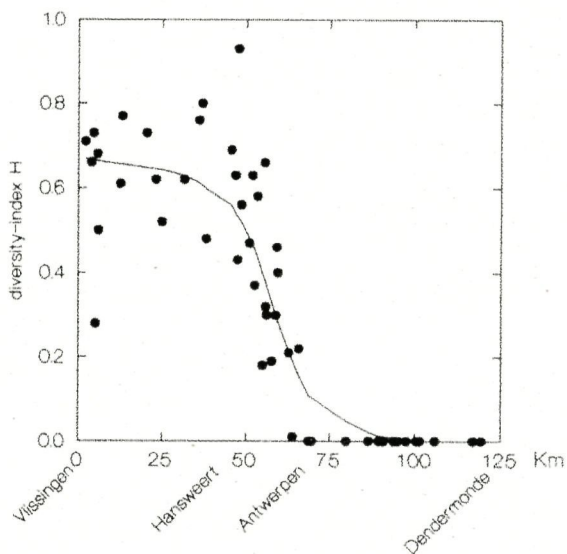


Figure 2.7. Species diversity (Shannon-Wiener function H') per sampling station.

Results

Sediment characteristics

The dominant sediment type throughout the intertidal zone of the Schelde estuary, sampled in this study, was muddy sand (median grain size between 75-125 μ m). The variation in median grain size of the stations was more pronounced in the marine part (Figure 2.3). Two stations (3 and 4) in the mouth

of the estuary had a much coarser sediment with a median grain size of approx. 235 μ m. The mud content of the sediment was highly variable, especially in the marine part (Figure 2.4). Highest values occurred in the brackish part and remained relatively high in the freshwater tidal part.

The organic matter content showed also large variation, but a clear increasing trend towards the freshwater tidal part was observed (Figure 2.5). It is stressed again that especially sedimentation areas were chosen for this study (see Materials and Methods).

Table 2.3. Correlation coefficients (Spearman's rank) between some environmental variables and biotic characteristics ($N=50$).

*= $p<0.01$; **= $p<0.005$; NS=not significant

Environmental variables	Species	Density	Biomass	H'
Water chlorinity	.85 **	.19 NS	.58 **	.66 **
Water oxygen content	.86 **	.21 NS	.61 **	.69 **
Water BOD	-.86 **	-.18 NS	-.60 **	-.62 **
Median grain size	.25 NS	-.18 NS	-.08 NS	.22 NS
Organic matter	-.54 **	.01 NS	-.21 NS	-.43 *
Fraction <63 μ m	-.14 NS	.01 NS	.04 NS	-.18 NS



Benthic fauna

Diversity

Of the 35 species observed, almost 50% were annelids, 28% molluscs and 23% arthropods (Table 2.2). Taking the thropic structure into account, 23% of the observed number of species were predators, 14% filter feeders, and 6% omnivores; the remaining and dominant part (57%) were deposit feeders. Oligochaeta were present at almost every station. The annelids *Nereis diversicolor*, *Heteromastus filiformis* and *Pygospio elegans* and the mollusc *Macoma balthica* were also very common (>50%). Seven species were observed only once.

the annelids), *Pygospio elegans* (22%) and *Heteromastus filiformis* (12%). To a lesser extent arthropods, notably *Corophium volutator* (90% of the arthropods) and molluscs, notably *Cerastoderma edule* (48% of the molluscs), *Hydrobia ulvae* (21%) and *Macoma balthica* (16%) also contributed to the total densities. Deposit feeders were dominant in all sampling stations and represented 95% of the total density.

The total density along the longitudinal gradient between Vlissingen and Dendermonde is summarized in Figure 2.8. A large variation was observed with no clear trend along the estuarine gradient; high and low density values were randomly distributed. Density did not signifi-

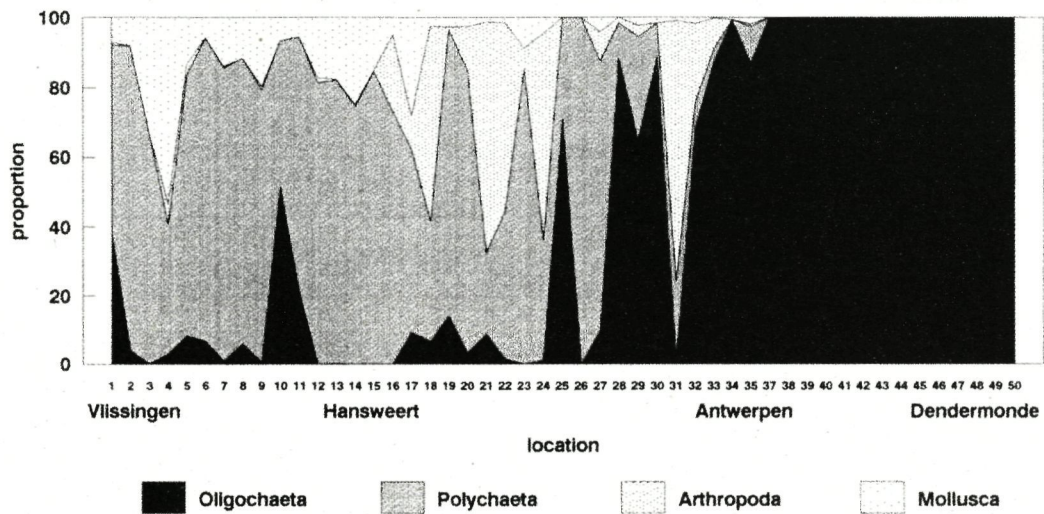


Figure 2.9. Contribution (%) of the different taxa to the total density at each sampling station.

The number of species and the diversity H' showed a significant positive correlation with chlorinity and oxygen content, and a significant negative correlation with BOD. To a less extent the number of species also showed a correlation with organic matter (Table 2.3). The number of species at each station along the longitudinal gradient between Vlissingen and Dendermonde is shown in Figure 2.6.

The mean number of species per sampling station remained relatively constant up to Hansweert, but clearly declined in the brackish zone. Upstream of Antwerpen, only Oligochaeta occurred. The same pattern was shown by the diversity index H' (Figure 2.7). At one station (36) no benthic invertebrates were observed.

Population density

The mean total population density (\pm SE) of all sampling stations was 21000 ± 4600 ind m^{-2} , ranging from 0 ind m^{-2} (station 36) to a maximum density of $2.16 \cdot 10^5$ ind m^{-2} (station 47). Six stations had densities less than 1000 ind m^{-2} . Densities were mainly determined by annelids (84% of the total density), especially Oligochaeta (56% of

cantly correlate with the measured abiotic characteristics (Table 2.3). At station 47 a very high density of Oligochaeta was found ($2.16 \cdot 10^5$ ind m^{-2}). However, the relative contribution to the density of the different taxa changed markedly from the marine zone, over the brackish zone to the oligohaline-freshwater zone (Figure 2.9). Between Vlissingen and Hansweert, i.e. in the marine zone, the macrobenthic densities were mainly determined by dense populations of Polychaeta and to a lesser extent by Mollusca. Between Hansweert and Antwerpen (brackish zone) both Polychaeta and Arthropoda contributed to the macrobenthic densities; at some sampling stations Oligochaeta tended to predominate. Upstream of Antwerpen (oligohaline-freshwater zone) only Oligochaeta were present. Deposit feeders contributed mostly to the density in all three zones along the gradient, although the filter feeder *Cerastoderma edule* in the marine zone and the omnivore *Nereis diversicolor* in the brackish zone were also relatively important (Figure 2.10).

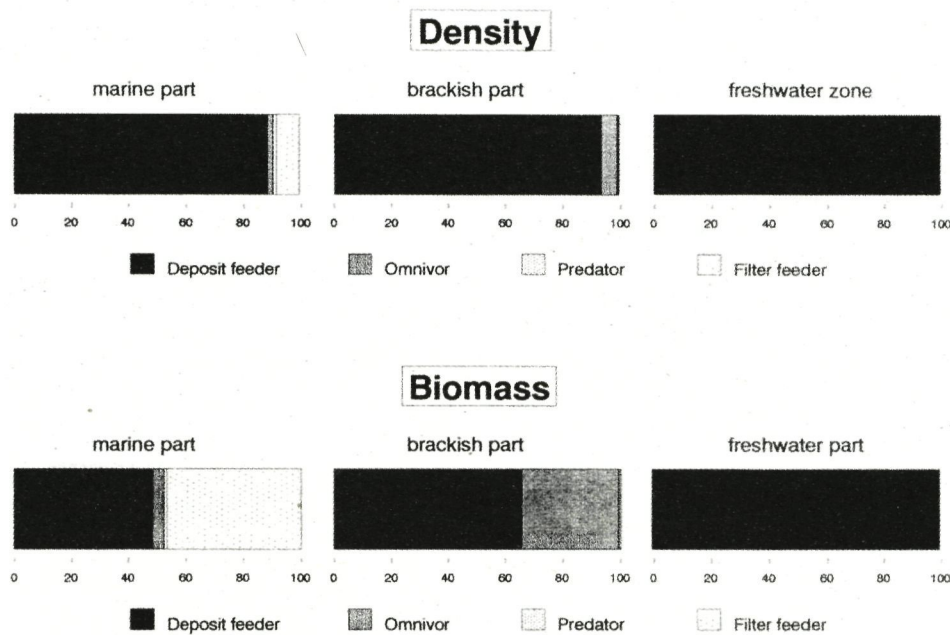


Figure 2.10. Contribution (%) of the different trophic groups to total population density and biomass in the marine, brackish and freshwater part of the Schelde estuary.

Biomass

The mean total biomass (\pm SE) of all sampling stations was 21 ± 4.5 g AFDW m^{-2} , ranging between 0.0031 and 153.1 g AFDW m^{-2} . Contrary to the population density, biomass was not only determined by annelids (54% of the total biomass), but also by molluscs (44%), due to their high individual biomass. Dominant annelids were *Heteromastus filiformis* (52% of the annelids), *Oligochaeta* (18%) and *Nereis diversicolor* (18%), whereas *Cerastoderma edule* was the dominant mollusc (75% of the molluscs). The latter contributed by far the most to the mean total biomass of

the whole study area. The dominant arthropod is *Corophium volutator* (73% of the arthropods).

The total biomass along the longitudinal gradient between Vlissingen and Dendermonde is summarized in Figure 2.11. On the average, there was a gradient from high biomass in the marine and brackish zone to low biomass in the oligohaline-freshwater zone, with a sharp decline at the Dutch-Belgian border. Biomass was significantly correlated with all water quality characteristics. No correlations were found with the sediment characteristics. Only at station 47 a relatively high biomass was found (c. 50 g AFDW m^{-2}), due to the very high density of *Oligochaeta*. As with the density, the relative contribution to the biomass of the different taxa changed markedly from the marine zone, over the brackish zone to the oligohaline-freshwater zone (Figure 2.12). Between Vlissingen and Hansweert (marine zone) Mollusca and Polychaeta contributed mostly to the biomass. Between Hansweert and Antwerpen (brackish zone) Polychaeta tended to predominate; *Oligochaeta* already dominated at some sampling stations (Figure 2.12). Upstream of Antwerpen, *Oligochaeta* were dominant. Contrary to the density, there was a clear gradient in the trophic position of the organisms contributing most to the biomass (Figure 2.10). Filter feeders, notably *Cerastoderma edule*, and deposit feeders dominated in the marine zone. The brackish zone was dominated by omnivores, especially *Nereis diversicolor*, and deposit feeders, whereas in the freshwater part only deposit feeders occurred.

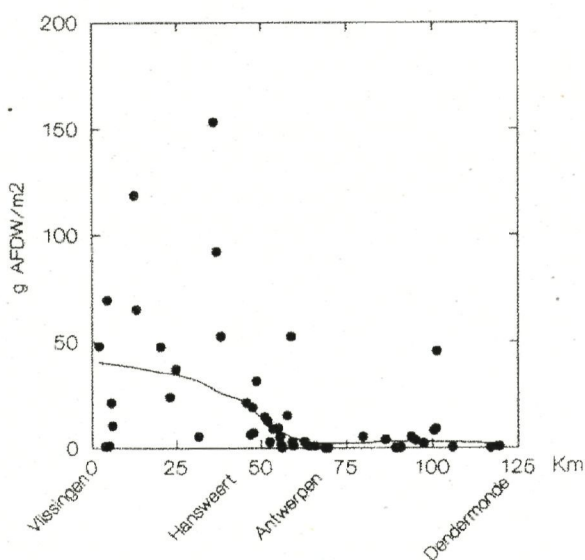


Figure 2.11. Mean total biomass (g AFDW m^{-2}) per sampling station.



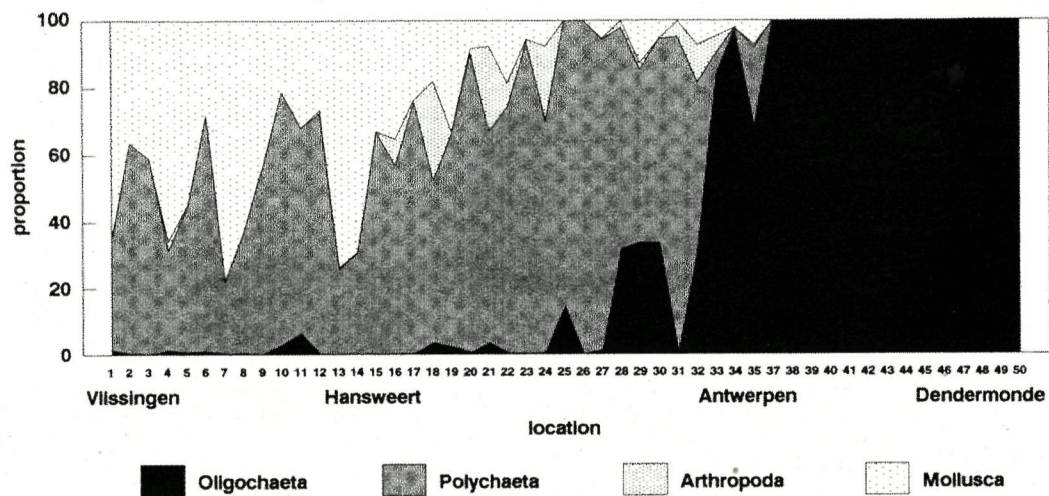


Figure 2.12. Contribution (%) of the different taxa to the total biomass at each sampling station.

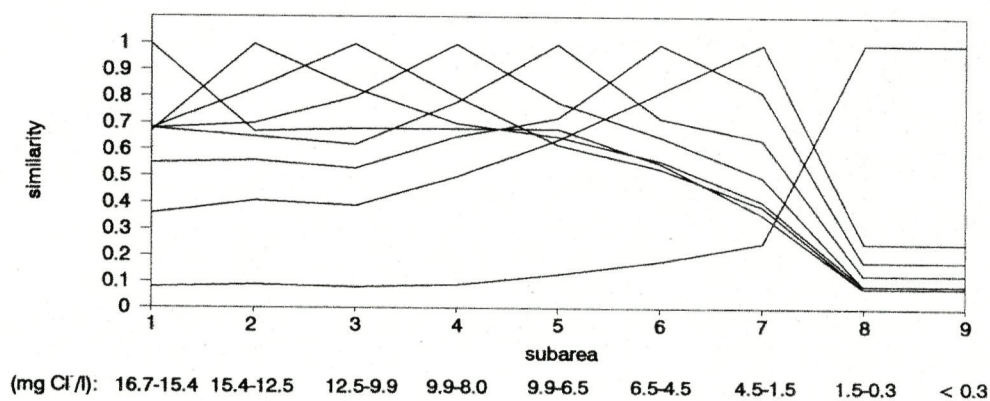


Figure 2.13. Coenocline similarity projections of qualitative similarity (Sorensen's index) along the estuarine gradient. Nine sub-areas of 4 to 6 sampling stations each are distinguished. Chlorinity range of subareas is indicated.

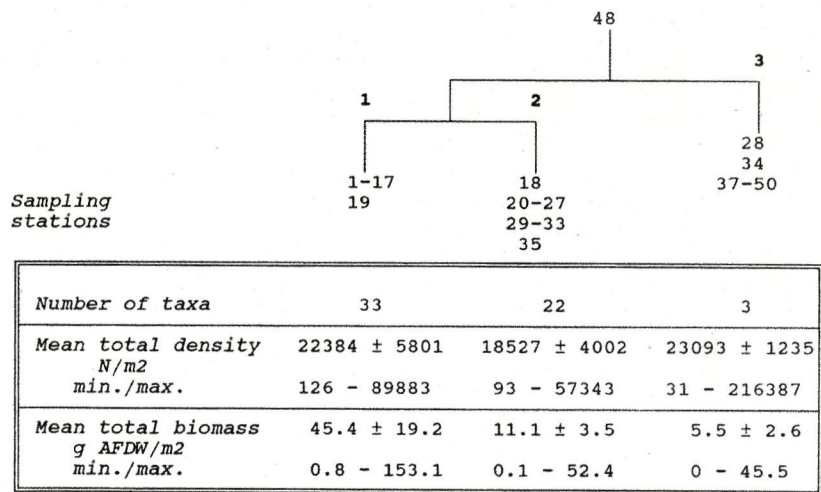


Figure 2.14. Characterization of the different station groups, distinguished by a TWINSpan analysis.

Change along the estuarine gradient

The coenocline similarity projections showed a more or less gradual and continual change in assemblage along the estuarine gradient (Figure 2.13). The rate of change in the benthic coenocline of the Schelde estuary was by far the greatest between subarea 7 and 8. Between other subareas, this change was much less pronounced. From this figure it is clear that especially towards the oligohaline zone, the benthic community abruptly changed.

Community structure

Cluster analysis of all stations produced three station groups (Figure 2.14). The first group (group 3) includes the stations 37-50, together with stations 28 and 34, and represents the whole freshwater tidal part and the most upstream situated brackish part (oligohaline zone). This community was characterized by a very impoverished benthic fauna with only one taxon dominating, namely Oligochaeta. Oligochaeta were very abundant, resulting in a mean density that was comparable to that of the other two groups, but with a significantly lower mean biomass. In a further

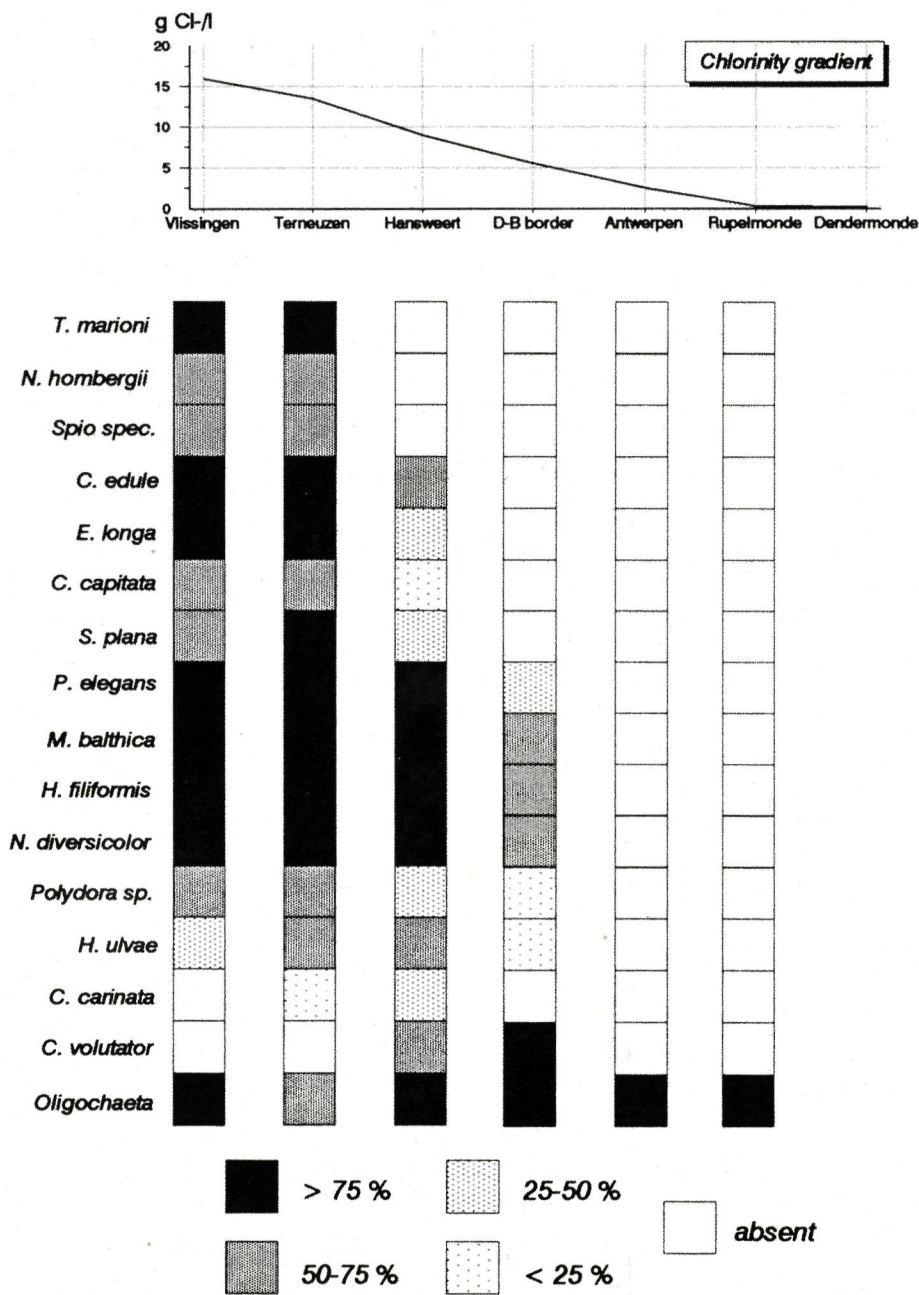


Figure 2.15. Distribution and average constancy of the most dominant species in six subareas along the salinity gradient.

division, the remaining stations were separated into group 1, with the marine stations 1-17 and 19, and group 2 with the brackish water stations 18, 20-27, 29-33 and 35.

The total number of observed species as well as the mean number of species per sampling station was clearly higher in group 1 as compared to group 2. The mean biomass was significantly higher in group 1 as compared to group 2.

Group 1 (the marine group) consisted of sampling stations with a relatively species rich benthic fauna. Molluscs as well as the dominance of the filter feeders characterized this community (see above). Characteristic species of this group were *Cerastoderma edule*, *Tharyx marioni*, *Eteone longa*, *Nephtys hombergii* and *Capitella capitata* (Figure 2.15). *Cerastoderma edule* was very common with a mean density of $1.34 \pm 0.39 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2} (max: $5.2 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}). *Cerastoderma edule* contributed most to the total biomass of the marine part with a mean biomass of 20.3 ± 7.3 g AFDW m^{-2} (max: 96 g AFDW m^{-2}). *Cerastoderma edule* penetrated the estuary up to the brackish part, but here only young brood occurred. *Tharyx marioni* was also a very common species of the marine part and did not occur upstream from Hansweert. The mean density in the marine zone was $1.37 \pm 0.57 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2} (max: $8.0 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}). *Eteone longa* was another very common species, but also penetrated into the brackish part. The densities were always lower than 300 ind m^{-2} . *Capitella capitata* was a common species in the marine part. In the brackish part this species was only observed twice. The densities did not exceed more than 550 ind m^{-2} and biomass was low. *Nephtys hombergii* was typical for the marine part but the observed densities were low, not exceeding 250 ind m^{-2} .

Group 2 (brackish group) sampling stations had a less species-rich benthic fauna with a typical dominance of *Corophium volutator*. It is the only important species that was found in the brackish part of the estuary and not in the marine part (Figure 2.15). *Corophium volutator* contributed substantially to the total density having a mean density of $7.0 \pm 2.9 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2} (max: $40 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}). The biomass on some stations was relatively high, with a maximum of 3.7 g AFDW m^{-2} .

Several species are common to both group 1 and group 2, and were very abundant, notably *Heteromastus filiformis*, *Nereis diversicolor*, *Pygospio elegans* and *Macoma balthica* (Figure 2.15). *Heteromastus filiformis* was one of the most common species in this study, penetrating the estuary up to Antwerpen. Mean (c. $4.0 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}) and maximum (c. $15.5 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}) densities in the marine and brackish zone were comparable.

Heteromastus filiformis contributed considerably to the total biomass. On some locations the biomass was > 30 g AFDW m^{-2} . *Nereis diversicolor* was the most important omnivore in the Schelde estuary, and was found up to Antwerpen. Especially in the brackish zone, high densities (mean 1096 ± 455 ind m^{-2} ; max: $7.0 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}) are

reached. In this zone, the contribution of *Nereis diversicolor* to the total biomass was quite important, with a maximum biomass of 50 g AFDW m^{-2} . In the marine zone, densities were much lower (mean: 482 ± 126 ind m^{-2} ; max: 1718 ind m^{-2}).

Pygospio elegans was a very common species of both the marine and the brackish zone, penetrating the estuary up to Antwerpen. It contributed substantially to the total density with a mean density in the marine zone of $9.5 \pm 3.7 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2} (max: $56.6 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}) and in the brackish zone of $2.2 \pm 0.9 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2} (max: $21.5 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}). The maximum biomass was 5 g AFDW m^{-2} , but on most stations the biomass did not exceed 1 g AFDW m^{-2} .

Macoma balthica was the most common mollusc in the Schelde estuary. This species occurred upstream to Antwerpen. The mean density amounts 285 ± 61 ind m^{-2} (max: 1048 ind m^{-2}) in the marine zone and 199 ± 45 ind m^{-2} (max: 545 ind m^{-2}) in the brackish zone. *M. balthica* contributed substantially to the total biomass and the maximum biomass was 11.2 g AFDW m^{-2} .

Some species like *Polydora spec.* and *Hydrobia ulvae* were also common in both the marine and brackish part, but were less abundant than the species mentioned above. *Polydora spec.* was a relatively common species, penetrating the estuary up to the Dutch-Belgian border. It was most abundant in the marine zone (mean $1.84 \pm 0.75 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2} ; max: $9.2 \cdot 10^3$ ind m^{-2}). In the brackish zone, densities did not exceed 1000 ind m^{-2} . The observed biomass was very low. *Hydrobia ulvae* was a common species in the marine and brackish zone, although less common near the mouth of the estuary. Mean density was much higher in the marine zone (535 ± 221 ind m^{-2} ; max: 3311 ind m^{-2}), as compared to the brackish zone (63 ± 32 ind m^{-2} ; max: 461 ind m^{-2}). The biomass was relatively low.

As illustrated already by the direct gradient analysis, it can be concluded from the cluster analysis that the stations are separated in groups closely linked with the salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary. However, since many dominant species (*Heteromastus filiformis*, *Pygospio elegans*, *Nereis diversicolor*, *Macoma balthica*) were common in both the marine and brackish part, the distinguished groups are likely to be variants of one community type, rather than that a clear distinction into two totally different benthic communities can be made.

The macrozoobenthos of the marine part had a more complex structure than that of the brackish part, which was a more impoverished form. However, due to the presence of the filter feeder *Cerastoderma edule* in the marine part, the trophic structure differed clearly between the marine and brackish part of the Schelde estuary.



Discussion

This study is the first on the Schelde estuary investigating the macrozoobenthos along the whole estuarine gradient, including the freshwater tidal part. Previous studies on the macrozoobenthos of the Schelde estuary dealt only with the marine and brackish part of the estuary, but found the same gradient, as presented here (VERMEULEN & GOVAERE 1983; MEIRE et al. 1991; YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1991). However, in these studies other benthic communities, besides the one described here, were distinguished. The difference is due to sampling exclusively in the intertidal zone in this study, particularly in the most sheltered areas of the estuary with relatively muddy sediment with a low dynamic nature. The sampling stations in VERMEULEN & GOVAERE (1983) and YSEBAERT & MEIRE (1991) covered a wide range of habitats, including the sublittoral zone. These studies clearly demonstrated the important role of sediment characteristics in determining the environmental conditions of the benthic habitat (see also GRAY 1974; RHOADS 1974). The community types described in this study are by far the most common in the intertidal zone of the Schelde estuary. Another important intertidal community, dominated by very mobile species like *Bathyporeia* spec., *Haustorius arenarius* and *Eurydice pulchra*, was observed on places with a highly dynamic nature, and therefore with a much coarser sediment ('megaripples', see YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1991). This community was not observed in this study but is found on some parts of the sand banks and mudflats, mainly in the brackish part of the estuary.

Distribution of the intertidal macrozoobenthic species in the Schelde estuary seems to be mainly controlled by salinity. The observed species distribution follows the classical concepts of species response to salinity gradients (REMANE & SCHLIEPER 1958; REMANE 1971), except that the reduction of species was more acute and that a lag occurred in the increase in number of species from the oligohaline to the freshwater tidal zone of the Schelde estuary.

The observed gradient in species composition and dominance in the marine and brackish part of the Schelde estuary is comparable with other European estuaries like the Ems, Weser, Elbe, Loire and Forth (WOLFF 1973; MICHAELIS 1983; ROBINEAU & MARCHAND 1984; ROBINEAU 1987; MCLUSKY 1987). Many similarities, especially in the marine part, can be demonstrated, but on the other hand every estuary has its own physical and therefore ecological characteristics (see also MEIRE et al. 1991; WARWICK et al. 1991). For instance, how far a marine species is able to penetrate into an estuary largely depends on the amount and variability of the freshwater discharge, relative to the tidal inflow of sea water.

The macrozoobenthos of the oligohaline and freshwater tidal part of the Schelde estuary, characterized by the presence of only Oligochaeta, is at present quite different from some other European estuaries. However, as compared to the marine and brackish parts of estuaries, less data on the occurrence of benthic invertebrates in the freshwater tidal parts of estuaries is available. The oligohaline zone, which is both a physical and a biological buffer, is in estuaries like Weser, Elbe and Loire also characterized by the lowest species richness. Contrary to the Schelde estuary, however, in these estuaries also other species, both real freshwater species (e.g. insect larvae) and marine/brackish water species (e.g. *Corophium lacustre*), occur (MICHAELIS 1983; ROBINEAU 1987; HAESLOOP 1990).

In the real freshwater tidal parts of the Ems, Weser and Elbe estuaries an increase in freshwater species richness had been found. Besides various Oligochaeta species, also molluscs (e.g. *Potamopyrgus jenkinsi*, *Pisidium* spp.), insect larvae (e.g. chironomids) and crustaceans (e.g. *Gammarus* spp.) are observed (DÖRJE & REINECK 1981; RHODE 1982; HAESLOOP 1990). However, compared to the marine part of these estuaries, species richness is still very low. In the Weser estuary a special situation occurs since the freshwater tidal part is suffering from an anthropogenic increase in salinity, coming from industries more upstream. Therefore, no real distinction can be made between the brackish and freshwater part of the Weser estuary since also a lot of brackish water species are observed in the freshwater part, besides the normal fresh water species (HAESLOOP 1990). However, the above mentioned studies did not find the same species richness as described for the former freshwater tidal area Biesbosch (WOLFF 1973) and for the Elbe estuary (CASPER 1948). In the latter, CASPER observed more than 30 species, of which 8 Oligochaeta (e.g. *Limnodrilus hoffmeisteri* and *Tubifex tubifex*), larvae of 10 chironomids, 8 molluscs (e.g. *Pisidium* and *Sphaerium*) 3 gastropods and 4 crustaceans (e.g. *Gammarus zaddachi* and *Neomysis integer*). This is however still much lower as compared to the marine part of estuaries. In the North-American estuaries the oligohaline and freshwater tidal parts are also characterized by a relatively low species richness, with Oligochaeta and chironomids, and to a lesser extent amphipods and molluscs, as the dominating species (SIMPSON et al. 1986; ODUM et al. 1988; DIAZ 1989).

The impact of pollution on estuarine ecosystems is particularly difficult to assess because of a high degree of natural biological variability (in time and space), due to the highly dynamic nature of the estuarine physical environment (see also MEIRE et al. 1991). Therefore, it is very difficult to separate pollution effects from natural variation in these benthic communities or to determine the impact of pollution on benthic communities.

Especially in the Schelde estuary it is very difficult to relate the distribution patterns of the macrozoobenthos to anthropogenic stress, since concentrations of most pollu-



tants are following the same gradient as the salinity. There is, however, evidence that the benthic fauna in the freshwater tidal zone and the upstream part of the brackish zone (the oligohaline zone) is suffering from the pollutants entering the estuary. In the Schelde estuary the reduction of species is extremely acute and more severe than predicted by Remane's model. Over a very large stretch only a very uniform benthic community, existing of *Oligochaeta*, was found. Unfortunately, no historical data exist on the benthic fauna of the freshwater tidal part of the Schelde estuary before the heavy industrialization and urbanisation. Other evidence for impact of pollution on the structure of the benthic community is the observation that some euryhaline (e.g. *Nereis diversicolor*) or brackish water (e.g. *Corophium volutator*) species don't enter the Schelde as far as in other estuaries. Also the lack of some typically brackish water species (e.g. *Streblospio shrubsolii*) can probably be attributed to pollution.

Based on these observations it seems that the Schelde estuary is suffering more severe from pollution than many other European estuaries. The way how pollution is responsible for this impoverishment, is at this moment not yet unraveled. The lack of oxygen in both water and sediment, which appears very often in the freshwater tidal zone of the estuary as a consequence of the very high inputs of organic matter and nutrients, is probably a main cause. Interaction between sediment contaminants (organic and inorganic micropollutants) and benthic organisms is not yet well understood, but sublethal effects on the benthic fauna are expected.

Finally, not only pollution is threatening freshwater tidal parts of European and North-American estuaries. Some authors mention impacts of canalization and dredging on the freshwater tidal ecosystem in general, and more particularly on the benthic fauna (ROBINEAU & MARCHAND 1984; HAESLOOP 1990).

Acknowledgements

This work was undertaken with financial and logistic support from the Ministry of Transport and Public Works, Directorate Zeeland, Middelburg, The Netherlands.

For assistance in the field under the most "muddy" conditions we are grateful to Nico De Regge, Tonny Temmerman and the crew of the 'Wijtvliet'. E. Daemen, E. Kuijken, J. Craeymeersch and M. Vincx provided valuable comments on an earlier draft of this paper.

Chapter 3

Large-scale spatial patterns in estuaries: estuarine macrobenthic communities in the Schelde estuary, NW-Europe

T. Ysebaert, P. Meire, J. Crqeymeersch, P.M.J. Herman and H. Verbeek

Abstract

In literature, few macrobenthic studies have dealt with the two major gradients in estuarine benthic habitats: the salinity gradient along the estuary (longitudinal) and the gradients from high intertidal to deep subtidal sites (vertical gradient). In this broad-scale study, a large data set (3112 samples) of the Schelde estuary allowed us to thoroughly analyze these both gradients, and relate macro-

benthic species distributions and community structure to the predominant environmental variables (salinity, depth, current velocities and sediment characteristics). An univariate analysis clearly revealed distinct gradients in diversity, abundance, and biomass along the vertical and longitudinal gradient. In general, highest diversity and biomass were observed in the intertidal, polyhaline zone and decreased with decreasing salinity. Abundance did not show clear trends. Spring abundance and biomass were much lower as compared to autumn values. In all salinity regions, very low values for all measures were observed in all subtidal depth strata.

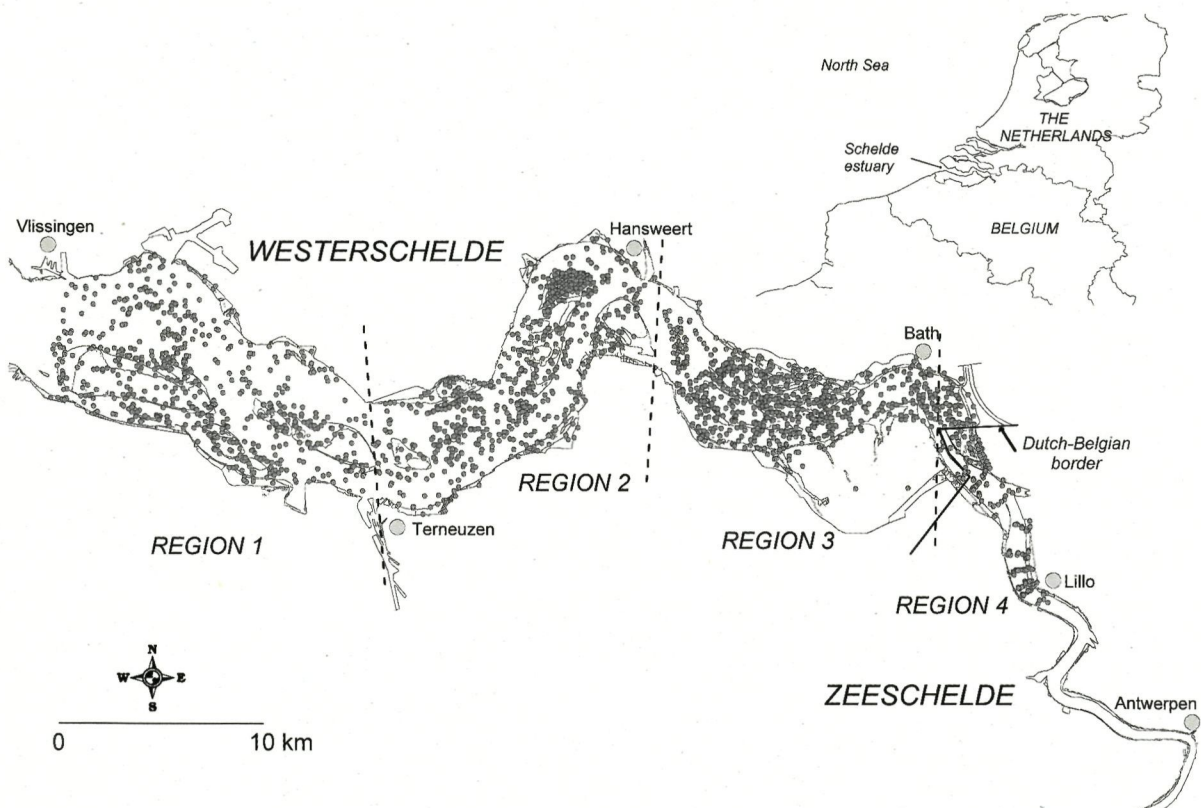


Figure 3.1. Map of the Schelde estuary (polyhaline and mesohaline zone) with indication of the sampling locations and the four salinity regions.



Abundance was in all salinity regions dominated by both surface and sub-surface deposit feeders. Clear gradients in the biomass of the different feeding guilds were observed in the intertidal zone. Suspension feeders dominated in the polyhaline zone and showed a significant decrease with decreasing salinity. A same trend was observed for surface deposit feeders and sub-surface deposit feeders had significantly higher biomass values in the polyhaline zone as compared to the mesohaline zone. Omnivores showed an opposite trend, with a significantly higher biomass in the β -mesohaline zone.

The different multivariate analyses showed a strong relationship between the macrobenthic assemblages and the predominant forces (gradients) in the Schelde estuary. A first gradient was related to depth, which reflected also the hydrodynamic conditions. A second gradient was clearly related to salinity and confirms the observations from the univariate analysis. Sediment characteristics appeared to be more correlated with depth and current velocities, but correlation was rather weak. The different assemblages are further described in terms of indicator species and abiotic characteristics.

Introduction

Macrobenthos is an important component of estuarine ecosystems and plays an important role in the system dynamics (structure and function) of estuaries (HERMAN et al. 1999). It is a central element of estuarine food webs, being an important food resource for crustaceans, fish and birds (DAY et al. 1989). Humans also harvest many species of shellfish and crustaceans.

Estuaries are transitional environments between rivers and the sea, characterized by widely varying and often unpredictable hydrological, morphological and chemical conditions and gradients (DAY et al. 1989). Estuarine organisms are often restricted to particular sections of environmental gradients, resulting in well developed zonation patterns. The spatial heterogeneity of macrobenthos across the estuarine gradient is mostly described in relation to salinity and sediment composition (e.g. SANDERS et al. 1965; CARRIKER 1967; WOLFF 1973; GRAY 1974; BEUKEMA 1976; BOESCH 1977; MICHAELIS 1983; HOLLAND et al. 1987; MEIRE et al. 1994; SCHLACHER & WOOLDRIDGE 1996; MANNINO & MONTAGNA 1997; YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a). WARWICK & UNCLES (1980) and WARWICK et al. (1991) pointed out the relative importance of dynamic processes themselves, and the static factors resulting from them, in determining the community structure of macrobenthos. Other studies emphasize the importance of hydrodynamical conditions such as current velocity and bed shear stress for the transport of sediment, food and juvenile macrofauna (WARWICK & UNCLES 1980; GRANT 1983; BUTMAN 1987;

SNELGROVE & BUTMAN 1994). Recent studies also consider hydrodynamic factors affecting the stability of the sediment by mobilizing bed material, including macrofauna (HALL 1994; BELL et al. 1997; GRANT et al. 1997).

Knowledge on the spatial distribution patterns of macrobenthos along estuarine gradients might help to identify the linkages between species distributions and ecological processes and therefore to gain insight into the functioning of estuarine ecosystems (see e.g. THRUSH et al. 1999), which is essential for a sound implementation of integrated estuarine management. However, in their review HEIP et al. (1995) concluded that, because of a biased sampling strategy, few studies dealt with the two major gradients in macrotidal, estuarine benthic habitats, the salinity gradient of the estuary and the gradient from high intertidal to deep subtidal sites.

The macrotidal Schelde estuary is one of the longest estuaries in NW-Europe. It is a turbid, nutrient-rich, heterotrophic ecosystem (HEIP et al. 1995; SOETAERT & HERMAN 1995a) which is under permanent stress due to a high load of urban, industrial and agricultural waste (VAN ECK & DE ROOIJ 1993). Being an important shipping channel to the harbour of Antwerpen, the estuary is extensively dredged (8–12*10⁶ m³ per year at present). This has resulted in several changes in the morphology of the estuary (VROON et al. 1997). Future plans of a further deepening of the estuary will increase the dredging activities by more than 50%. To evaluate the impacts of the dredging activities, the macrobenthos has been monitored extensively during the last decade, resulting in a large amount of data. The present paper describes the spatial distribution patterns of macrobenthos on an estuarine meso- and macro-scale, in relation to the predominant estuarine environmental variables salinity, depth, current velocity and sediment characteristics. Indicator species, trophic structure and community structure are defined along the prevalent estuarine gradients. The dataset presented here will be used further to model and predict macrobenthic species response to (changes in) environmental conditions in estuarine ecosystems (YSEBAERT et al. *subm.*).

Materials and methods

Study area

The Schelde estuary, a macrotidal, nutrient-rich, heterotrophic system, measures 160 km from the mouth near Vlissingen (The Netherlands) to Gent (Belgium) and is one of the longest estuaries in NW-Europe with still a complete salinity gradient. The study area is limited to the Westerschelde (Dutch part) and a small part of the Zeeschelde (Belgian part) near the Dutch-Belgian border



(Figure 3.1), comprising the complete polyhaline and mesohaline zone of the estuary. The mean tidal range increases from 3.8 m at Vlissingen to 5.0 m near the border. The river discharge varies from $20 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ during summer to $400 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ during winter, with a mean annual average of $105 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$. The residence time of the water in the estuary ranges from one to three months, depending on the river discharge (SOETAERT & HERMAN 1995b). Only the most seaward region has a residence time of about 10-15 days.

The lower and middle estuary, the Westerschelde (55 km), is a well mixed region characterized by a complex morphology with flood and ebb channels surrounding several large intertidal mud- and sandflats. The surface of the Westerschelde amounts to 310 km^2 , with the intertidal area covering 35%. The average channel depth is approximately 15-20 m. Upstream the Dutch/Belgian border the estuary is characterized by a single channel. The turbidity maximum is situated near Antwerpen, but moves over a quite large distance, mainly as a result of tidal action and river run off (WOLLAST & PETERS 1978; BAEYENS et al. 1998; FETTWEIS et al. 1998). Also in this zone of the estuary oxygen concentration decreases rapidly, mainly due to the heavy loading with nutrients and allochthonous organic material, causing high microbial activity (e.g. GOOSEN et al. 1995, 1999). For more details on the ecological and physicochemical properties of the estuary see MEIRE & VINCKX (1993), HEIP & HERMAN (1995), BAEYENS et al. (1998), HERMAN & HEIP (1999) and VAN DAMME et al. (1999, *subm.*).

Macrobenthos database

An extensive data set on macrobenthos is available for the Schelde estuary. A total of 3112 macrobenthos samples, mainly within the framework of monitoring programmes, were collected in the study area by different institutes in the period 1978-1997. By far most data were collected and analysed by two institutes, namely the Centre for Estuarine and Coastal Ecology NIOO-CEMO (e.g. CRAEYMEERSCH et al. 1996; BRUMMELHUIS et al. 1997; CRAEYMEERSCH 1999) and the Institute of Nature Conservation (before that at the University of Gent) (e.g. YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1991, 1998; DE NEVE et al. 1998), mainly in co-operation with the National Institute for Marine and Coastal Management (RWS-RIKZ). 90% of the samples were collected from 1990 onwards. 54% were taken in autumn (September-October), 32% in spring (March-April-May). Most sampling locations (68%) were sampled only once, but several locations were sampled two to five times in the sampling period considered, and a few were sampled more frequently within a long term programme.

Different collecting methods were used, but in general multiple sediment cores were used for sampling the intertidal zone, and Van Veen grab or Reineck box corer for the subtidal zone. All samples regard the macrobenthos, these are all animals retained on a sieve with mesh size 1 mm. For more details on the sampling methods and the design of the monitoring programmes see MEIRE et al. (1991), YSEBAERT et al. (1993) and CRAEYMEERSCH (1999).

Abiotic variables

For each sample the following abiotic environmental variables were added to the macrobenthos database: depth/elevation, salinity, current velocities (maximum ebb and flood current velocities), sediment characteristics (median grain size and mud content). At subtidal stations depth was recorded at the time of sampling. The elevation of the intertidal stations was measured directly in the field or from a Geographical Information System, storing all bathymetric data in the area. For 2874 samples (92%) depth was added in the database. Depth is expressed in m NAP (NAP, Dutch Ordnance level, similar to Mean Sea Level).

Salinity was estimated for each sampling location using a 2Dh-hydrodynamic model SCALDIS400 (LIEVENSE 1994) with a spatial resolution of 400 meter. The model calculations are based on values for mean tidal conditions with a yearly averaged discharge, giving an average salinity value. The advantage of using the SCALDIS400 model is that a high spatial resolution is obtained but the estimates are not seasonally defined. Therefore also monthly to fortnightly measurements at nine stations along the Westerschelde were used to represent the temporal variation in salinity, but at a much coarser spatial resolution than model salinity. For each sample the temporal salinity was determined as the average salinity of the three months previous to the date of sampling. Estimates obtained from model simulations are called 'model salinities', whereas the values derived from field observations are called 'temporal salinities'.

Current velocities (maximum ebb and flood current velocities in m s^{-1}) for each sampling location were estimated with the SCALDIS100 model (DEKKER et al. 1994) for mean tidal conditions, with a spatial resolution of 100 meter. For 3037 samples current velocity estimates were available.

Samples for sediment grain size analysis (by laser diffraction technique) were collected during several campaigns. For 1502 and 1386 samples (48 % and 45%) median grain size and mud content (volume % < $63 \mu\text{m}$) values were added to the database respectively.



Data analysis

All macrobenthic abundance data were transformed to numbers m⁻² (ind m⁻²), and biomass data to g Ash Free Dry Weight m⁻² (g AFDW m⁻²). Most species were determined at species level. *Bathyporeia*, *Ensis*, *Microphthalmus*, *Nemertea*, *Oligochaeta*, *Ophelia*, *Polydora*, *Spio*, and *Spisula* were lumped as the determination level differed among studies. Each species was classified into feeding groups based on the food source (e.g. FAUCHALD & JUMARS 1979; BARNES 1982). Trophic groups included surface deposit feeders, sub-surface deposit feeders, suspension feeders, omnivores and predators. Species feeding by more than one mode were classified by their most common feeding mechanism.

The longitudinal (model salinity) gradient of the study area was categorized into four salinity regions: lower estuary (region 1: Vlissingen-Terneuzen); middle estuary (region 2: Terneuzen-Hansweert); inner estuary (region 3: Hansweert-Bath); inner/upper estuary (region 4: Bath-Lillo)

ture and its relationship to matching environmental data (FIELD et al. 1982). Only species observed in more than 15 samples were included in the analyses and all higher taxa, except *Oligochaeta* and *Nemertea*, were excluded, resulting in 58 macrobenthic species. Separate analyses were performed for the data set without sediment data (n=2612) and the data set with sediment data (n=1243), hereafter called data set A and data set B. The samples were classified into clusters (both for abundance and biomass data) using the classification program Two-Way Indicator Species Analysis - TWINSPLAN (HILL 1979).

Multivariate ordination techniques were used to investigate, for the dataset with sediment data and the dataset without sediment data separately, the variation in the species data set and the relationship between species composition and the measured environmental variables. As the gradient length in standard deviation (SD) units, determined in a preliminary detrended correspondence analysis (DCA; with detrending by segments), did exceed 4 SD, a strong unimodal response was considered and therefore

Table 3.1. Average (± standard deviation) and minimum-maximum model and temporal salinity of the sampling occasions in each salinity region (see text for further explanation).

Salinity region	1	2	3	4
Model salinity				
Average	29.23 ± 1.36	23.96 ± 1.52	16.52 ± 2.04	8.93 ± 1.41
min.-max.	26.21 – 31.61	20.33 – 27.35	10.20 – 20.33	5.69 – 13.38
Temporal salinity				
Average	27.56 ± 2.71	20.36 ± 4.50	14.22 ± 5.32	9.78 ± 3.04
min.-max.	16.96 – 32.39	8.38 – 26.87	1.86 – 21.55	1.15 – 15.18
N	722	959	956	475

(Figure 3.1). In salinity regions 1-3 the proportion of samples collected in spring was similar (33-44%), whereas in salinity region 4 only 15% of the samples were collected in spring. The vertical (depth) gradient was divided into four depth strata: the intertidal or littoral zone and three strata in the subtidal (undep 2-5m beneath NAP; deep 5-8m beneath NAP; channel > 8m beneath NAP). Comparisons among depth categories and sediment characteristics and current velocities were examined with ANOVA on log-transformed data. The relations between environmental variables were further examined by Spearman rank correlations. The general trends in diversity, abundance, biomass and trophic structure of the macrobenthos along the longitudinal and vertical gradients were examined with a Two-way ANOVA on log-transformed data. A spring-autumn comparison was made for the intertidal zone.

Numerical classification and ordination (based on log transformed data) were used to analyze community struc-

Canonical Correspondence Analysis (CCA) was applied (JONGMAN et al. 1995; TER BRAAK 1994; TER BRAAK & SMILAUER 1998). As the macrobenthos data were sampled in different seasons, it is likely that there is seasonal variation in the biological assemblage and the environment. This seasonal variation was not the prime research question. Therefore, a partial CCA was applied, with the different months representing covariables (TER BRAAK 1988; TER BRAAK & VERDONSCHOT 1995; TER BRAAK & SMILAUER 1998). Forward selection of environmental variables was used to identify and rank their importance for determining the species composition (TER BRAAK & VERDONSCHOT 1995; TER BRAAK & SMILAUER 1998). In the first step of this method, all environmental variables are ranked on the basis of the fit for each separate variable (marginal effects). At the end of the first step of the forward selection the best variable is selected. Hereafter, all remaining environmental variables are ranked on the basis of the fit that each separate variable gives in conjunction with the variable(s) already select-

Table 3.2. Average \pm Standard Deviation for median grain size (μm), mud content ($\% < 63 \mu\text{m}$), maximum ebb and flood current velocities (m s^{-1}) for each depth stratum.

	Median grain size	Mud content	Max ebb	Max flood
Depth stratum				
1 (intertidal)	139.1 \pm 69.1 n=922	22.9 \pm 23.1 n=888	0.42 \pm 0.19 n=1481	0.39 \pm 0.23 n=1481
2 (undep subtidal)	192.9 \pm 84.8 n=173	13.5 \pm 21.6 n=150	0.74 \pm 0.25 n=471	0.79 \pm 0.27 n=471
3 (deep subtidal)	202.7 \pm 87.2 n=143	14.0 \pm 21.9 n=116	0.83 \pm 0.22 n=429	0.88 \pm 0.26 n=429
4 (channel)	218.2 \pm 91.9 n=264	10.5 \pm 18.4 n=232	0.97 \pm 0.23 n=656	1.00 \pm 0.27 n=656

ed (conditional effects). The statistical significance of the effect of each variable and the significance of the first canonical eigenvalue and of the sum of all eigenvalues was tested with Monte Carlo permutation tests (199 unrestricted permutations, $p<0.05$).

Results

Characterization of the abiotic environment

Average model salinity varied between 5.7 and 31.6 for the whole study area. Salinity regions 1 and 2 belonged to the polyhaline zone, salinity regions 3 and 4 to the α - and β -mesohaline zone respectively (Table 3.1). Based on temporal salinity, region 2 could be considered as a poly-/mesohaline transition zone, whereas salinity region 4 could be considered as a meso-/oligohaline transition zone. Both salinity measures were strongly correlated ($r= 0.86$; $p<0.01$; $n=3112$).

There was a significant difference between depth strata for median grain size (ANOVA, $F=56$; $p<0.001$) and mud content (ANOVA, $F=53$; $p<0.001$), with a clear trend of coarser sediments with less silt content from the intertidal to the deep subtidal and channel (Table 3.2), which was also demonstrated by the significant positive correlation between depth and median grain size ($r= 0.46$; $p<0.01$; $n=1436$) and the significant negative correlation between depth and mud content ($r= -0.39$; $p<0.01$; $n=1326$). This rather weak correlation could be explained by the fact that this trend was not consistent within each salinity region (Figure 3.2). In salinity regions 1-3 mud content was significantly higher in the intertidal zone as compared to all subtidal strata, but overall means were relatively low. In comparison, in salinity region 4 much higher mud contents were observed in all depth strata, but here differences between depth strata were relatively small, with only a weak trend towards coarser sediments with increasing depth.

Significantly higher current velocities, both under ebb and flood conditions, were observed in the subtidal strata as compared to the intertidal zone (ANOVA, $F=815$ (ebb) and $F=789$ (flood), $p<0.001$), which was also demonstrated by the highly significant correlation between depth and maximal ebb current velocities ($r= 0.76$; $p<0.01$; $n=2827$) and maximal flood current velocities ($r= 0.75$; $p<0.01$; $n=2827$). This pattern is consistent within each salinity region. A significant, but rather weak, correlation was observed between current velocities and median grain size ($r=.44$; $p<0.01$; $n=1455$) and mud content ($r=-.38$; $p<0.01$; $n=1340$) respectively, indicating coarser sediments with lower mud contents with higher current velocities. Finally, a strong negative correlation was observed between median grain size and mud content ($r=-.84$; $n=1386$).

General characteristics of macrobenthos

Macrofauna species richness (number of species, N_0) in a single sample varied between 0 and 25 species. In 202 samples (6.5 %) no macrobenthic animals were found. Most samples (51 %) had less then 5 species and in 28 % of the samples between 5 and 10 species were observed. The most common species were *Heteromastus filiformis*, observed in 58% of the samples, *Macoma balthica* (41%),

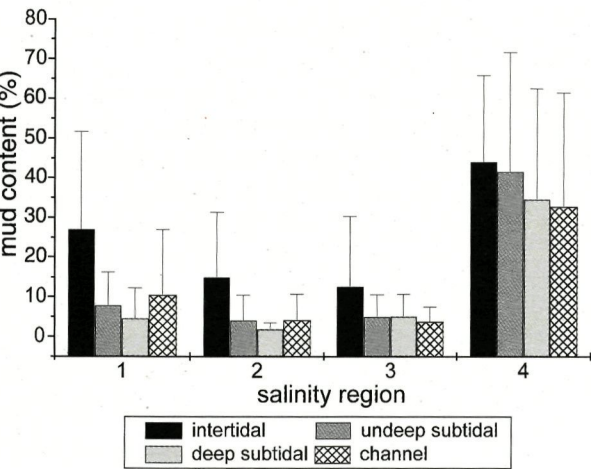


Figure 3.2. Mean mud content (\pm SD) observed in each depth stratum per salinity region. For the division of salinity regions: see text and Figure 3.1. (salinity regions 1&2: polyhaline zone; salinity regions 3&4: mesohaline zone).

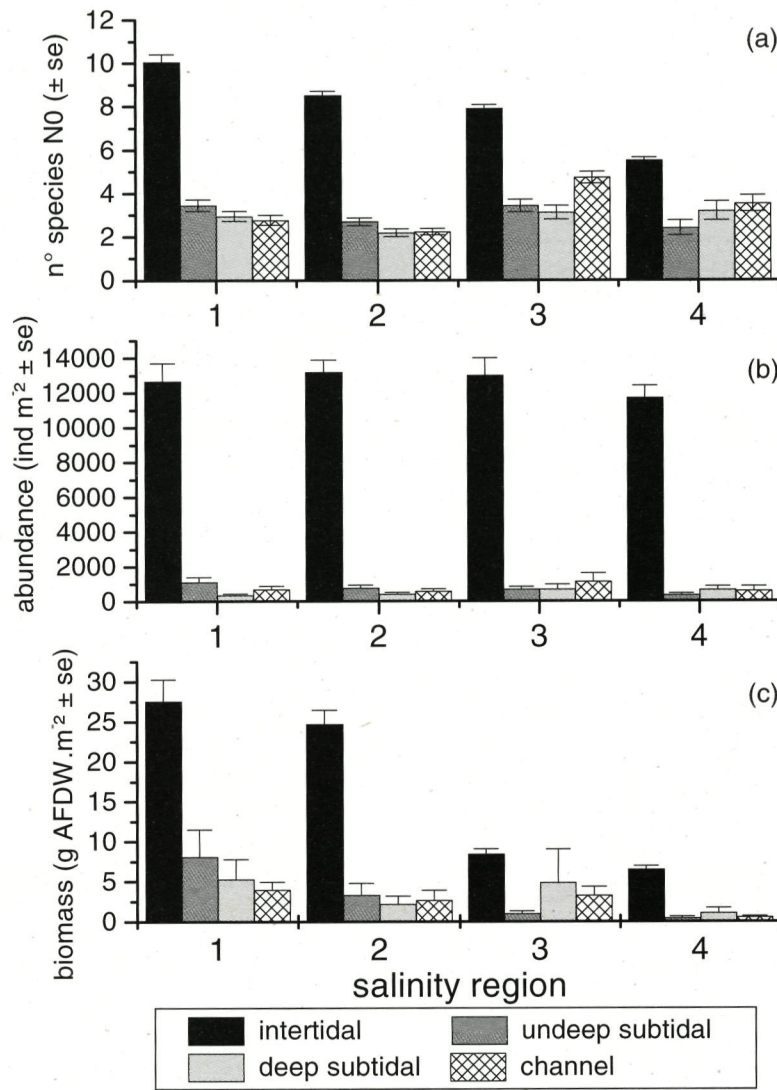


Figure 3.3. Mean number of species, mean abundance (ind m⁻²) and mean biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) observed along the longitudinal (salinity regions) and vertical gradient (depth strata) in the Schelde estuary. For the division of salinity regions: see text and Figure 3.1. (salinity regions 1&2: polyhaline zone; salinity regions 3&4: mesohaline zone).

Pygospio elegans (36%), *Bathyporeia* spp. (30%), *Nereis diversicolor* (26%) and *Hydrobia ulvae* (25%). Other species occurred in less than 20 % of the samples.

Total abundance varied between 0 and 225,568 ind m⁻². In about half the samples abundance was less than 1000 ind m⁻² and in about one third, abundance varied between 1000 and 10,000 ind m⁻². The three most abundant macrofauna taxa were Polychaeta, Mollusca and Crustacea.

Total biomass varied between 0 and 466.5 g AFDW m⁻². In about half the samples biomass was less than 1 g AFDW m⁻² and in about one third biomass varied between 1 and 10 g AFDW m⁻².

General trends along longitudinal (salinity) and vertical (depth) gradients

As the ratio spring:autumn samples was more or less similar within each salinity region, except for salinity region 4 where relatively more autumn samples occurred, trends were based on all available data. The mean number of species (N₀) per sample was significantly different between the salinity regions (Two-way ANOVA, F=15.5; p<0.0001) and the depth strata (Two-way ANOVA, F=499; p<0.0001), with also a significant interaction term salinity*depth (Two-way ANOVA, F=14; p<0.001). In the intertidal zone a clear decrease in N₀ from the polyhaline zone towards the mesohaline zone was observed (Figure 3.3). In each salinity region a significantly higher number of species (per sample) was observed in the intertidal zone as compared

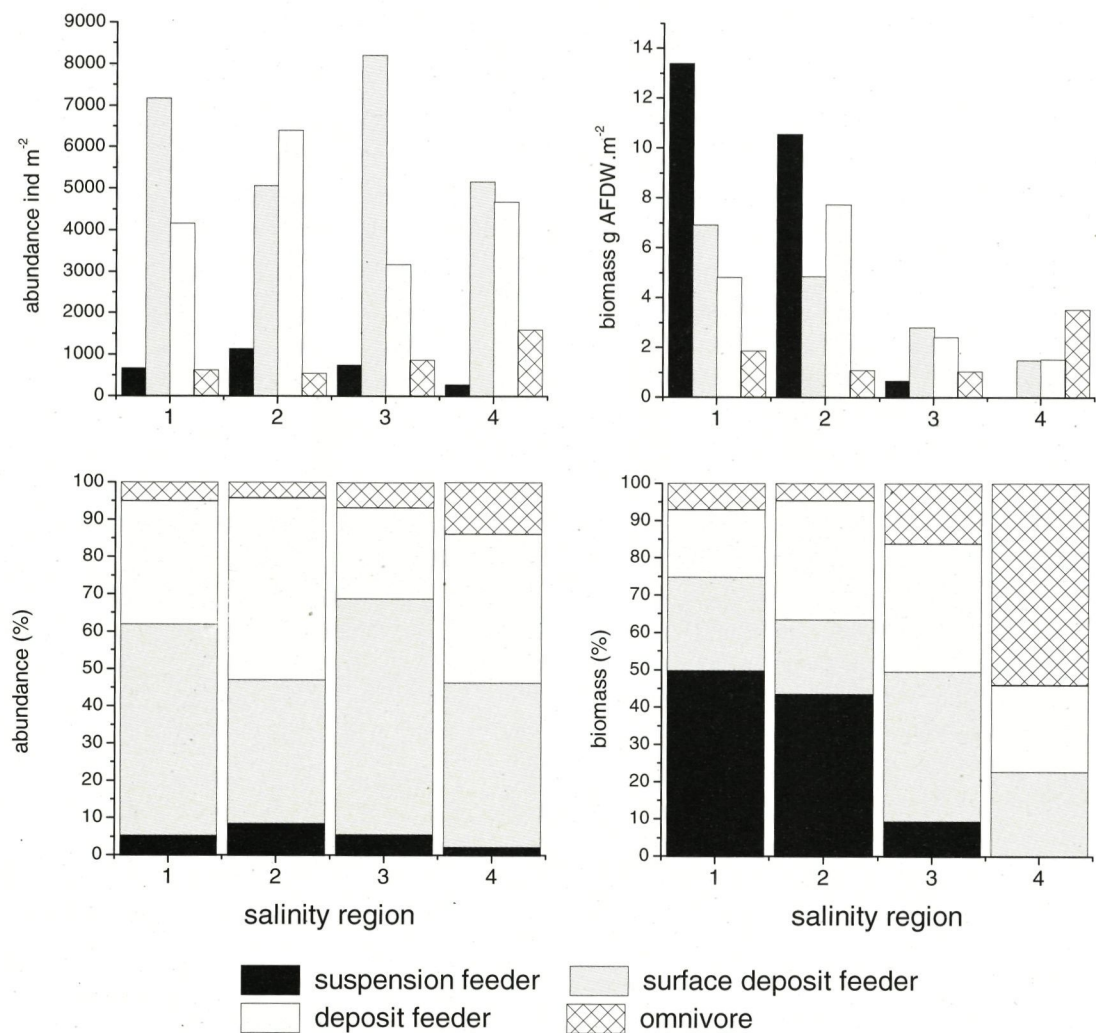


Figure 3.4. Absolute and relative dominance (abundance and biomass) of the different feeding guilds in the intertidal (littoral) zone of each salinity region. For the division of salinity regions: see text and Figure 3.1. (salinity regions 1&2: polyhaline zone; salinity regions 3&4: mesohaline zone).

to the subtidal zone. In the subtidal zone the average number of species observed per sample did not show a clear trend and was more or less similar within each salinity region and within each depth stratum.

Intertidal macrofauna total abundance was similar between salinity regions, but gave both an overall (Two-way ANOVA, $F=762$; $p<0.0001$), as for each salinity region separately, significant difference with depth, showing a significant higher abundance for the intertidal zone as compared to the subtidal strata (Figure 3.3). Within the subtidal strata, no significant difference was observed.

Macrofauna total biomass showed both a significant difference between salinity regions (Two-way ANOVA, $F=21$; $p<0.0001$) and depth strata (Two-way ANOVA, $F=439$; $p<0.0001$), with also a significant interaction term salinity*depth (Two-way ANOVA, $F=7$; $p<0.001$). Highest

biomass values were observed in the highest salinity regions (polyhaline zone) and the intertidal zone (Figure 3.3). Within the subtidal strata, no significant difference was observed.

Trophic structure of the macrobenthos

In the intertidal zone, abundance was in all salinity regions dominated by surface deposit feeders and deposit feeders showing no clear trends (Figure 3.4). Abundance of suspension feeders was low. Omnivore/predator abundance was low in the salinity regions 1-3, but increased significantly in salinity region 4 (ANOVA $F=121.3$, $p<0.001$).

Clear gradients in the biomass of the different feeding guilds were observed in the intertidal zone (Figure 3.4).

Suspension feeders dominated in the polyhaline zone and showed a significant decrease with decreasing salinity (ANOVA $F=30.2$, $p<0.0001$). A same trend was observed for surface deposit feeders (ANOVA $F=22.9$, $p<0.0001$) and deposit feeders had significantly higher biomass values in the polyhaline zone as compared to the mesohaline zone (ANOVA $F=65.2$, $p<0.0001$). Omnivores showed an opposite trend, with a significantly higher biomass in the β -mesohaline zone (ANOVA $F=51.6$, $p<0.0001$); in salinity region 4 omnivores were the dominant group. Salinity region 3 acted as an intermediate region with here surface deposit and deposit feeders dominating the biomass.

In the subtidal zone abundance was also dominated by surface deposit feeders and deposit feeders in all salinity regions (44-85%), whereas biomass was dominated by suspension feeders. This was in all salinity regions due to the presence of high biomass values of suspension feeders in only a few samples. In the polyhaline zone the suspension feeders were mainly *Ensis* and *Spisula*, whereas in the α -mesohaline zone a few samples in *Mytilus* banks were responsible for this dominance. In salinity region 4 a few samples with oysters were responsible for this dominance (YSEBAERT et al., in press).

Seasonal variations in the intertidal zone

In the intertidal zone mean number of species per sample, mean total abundance and mean total biomass were in general significantly higher in autumn as compared to spring in all salinity regions (Table 3.3). The five most dominant species in each salinity region, both in terms of abundance and biomass, are presented in Figure 3.5. In salinity region 1 abundance was dominated in both seasons by the surface deposit feeders (SDF) *P. elegans* and *Tharyx marioni* and the sub-surface deposit feeder (SSDF) *H. filiformis*. Biomass in spring was more evenly distributed among several species, whereas in autumn the suspension feeder (SF) *Cerastoderma edule* dominated. In salinity region 2 abundance was dominated by *H. filiformis* and *P. elegans*, and to a lesser extent by the grazer *H. ulvae*. For biomass, most dominant species in both seasons was *C.*

edule, but also *H. filiformis*, the SDF *M. balthica*, the SF *Mya arenaria* (autumn) and the SSDF *Arenicola marina* (spring) contributed substantially to the biomass. In salinity region 3 abundance was dominated by *P. elegans* and *H. filiformis*, with in autumn also the SDF *Corophium volutator* predominantly present. In spring biomass was dominated by *M. balthica*, the omnivore *N. diversicolor* and *H. filiformis*, whereas in autumn the dominance of *H. filiformis* became more pronounced. In salinity region 4 abundance was dominated by *C. volutator*, *H. filiformis* and *N. diversicolor* in both seasons. Biomass was dominated by *N. diversicolor*, with in autumn also *H. filiformis* and *C. volutator* predominantly present.

The relatively large differences in abundance and biomass between spring and autumn for most macrobenthic species could only be partially attributed to a difference in occurrence (presence), since most species were present in the same proportion in both seasons. Largest differences in occurrence between both seasons were observed for *C. edule* and for the species of salinity region 4 (*M. balthica*, *H. filiformis*, and *C. volutator*).

Classification and indicator species

The clusters distinguished only reveal the large-scale estuarine patterns. Up to five levels of the TWINSpan classification are summarized in Table 3.4 and 3.5 for data set B on abundance and biomass data respectively. Further divisions were not considered. The classification based on abundance and biomass data resulted in similar divisions. Especially clusters 2, 7 and 8 were very similar, with 77-94% of the samples mutually observed. The division of clusters 3-6 was slightly different when based on abundance or biomass data respectively, with several samples interchanged among clusters of the two classifications. However, abiotic characterization and indicator species of all biomass clusters were similar to the abundance clusters, but the contributions of the individual species, as indicated by the indicator values, differed.

Table 3.3. Mean number of species per sample, mean total abundance (ind m⁻²) and mean total biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) in spring (March-May) and autumn (August-October) per salinity region in the intertidal zone of the Schelde estuary (means \pm standard error). For salinity regions: see table 3.1 and Figure 3.1.

Salinity region	1		2		3		4	
Intertidal zone	Spring	Autumn	Spring	Autumn	Spring	Autumn	Spring	Autumn
N° of species	8.57 \pm 0.55	10.90 \pm 0.48	8.12 \pm 0.62	8.95 \pm 0.31	6.59 \pm 0.28	8.36 \pm 0.27	4.18 \pm 0.35	5.78 \pm 0.14
Abundance	7833 \pm 1171	16139 \pm 1658	8205 \pm 642	16682 \pm 1340	6378 \pm 764	15766 \pm 1559	5325 \pm 997	12614 \pm 838
Biomass	14.50 \pm 1.88	34.48 \pm 4.68	20.39 \pm 2.07	31.32 \pm 3.60	4.99 \pm 0.73	8.90 \pm 0.92	4.97 \pm 0.79	6.06 \pm 0.44
N	97	135	169	218	147	249	33	214

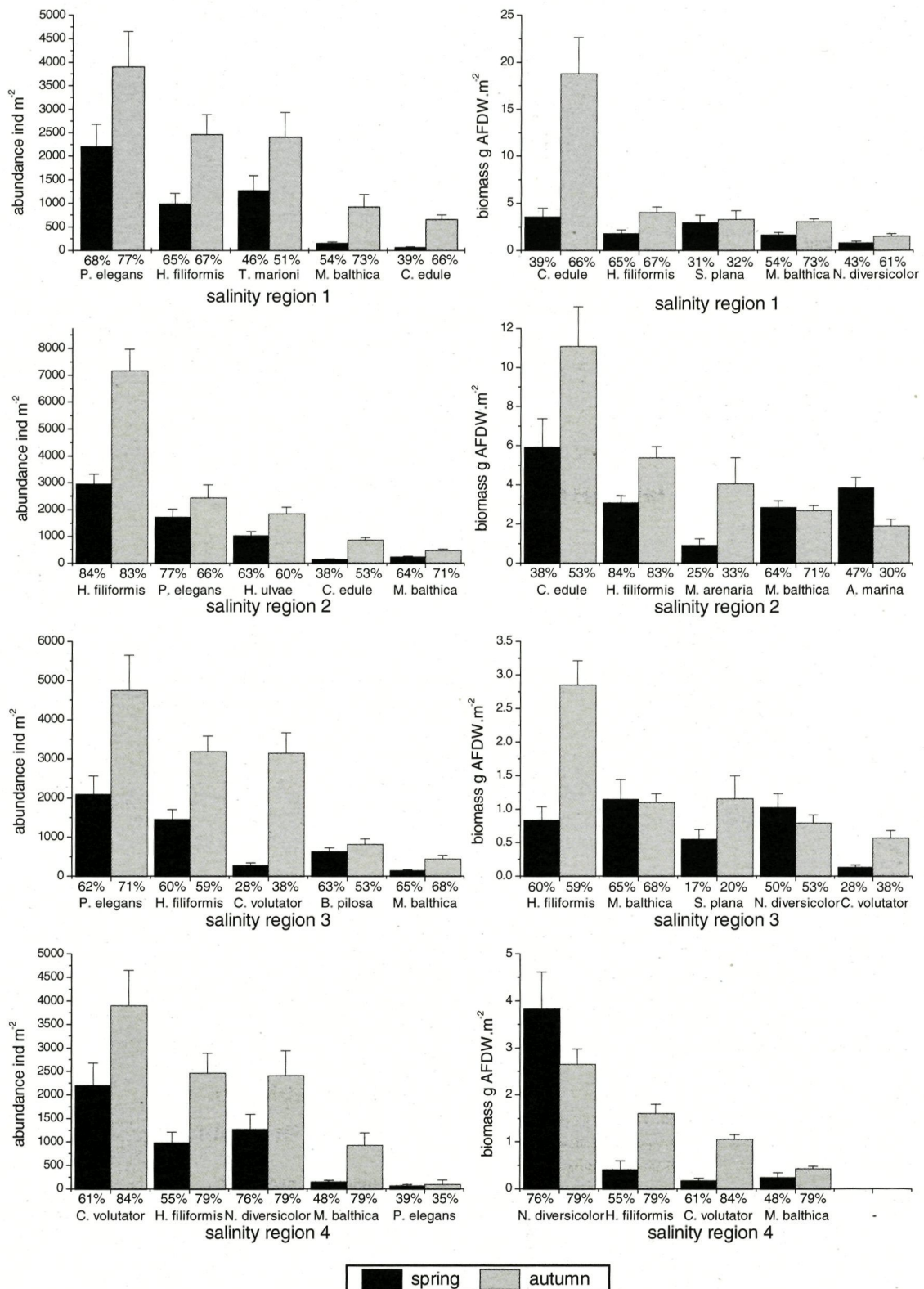


Figure 3.5. Abundance (ind $m^{-2} \pm se$) and biomass (g AFDW $m^{-2} \pm se$) in spring (March-May) and autumn (August-October) of the five most dominant macrobenthic species in the intertidal (littoral) zone of each salinity region. For each species also the % occurrence in spring and autumn respectively is given. For the division of salinity regions: see text and Figure 3.1. (salinity regions 1&2: polyhaline zone; salinity regions 3&4: mesohaline zone).

Table 3.4. Dendrogram representing the TWINSpan classification based on macrofauna abundance (data set B, n=1243). For each cluster mean \pm SD of the environmental variables model salinity (psu), depth (m), maximum ebb and maximum flood current velocity ($m.s^{-1}$), median grain size (μm) and mud content (%) is given. Mean diversity (N_o), mean abundance ($ind.m^{-2}$) and mean biomass ($g AFDW.m^{-2}$) per cluster are given (mean \pm SE). For each cluster mean abundance of the most important macrobenthic species is given, together with its occurrence (% present) in that cluster. Boldfaced numbers represent the main data set structure.

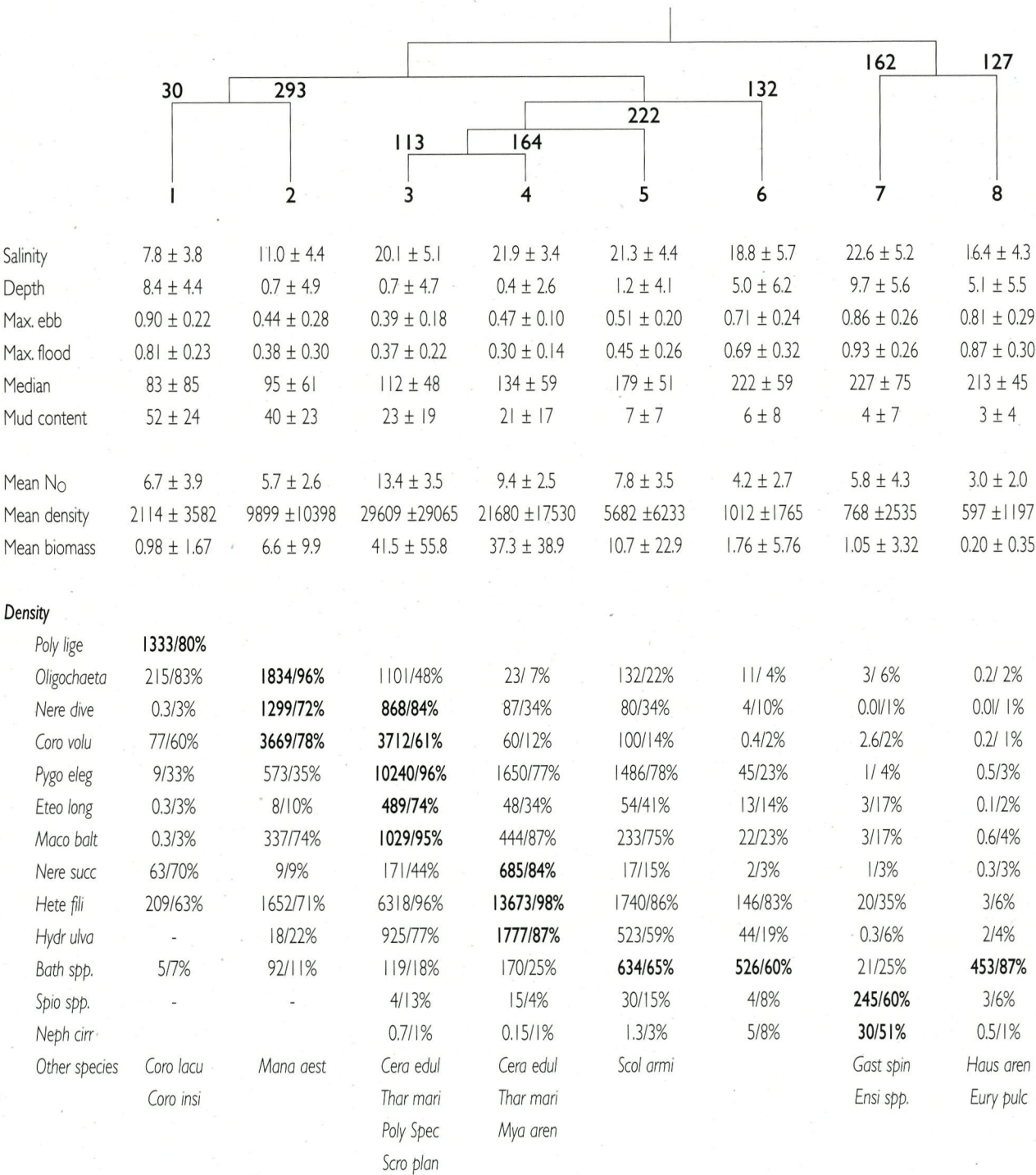


Table 3.5. Dendrogram representing the TWINSpan classification based on macrofauna biomass (data set B, n= 1243). For each cluster mean ± SD of the environmental variables model salinity (psu), depth (m), maximum ebb and maximum flood current velocity (m.s⁻¹), median grain size (µm) and mud content (%) is given. Mean diversity (No), mean abundance (ind.m⁻²) and mean biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) per cluster are given (mean ± SE). For each cluster mean biomass of the most important macrobenthic species is given, together with its occurrence (% present) in that cluster. Boldfaced numbers represent the main data set structure.

Salinity	9.1 ± 5.3	10.6 ± 3.8	21.4 ± 4.8	22.7 ± 1.4	20.6 ± 5.7	19.7 ± 5.0	21.8 ± 5.5	16.4 ± 4.7
Depth	7.9 ± 4.4	-0.7 ± 2.3	0.3 ± 3.3	-0.1 ± 0.7	2.5 ± 5.8	4.0 ± 6.3	9.9 ± 5.6	4.3 ± 4.9
Max. ebb	0.86 ± 0.26	0.39 ± 0.24	0.41 ± 0.14	0.49 ± 0.09	0.54 ± 0.23	0.66 ± 0.23	0.87 ± 0.27	0.77 ± 0.28
Max. flood	0.77 ± 0.27	0.32 ± 0.27	0.31 ± 0.15	0.31 ± 0.14	0.53 ± 0.29	0.60 ± 0.32	0.93 ± 0.28	0.82 ± 0.29
Median	97 ± 91	93 ± 54	112 ± 47	162 ± 58	170 ± 59	213 ± 60	223 ± 63	213 ± 45
Mud content	45 ± 27	41 ± 21	24 ± 19	14 ± 13	11 ± 14	6 ± 9	4 ± 7	3 ± 4
Mean No	4.4 ± 3.5	5.9 ± 2.1	12.7 ± 3.4	8.7 ± 2.2	7.7 ± 3.6	5.4 ± 3.6	5.7 ± 4.2	2.7 ± 1.6
Mean density	1058 ± 2575	11882 ± 10455	32529 ± 26281	12853 ± 9913	6718 ± 7318	1693 ± 2204	560 ± 1330	601 ± 1100
Mean biomass	0.48 ± 1.21	6.6 ± 5.7	50.8 ± 54.0	24.3 ± 16.8	9.1 ± 23.6	3.47 ± 10.34	1.68 ± 14.04	0.21 ± 0.32
Biomass								
Poly lige	0.11/39%	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Coro volu	0.009/39%	1.12/87%	0.29/40%	0.009/11%	0.065/10%	0.0005/3%	0.00007/1%	0.00001/1%
Oligochaeta	0.005/87%	0.23/84%	0.08/30%	0.004/3%	0.008/25%	0.003/ 5%	0.0004/ 6%	0.0004/2%
Nere dive	0.001/3%	3.39/87%	2.36/72%	0.53/23%	0.27/30%	0.07/15%	0.00001/1%	-
Cera edul	-	0.0001/1%	14.77/86%	2.25/53%	2.18/33%	0.11/16%	0.0004/14%	0.0001/1%
Mya aren	0.001/4%	0.003/6%	6.35/75%	1.09/48%	0.02/18%	0.0002/ 2%	0.00002/1%	-
Pygo eleg	0.0003/19%	0.06/36%	0.55/92%	0.06/72%	0.20/71%	0.03/45%	0.0003/ 4%	0.00004/2%
Scro plan	0.004/ 1%	0.02/ 2%	4.26/60%	1.05/15%	0.004/ 2%	-	0.0001/ 1%	-
Hydr ulva	-	0.01/22%	0.59/77%	0.32/87%	0.11/59%	0.02/19%	0.0001/ 6%	0.0002/4%
Maco balt	0.006/ 7%	0.42/81%	4.80/95%	3.66/86%	1.88/77%	0.36/34%	0.015/17%	0.003/3%
Hete fili	0.05/55%	1.31/71%	9.23/96%	6.34/100%	1.75/84%	0.31/82%	0.03/34%	0.01/ 14%
Aren mari	-	-	1.26/34%	8.17/75%	0.37/11%	0.501 8%	-	-
Bath spp.	0.007/18%	0.02/ 8%	0.03/17%	0.05/46%	0.14/48%	0.11/60%	0.004/12%	0.07/87%
Spio spp.	-	-	0.002/10%	0.0008/ 3%	0.006/17%	0.003/14%	0.03/56%	0.0003/ 2%
Neph cirr	-	-	-	0.006/ 2%	0.003/ 3%	0.012/ 5%	0.13/48%	0.004/ 2%
Ensi spp.	-	-	0.15/ 1%	-	-	-	1.13/33%	-
Haus aren	-	-	-	-	-	0.0004/ 1 %	0.001/ 6%	0.05/31%

Table 3.6. Results of canonical correspondence analysis (CCA) for macrobenthic assemblages from data set A (sediment data excluded, n = 2612) and data set B (sediment data included, n = 1243), for abundance and biomass data respectively. Given are the eigenvalues of the first and second canonical axis. The percentage variance of the species data and the percentage variance of the species-environment relation explained by the axes is given cumulatively. Both the first canonical eigenvalue as the sum of all canonical eigenvalues were statistically significant by Monte Carlo permutation test (p=0.005).

Axis 1 Axis 2			Axis 1 Axis 2		
Abundance data (dataset A)			Abundance data (dataset B)		
Eigenvalue CCA	0.34	0.20	Eigenvalue CCA	0.40	0.24
% variance of species data	3.5	5.6	% variance of species data	5.2	8.2
Species – environment relation	51.2	81.3	Species – environment relation	42.5	67.6
Correlation of environmental variables with axes			Correlation of environmental variables with axes		
Model salinity	0.42	-0.62	Model salinity	0.40	-0.70
Temporal salinity	0.50	-0.50	Temporal salinity	0.40	-0.50
Depth	0.62	0.27	Depth	0.68	0.32
Maximum ebb current velocity	0.62	0.36	Maximum ebb current velocity	0.62	0.26
Maximum flood current velocity	0.66	0.36	Maximum flood current velocity	0.66	0.36
			Median grain size	0.57	-0.02
			Mud content	0.48	0.18
Axis 1 Axis 2			Axis 1 Axis 2		
Biomass data (dataset A)			Biomass data (dataset B)		
Eigenvalue CCA	0.51	0.29	Eigenvalue CCA	0.29	0.14
% variance of species data	3.1	4.8	% variance of species data	2.1	3.1
Species – environment relation	50.3	79.4	Species – environment relation	55.6	82.1
Correlation of environmental variables with axes			Correlation of environmental variables with axes		
Model salinity	0.29	-0.66	Model salinity	-0.70	0.13
Temporal salinity	0.36	-0.52	Temporal salinity	-0.56	-0.01
Depth	0.77	0.21	Depth	-0.14	0.29
Maximum ebb current velocity	0.67	0.04	Maximum ebb current velocity	-0.20	0.22
Maximum flood current velocity	0.70	0.07	Maximum flood current velocity	-0.14	0.38
			Median grain size	-0.31	0.14
			Mud content	0.35	-0.11

In a first division two clusters (7-8) were separated, both characterized by high current velocities, a high median grain size and low mud content. Samples of cluster 7 were mainly situated in the subtidal (95% of the samples), polyhaline zone, but this community occurred up to the mesohaline zone. Abundance and biomass were low, with indicator species *Spio* spp. and *Nephtys cirrosa*. Cluster 8 was situated more in the mesohaline zone, with 60% of the samples observed subtidally. Cluster 8 had the lowest diversity, abundance and biomass of all clusters. Indicator species was *Bathyporeia* spp.

The remaining samples were then further separated in two clusters (clusters 1-2), representing mainly the β -

mesohaline zone (salinity region 4), and four clusters (clusters 3-6) representing mainly the polyhaline and α -mesohaline zone (salinity regions 1-3). Clusters 1 and 2 (with approx. 95% and 85% of the samples from salinity region 4) were separated into a characteristic subtidal cluster with high current velocities (cluster 1) and an intertidal cluster with low current velocities (cluster 2). Both clusters had high mud contents. Cluster 1 had more samples in the biomass classification, with also 35 samples of abundance cluster 2 included, which were separated from the 30 samples in a next division. Indicator species of cluster 1 was *Polydora lignerica*. Other characteristic species for this cluster were several amphipods such as *Corophium lacustre* and



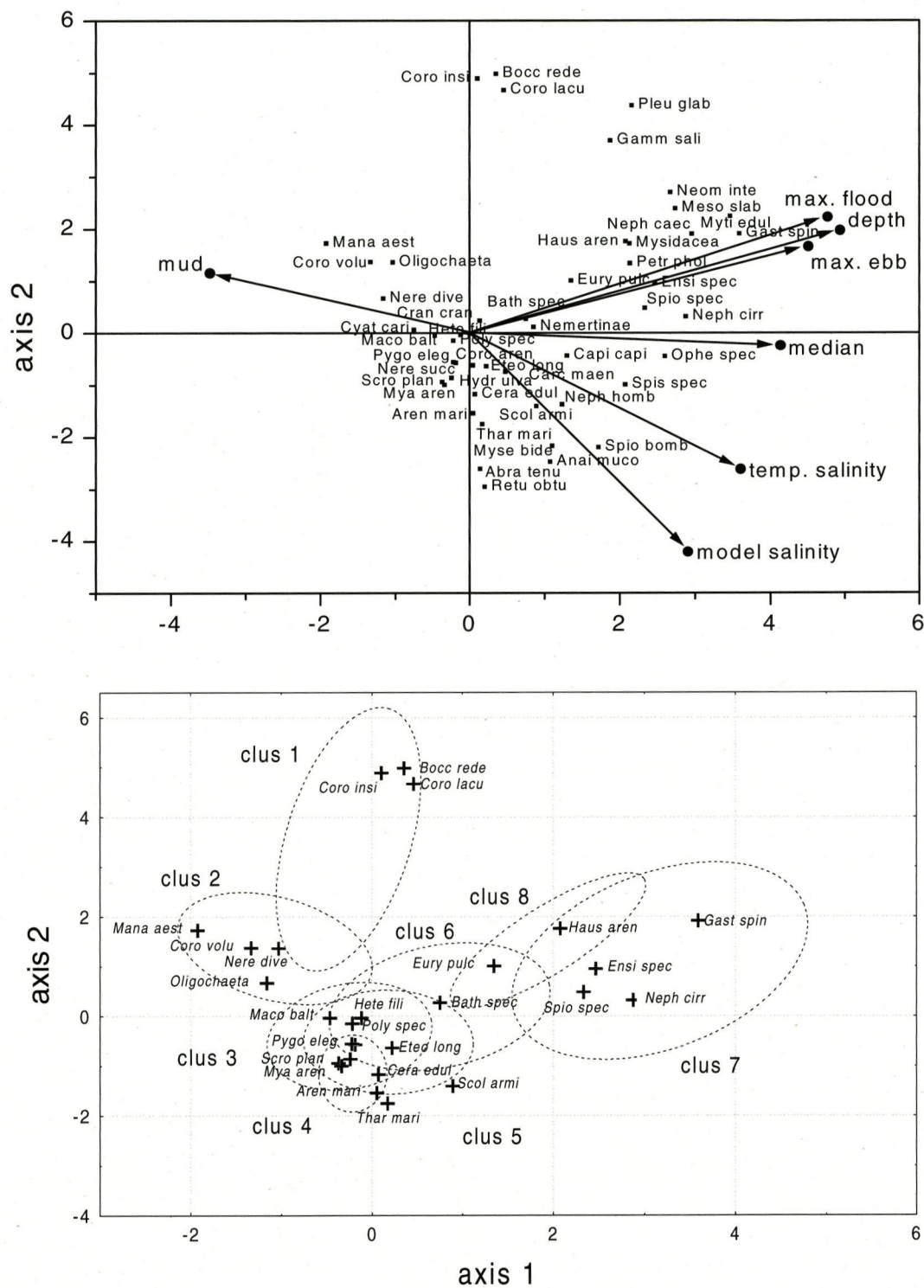


Figure 3.6. Canonical Correspondence Analysis (CCA) ordination biplots based on the analysis of abundance data of dataset B (with sediment data, $n = 1243$). The top figure shows the species distributions in relation to environmental variables (max. ebb and max. flood = maximum ebb and flood current velocity; mud = mud content; median = median grain size; temp. salinity = temporal salinity). The orthogonal projection of a species point onto an environmental arrow represents the approximate center of the species distribution along that particular environmental gradient. The bottom figure shows the 75 percent confidence regions of the sample scores for each cluster. For results on the CCA analysis see Table 3.6. For abbreviation of the macrobenthic species names: see Appendix).

Pleusymtes glaber, and *Oligochaeta*. Mean biomass was low. Cluster 2 had a relatively high abundance and indicator species were *C. volutator*, *Oligochaeta* and *N. diversicolor*, the latter having the highest contribution to the biomass.

The communities revealing from clusters 5 and 6 could be considered as transitional between the low diversity clusters 7-8 and the high diversity clusters 3-4. In both clusters a relatively high proportion of winter and spring samples was observed. Samples of cluster 6 were found in all salinity regions, in the subtidal as well as in the intertidal zone. Abiotic characterization of this cluster resembled cluster 8; only mean current velocities were somewhat lower. Abundance was relatively low. As for cluster 8, the indicator species was *Bathyporeia* spp., but in this cluster also a higher occurrence and higher densities of some characteristic species from clusters 3-4 were observed (e.g. *H. filiformis*). Cluster 5 was mainly found in the intertidal zone of both the polyhaline and α -mesohaline zone, and was characterized by intermediate current velocities and fine/medium sands with a low mud content. Biomass cluster 5 had much less samples as abundance cluster 5. Abundance and biomass was much lower as compared to cluster 4, but the occurrence of several species was similar

(e.g. *P. elegans*, *M. balthica*, *H. filiformis*). As for cluster 6, the indicator species of cluster 5 was *Bathyporeia* spp., but this species only marginally contributed to the total biomass.

Cluster 3 and 4 were intertidal clusters (>92%), characterized by low current velocities, and by fine sand sediments with a relatively high mud content. Biomass cluster 3 contained a lot of samples of abundance cluster 4. The clusters represented the macrobenthic communities with the highest diversity, abundance and biomass. Cluster 3 had the highest mean diversity, with the indicator species for abundance being *P. elegans*, whereas bivalves contributed most to the biomass, with the suspension feeder *C. edule* having the largest contribution. Indicator species for cluster 4 differed, with *H. filiformis* contributing most to abundance. Biomass in this cluster was mainly dominated by the sub-surface deposit feeders *Arenicola marina* and *H. filiformis*. This cluster was also characterized by a higher proportion of spring and winter samples as compared to cluster 3.

Table 3.7. Ranking environmental variables in importance by their marginal (left) and conditional (right) effects of the macrobenthos in data set A (sediment data excluded, $n=2612$) and data set B (sediment data included $n=1243$), as obtained by forward selection on the CCA. (λ_1 = fit = eigenvalue with variable j only; λ_a = additional fit = increase in eigenvalue; p = significance level of the effect, as obtained with a Monte Carlo permutation test under the null model with 199 random permutations). For results on the CCA analysis see Table 3.6.

Abundance data (data set A, $n=2612$)							
Marginal effects (forward: step 1)				Conditional effects (forward: continued)			
j	variable	λ_1	p	j	variable	λ_a	p
1	max. flood current velocity	.28	.005	1	max. flood current velocity	.28	.005
2	max. ebb current velocity	.25	.005	2	model salinity	.23 (.51)	.005
3	depth	.24	.005	3	depth	.08 (.59)	.005
4	model salinity	.23	.005	4	max. ebb current velocity	.04 (.63)	.005
5	temporal salinity	.23	.005	5	temporal salinity	.04 (.67)	.005

Abundance data (data set B, $n=1243$)							
Marginal effects (forward: step 1)				Conditional effects (forward: continued)			
j	variable	λ_1	p	j	variable	λ_a	p
1	depth	.31	.005	1	depth	.31	.005
2	max. flood current velocity	.28	.005	2	model salinity	.26 (.57)	.005
3	model salinity	.26	.005	3	median grain size	.15 (.72)	.005
4	temporal salinity	.25	.005	4	max. flood current velocity	.07 (.79)	.005
5	max. ebb current velocity	.25	.005	5	mud content	.05 (.84)	.005
6	median grain size	.24	.005	6	max. ebb current velocity	.05 (.89)	.005
7	mud content	.20	.005	7	temporal salinity	.04 (.93)	.005



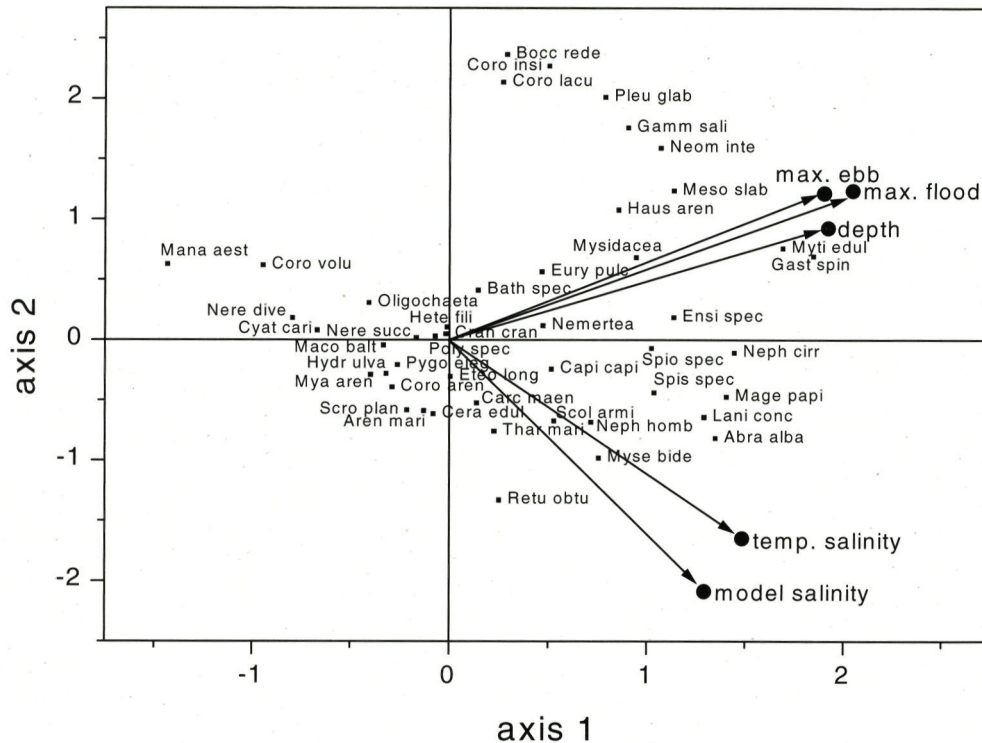


Figure 3.7. Canonical Correspondence Analysis (CCA) ordination biplot based on the analysis of abundance data of dataset A (without sediment data, $n = 2612$). The figure shows the species distributions in relation to environmental variables (max. ebb and max. flood = maximum ebb and flood current velocity; temp. salinity = temporal salinity). The orthogonal projection of a species point onto an environmental arrow represents the approximate center of the species distribution along that particular environmental gradient. For results on the CCA analysis see Table 3.6. For abbreviation of the macrobenthic species names: see Appendix).

Ordination and relation with the abiotic environmental variables

The results of the different CCA ordinations are summarized in Table 3.6. Ordination biplots are presented for the abundance data sets A and B respectively (Figures 3.6a-3.7). Seasonal changes, by adding sampling month as covariables in the CCA, appeared of no importance in explaining the main differences in species composition in both analyses. The relation between the ordination axes and the environmental variables were similar for all data sets. The first axis was strongly correlated with depth, maximum flood and ebb current velocity. When sediment characteristics were included, these also correlated with the first axis, but correlation was less strong. The second axis represented the salinity gradient. Only in the CCA analysis with biomass data set B the opposite was observed, with salinity correlating with the first axis, and a weak correlation of max. flood current velocity and depth with the second axis. The third ordination axis (not presented) had very low eigenvalues in all analysis, and showed highest correlation with sediment characteristics (median grain size ($r = -0.38$) for abundance data and mud content ($r = 0.26$) for biomass data respectively).

Forward selection on the abundance data sets A and B corroborated the correlations observed between ordination axes and environmental variables (Table 3.7). With each one variable as the only environmental variable (marginal effects), the highest eigenvalues were observed for depth and current velocity estimates, followed by the salinity estimates, but differences were relatively small. When included (data set B), lowest eigenvalues were observed for median grain size and mud content. Forward selection (conditional effects) showed that depth or current velocity and model salinity added most to the total fit. As depth was closely correlated with current velocities and temporal salinity with model salinity, the extra fit of these variables is less, because already large part of the effect of these variables was already explained. When included (data set B), median grain size added significantly to the total fit, but eigenvalue was lower than for depth and model salinity.

The position of the different macrobenthic species along the two axes was similar for the CCA analyses on abundance data of data set A and data set B respectively (Figures 3.6a-3.7). Species which were mainly observed in the subtidal zone, at high current velocities, were situated at the right side of the biplot (e.g. *Gastrosaccus spinifer*, *Haustorius arenarius*, *N. cirrosa*, *P. ligericus*), whereas species

characteristic for the intertidal zone, observed at low current velocities, were observed at the left side of the biplot (e.g. *C. volutator*, *N. diversicolor*, *M. arenaria*, *H. ulvae*). Species characteristic for the polyhaline zone were mainly observed in the down right quadrant of the biplot (e.g. *Abra tenuis*, *Anatides mucosa*, *T. marioni*, *Nephtys hombergii*). At the other end, characteristic species for the β -mesohaline zone were e.g. *C. volutator*, *Manayunkia aestuarina* and *P. ligierica*. The position of the different macrobenthos species in the biplot resembled the division in indicator species over the different clusters, as observed by superimposing the different clusters on the biplot (Figure 3.6b). The superimposed clusters on the CCA diagram showed to some extent overlap. Especially the clusters 3-6, which clustered at a higher dichotomy, largely overlap. The β -mesohaline clusters 1 and 2 clearly discriminated, and also the subtidal clusters 7 and 8 were separated from the other clusters.

Discussion

Trends along the longitudinal (salinity) and vertical (depth) gradient

In their review HEIP et al. (1995) concluded that, because of a biased sampling strategy, few macrobenthic studies dealt with the two major gradients in estuarine benthic habitats: the salinity gradient along the estuary (longitudinal) and the gradients from high intertidal to deep subtidal sites (vertical gradient). The large data set available for the Schelde estuary allowed us to thoroughly analyze these both gradients, and relate macrobenthic species distributions to the predominant environmental variables.

The univariate and multivariate analyses clearly demonstrated the role of both salinity and depth in relation to diversity, abundance and biomass of the macrobenthos. Many studies have demonstrated that salinity is a major factor affecting macrofauna species distributions and community structure within estuaries. The pattern of species richness and diversity declining with decreasing salinity is a recurring one in most estuaries (REMANE & SCHLIEPER 1971; BOESCH 1977; WOLFF 1983; DITTMER 1983; MICHAELIS 1983; MANNINO & MONTAGNA 1997) and our data support this. Not only mean number of species per sample decreased with decreasing salinity, but also total number of species decreased (see also YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a, *in press*). In several estuaries also a trend from lower biomass in the upper estuarine regions to higher biomass in the more downstream regions was observed, e.g. Ems, Schelde and Elbe estuary (MEIRE et al. 1991; YSEBAERT et al. 1998a), James River Estuary (SCHAFFNER et al. 1987), Lavaca Bay, Texas (KALKE & MONTAGNA 1991), Chesapeake Bay (DAUER 1993). In our study the same trend was observed, al-

though it was most pronounced in the intertidal zone, and less clear in the subtidal zone. In contrast to diversity and biomass, no clear trend in abundance was observed, similar to observations on 50 intertidal locations along the salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary (YSEBAERT et al. 1993). Other studies on the intertidal macrobenthos of the Schelde estuary, based on a much smaller sampling effort, revealed remarkable similar values for density and biomass (MEIRE et al. 1991; YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a).

Only a few studies have dealt with the zonation of macrobenthos from high intertidal to deep subtidal sites (e.g. ELLIOT & TAYLOR 1989). Our study showed much higher values of diversity, abundance and biomass in the intertidal zone as compared to the subtidal zone. Especially in the subtidal channels of the Schelde estuary tidal current speeds and instability of the sediment clearly become the limiting factors, leading to very poor communities. In more shallow estuaries, such as James River Estuary (SCHAFFNER et al. 1987), subtidal macrobenthic biomass might reach high values.

HEIP et al. (1995) showed that on a system-wide scale, biomass values for complete benthic assemblages among estuaries are not very different, but that variability within an estuary is usually high. The mean biomass values found in this study are within the range described by HEIP et al. (1995).

The role of the abiotic environment

The different multivariate analyses, based on macrofauna abundance or biomass, and data sets with or without sediment characteristics included, confirmed the strong relationships between the macrobenthic assemblages and the predominant forces (gradients) in the Schelde estuary. CRAEYMEERSCH (1999), based on a more limited data set for the Westerschelde, derived similar results.

A first gradient is related to depth, which reflects also hydrodynamic conditions. This was clear from the ordinations, in which depth and current velocities were closely correlated with the first of the ordination axes. Therefore, it appeared that the vertical gradient, reflecting the hydrodynamical regime was dominant upon the salinity gradient. A second gradient (second axis in the ordination) was clearly related to salinity and confirms the observations from the univariate analysis.

Sediment characteristics appeared to be more correlated with depth and current velocities, but correlation was rather weak. It was apparent from the ordination analyses that sediment characteristics added less to the total fit of the model than depth/current velocities on the one hand and salinity on the other hand. However, median grain size still explained a significant part not yet explained by the two other main gradients. In a study on macrobenthic responses to natural and contaminant-related gradients in



Northern Gulf of Mexico estuaries, RAKOCINSKI et al. (1997) showed three primary natural gradients in a CCA analysis: CCA axis 1 represented a predominant salinity gradient, CCA axis 2 a predominant depth gradient, and CCA axis 3 a gradient in sediment silt/clay content. RAKOCINSKI et al. (1997) did not include current velocities, and sampling stations were restricted to the subtidal zone, probably explaining why salinity was the most dominant gradient. WARWICK et al. (1991), investigating the intertidal macrobenthic community structure of six British estuaries, separated sites mainly along two axes, one determined by static variables (e.g. sediment grain size and organic content), and the other by dynamic variables (i.e. current velocities), but in this study the salinity range was restricted. In summary, therefore, the relative importance of the different gradients will differ among estuaries, depending on the local physical and physicochemical conditions. Also the scale at which studies are performed (e.g. subtidal v intertidal or the inclusion of the freshwater tidal zone into the survey) will influence the perception of their relative importance. Collinearity between environmental variables may also differ among estuaries or among zones within an estuary. For instance, in our study mean mud content appeared to be much higher in salinity region 4 (meso-/oligohaline) as compared to the higher salinity regions, whereas SCHLACHER & WOOLDRIDGE (1996) observed the opposite for the Gamtoos estuary in South-Africa.

Interactions between soft-sediment macro-invertebrates and their environment not only include responses to the physicochemical environment (tolerances), but also the effects of species that modify the substratum (biogenic habitat modifiers), as well as biological interactions, such as predation and competition, will determine the distribution of a certain species (WILSON 1991; OLAFFSON et al. 1994). Although biological interactions are thought to operate within the constraints imposed by large-scale physical factors (LEGENDRE et al. 1997; MCARDLE et al. 1997; THRUSH et al. 1997, 1999), more information is needed about the interaction of both physical and biological factors.

Macrobenthic assemblages

The macrobenthic assemblages, distinguished at a broad, estuarine scale, are related to gradients in the environmental conditions observed along the estuary. Similar macrobenthic assemblages were observed by CRAEYMEERSCH (1999), although our results provided additional information on the lower salinity zones of the estuary.

Some macrobenthic assemblages are typically related to the subtidal zone, where highest current velocities were observed. A first subtidal assemblage was mainly situated in the polyhaline zone, and occurred in medium sand sediments with a very low mud content. This assemblage was

characterized by the polychaetes *Nephtys cirrosa* and *Spio* spp. *N. cirrosa* is known as a typical subtidal species, inhabiting sandy sediments (CLARK & HADERLIE 1960; WOLFF 1971). In this assemblage also often species were observed which belonged more to the hyperbenthos, such as the mysid *Gastrosaccus spinifer* (MEES et al. 1993, 1995). In a few samples high biomass values were observed of some bivalve species, such as *Ensis* and *Spisula*, but in general diversity, abundance and biomass were low for this assemblage.

A second subtidal assemblage was found mainly in the mesohaline zone, but this assemblage extended both into the polyhaline as into the oligohaline zone of the estuary. Diversity, abundance and biomass of the macrobenthos were very low. This assemblage was characterized by the very mobile amphipod *Bathyporeia* spp. This species is capable of very fast swimming and digging (CROKER 1967; NICOLAISEN & KANNEWORFF 1969; SAMEOTO 1969) and *Bathyporeia* spp., like most Haustoriidae, is a typical, well adapted inhabitant of unstable, sandy sediments (BOUSFIELD 1970; KHAYRALLAH & JONES 1980) and exposed beaches with a lot of wave action (SHACKLEY 1981). Other characteristic species for this assemblage were the amphipod *Haustorius arenarius* and the isopod *Eurydice pulchra*. This assemblage was not only restricted to the subtidal zone, but extended into the intertidal zone.

A third subtidal community was clearly restricted to the most upstream part of the study area (β -meso-/oligohaline zone). Here, this zone being part of the turbidity maximum area of the estuary, high current velocities often coincided with a muddy or very fine sand bottom sediment. This assemblage was characterized by some typical 'genuine brackish water' species (WOLFF 1973; MICHAELIS et al. 1992), with indicator species being *Polydora lignerica* (YSEBAERT et al. *in press*). In samples, containing hard substrates such as stones and pieces of wood, a relatively species rich community was observed, with several amphipod species like *Corophium lacustre*, *Corophium insidiosum*, and *Pleusymtes glaber*. In very muddy sediments, only *Oligochaeta* and *H. filiformis* were observed.

In the intertidal zone assemblages were in the first place determined by salinity, and secondly by the sediment composition (see also YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a). A first assemblage was found in the polyhaline zone of the estuary, extending to some extent into salinity region 3. Current velocities are much lower as compared to the subtidal assemblages (low dynamic areas), and sediments consist of very fine sand or mud. Diversity, abundance and biomass of the macrobenthos are much higher than in the other assemblages. Abundance of this assemblage is mainly determined by spionid (*P. elegans*) and capittelid species (*H. filiformis*). Biomass is mainly determined by bivalves, of which the suspension feeder *C. edule* is the most important. In the more sandy sediments of the polyhaline zone a second intertidal assemblage was observed, which was

characterized by a high biomass of the sub-surface deposit feeder *A. marina*. This assemblage was only obvious from the biomass classification, as *A. marina* was observed only in very low densities. Diversity, abundance and biomass were lower, with another sub-surface deposit feeder, *H. filiformis*, dominating this assemblage numerically. Both polyhaline assemblages are also commonly observed in other estuaries and shallow coastal zones, such as the Wadden Sea (e.g. BEUKEMA 1976, 1981; DÖRRIES et al. 1986).

A third intertidal assemblage is found in the mesohaline zone of the estuary, especially in salinity region 4. As for the first intertidal assemblage, this assemblage occurred in the low dynamic areas, characterized by sediments with a high mud content, but with a lower macrobenthos species diversity and biomass. Indicator species was *C. volutator*, this species being almost absent in the polyhaline zone of the estuary. *N. diversicolor* was the main species determining biomass in this assemblage. In this part of the estuary also *Oligochaeta* become a predominant part of the benthic community, a dominance which increase towards the oligohaline zone of the estuary (YSEBAERT et al. 1993), and which is also more pronounced in spring as compared to autumn (YSEBAERT et al. *subm.*). The nearly absence of *C. volutator* from the polyhaline zone could be due to a negative effect of *C. edule* and especially *A. marina* (e.g. FLACH 1992, 1996), both very common in the polyhaline zone of the Schelde estuary. In the Wadden Sea a zonation pattern was observed with a *Corophium* zone in the muddy upper tidal flats and a zone dominated by *A. marina* and *C. edule* at the lower edges. In the Schelde estuary it rather appeared that this pattern was observed along the longitudinal salinity gradient.

A fourth assemblage could be considered as the intertidal extension of the second subtidal assemblage, characterized by the amphipod *Bathyporeia* spp. This assemblage is observed at intermediate current velocities in fine/medium sand sediments with a low mud content. Several species from the other assemblages were also observed in this assemblage, but at much lower densities. A characteristic polychaete of these sandy sediments in the polyhaline zone was *Scoloplos armiger*. In the most dynamic areas, sand flats characterized by pronounced megaripples, only a few mobile crustaceans were observed. This assemblage resembles the benthic communities that are found on exposed sand beaches with a pronounced wave action (SHACKLEY 1981; DEGRAER et al. 1999).

It should be emphasized that the previously described assemblages should not be considered as static, nor that the transition from one assemblage to another is abrupt. This was noticed from the large overlap in the clusters superimposed on the ordination diagrams. The exact extent and position of estuarine zones will differ between assemblages, seasons and years, but their persistent occurrence points to a real underlying structure in the distribution of biota of the estuarine ecosystem at large (BULGER et al. 1993).

Trophic and functional structure

The search for a more meaningful measure of community response (e.g. to disturbance) led investigators to consider trophic ecology (feeding ecology) of macrobenthos (PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978; BOESCH & ROSENBERG 1981; GASTON et al. 1998). Trophic ecology provides a functional approach to help clarify the complex community changes that occurs along estuarine gradients.

Based on field evidence, a relation between system-averaged macrobenthic biomass and pelagic primary productivity of shallow well-mixed estuarine systems was presented by HERMAN et al. (1999). Between 5 and 25% of the annual primary production is consumed by macrobenthos respiration. On a system-average basis, suspension feeders are often the dominant component (with respect to biomass) of estuarine benthic assemblages (HEIP et al. 1995). Also in the Schelde estuary, suspension feeders, mainly *C. edule*, dominate the macrobenthic biomass in the polyhaline zone. However, in the turbid Schelde estuary and other estuaries at the low productive end of this spectrum, suspension feeders are, both in absolute and relative terms, less dominant compared to estuaries with higher productivities (HERMAN et al. 1999). In the Schelde estuary light, rather than nutrients, is limiting primary production. The underwater light climate is better in the most seaward part (polyhaline zone) of the estuary, and one can conclude that the benthic (suspension feeder) biomass is, in general, following the trend of primary productivity in the system (HEIP et al. 1995).

HERMAN et al. (1999) showed that in the comparison of macrofauna biomass in different ecosystems, particularly the suspension feeders seem to constitute the most variable part. Indeed, suspension feeders appeared very patchy in the Schelde estuary, with 68 samples containing a suspension feeder biomass > 50 g AFDW m⁻², which was 66% of the total suspension feeder biomass observed. Their distribution, being dependent on pelagic food sources, within the polyhaline zone of the estuary will be mainly determined by the hydrodynamical conditions. In the subtidal zone, current speeds and instability of the sediment will prevent suspension feeders from settling down. Where conditions are favourable, such as on hard substrates (peat banks, stones), high biomass of for instance mussel spat (up to 455 g AFDW m⁻²) can be observed (*pers. observ.*). In the intertidal zone, the distribution of suspension feeder will also be determined by the hydrodynamical conditions, but the positive relationship that have been suggested between the suspension feeders' biomass and current velocities might not be generally valid. Indeed, studies on an intertidal sand flat of the Westerschelde demonstrated that biomass of the suspension feeder *C. edule* was highest in the zone with lowest current velocities, probably depending on sinking material (HERMAN et al. 1999).

A high primary production in the mesohaline zone

of the estuary would probably lead to an increase in suspension feeder biomass. Especially *Mya arenaria*, a bivalve well adapted to mesohaline salinity conditions, would profit of such a situation. However, at the meso-/oligohaline transition zone, where salinity conditions show large, seasonal fluctuations, conditions will become unfavourable.

Deposit feeders are much more evenly distributed over space within an estuary, and their biomass is much less variable from one system to another than the biomass of suspension feeders (HERMAN et al. 1999). The Schelde estuary receives large quantities of allochthonous organic matter and nutrients, and it is supposed that there is no food limitation for deposit feeders, although also qualitative aspects should be taken into account (e.g. DAUWE 1999). On a large scale, the distribution of deposit feeders, together with their food, will be determined to a great extent by the hydrodynamical conditions. In the intertidal zone, deposit feeders, especially grazers and surface deposit feeders, also depend to a large extent on microphytobenthos production and, as this production is relatively constant over a broad range of environments, a relative constancy of the macrofauna groups dependent on this source may be expected (HERMAN et al. *in press*). In our study, deposit feeders were abundant along the complete salinity gradient. However, biomass of deposit feeders, especially the surface deposit feeders, was highest in the polyhaline zone (salinity region I) and decreased with decreasing salinities. Several factors could explain this decrease. Firstly, assigning a species to one functional group is difficult as many estuarine macrobenthic species are flexible in their natural history and response to environmental conditions (high generalism). Many species of surface deposit feeders are known to be facultative suspension feeders (e.g. *M. balthica* (OLAFSSON 1986; KAMERMANS 1994) and 'interface' feeding spionid polychaetes (DAUER et al. 1981; TAGHON & GREENE 1992)). Therefore, surface deposit feeders in the polyhaline zone might profit from the higher phytoplankton primary production (high quality food source) in this part of the estuary, resulting in a higher biomass. Secondly, disturbance and stress increases towards the lower salinity zones, as a consequence of the highly varying salinity conditions here (physiological constraints). Additionally, a maximum turbidity zone is situated near the freshwater-seawater interface (oligohaline zone) and due to a high input of allochthonous organic matter and nutrients, microbial activity is pronounced in this region, resulting in oxygen depletion observed during several months a year, especially in summer (e.g. GOOSEN et al. 1999). This highly variable environment causes numerous, perhaps constant disturbances that might result in communities that seldom progress beyond early benthic-community succession. The macrobenthic species observed in this zone of the estuary are typically very mobile (e.g. the amphipod *C. volutator*), opportunistic (tubificid *Oligochaeta*, capitellid *H. filiformis*) or omnivorous (the

nereid *N. diversicolor*), strategies which resemble the early response to 'succession after disturbance series' (RHODES et al. 1978) or 'distance to pollution source series' (PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978). In this zone of the estuary probably physical and physiological stress coincides with 'high loading' stress. On top of that, sediment contamination with metals and organic micropollutants is rather high, provoking additional stress (e.g. RAKOCINSKI et al. 1997). Unravelling the contribution and interaction of each of these multiple stressors is necessary in order to determine natural versus human induced disturbances.

Acknowledgements

The study is part of the ECOFLAT project, a research project funded by the European Commission in the framework of the Environment & Climate Programme (contract number ENV4-CT96-0216), being part of ELOISE (European Land Ocean Interactions Studies). This study was also partly supported by the FWO project G.0104.99. This is contribution no. xxx to the EU programme ELOISE and contribution no. xxx of the Netherlands Institute of Ecology.



Appendix 3.1. List of the macrobenthic species mentioned in the text and figures, together with their abbreviations used. For each species the feeding type is given. SF = suspension feeder; SDF = surface deposit feeder; SSDF = sub-surface deposit feeder; O omnivore; P = predator

Abbreviation	Species name	Feeding type	Abbreviation	Species name	Feeding type
Anai muco	Anaitides mucosa	P	Meso slab	Mesopodopsis slabberi	SDF
Abra tenu	Abra tenuis	SF	Mya aren	Mya arenaria	SF
Aren m ari	Arenicola marina	SSDF	Myse bide	Mysella bidentata	SDF
Bath spp.	Bathyporeia spp.	SDF	Myti edul	Mytilus edulis	SF
Bocc rede	Polydora ligérica	SDF	Nemertinae	Nemertinae	P
Capi capi	Capitella capitata	SSDF	Neom inte	Neomysis integer	O
Carc maen	Carcinus maenas	O	Neph cirr	Nephtys cirrosa	O
Cera edul	Cerastoderma edule	SF	Neph homb	Nephtys hombergii	O
Coro aren	Corophium arenarium	SDF	Nere dive	Nereis diversicolor	O
Coro insi	Corophium insidiosum	SDF	Nere succ	Nereis succinea	O
Coro lacu	Corophium lacustre	SDF	Oligo	Oligochaeta	SSDF
Coro volu	Corophium volutator	SDF	Ophe spp.	Ophelia spp.	SDF
Cran cran	Crangon crangon	P	Petr phol	Petricola pholadiformis	SF
Cyat cari	Cyathura carinata	P	Pleu glab	Pleusymtes glaber	O
Ensi spp.	Ensis spp.	SF	Pygo eleg	Pygospio elegans	SDF
Eteo long	Eteone longa	P	Poly spp.	Polydora spp.	SF
Eury pulc	Eurydice pulchra	P	Retu obtu	Retusa obtusata	P
Gamm sali	Gammarus salinus	O	Scol armi	Scoloplos armiger	SSDF
Gast spin	Gastrosaccus spinifer	O	Scro plan	Scrobicularia plana	SDF
Haus aren	Haustorius arenarius	SF	Spio bomb	Spiophanes bombyx	SDF
Hete fili	Heteromastus filiformis	SSDF	Spio spp.	Spio spp.	SDF
Hydr ulva	Hydrobia ulvae	SDF	Spis spp.	Spisula spp.	SF
Maco balt	Macoma balthica	SDF	Thar mari	Tharyx marioni	SDF
Mana aest	Manayunkia aestuarina	SF			



Chapter 4

Spatio-temporal patterns of intertidal macrobenthic communities in the Schelde estuary, NW-Europe

T. Ysebaert, P. Meire, and N. De Regge

Abstract

The Schelde estuary (NW-Europe) was investigated for spatial and temporal variation of macrobenthos community structure and function. Five locations were sampled monthly during two years to investigate changes in macroinfaunal species assemblages.

Spatial variation among the five locations was larger than seasonal variation and was on a regional scale strongly influenced by salinity and on a local scale by sediment characteristics. Abundance and biomass were highest at the polyhaline location, and decreased towards the meso-/oli-

gothaline locations. The Abundance Biomass Comparison-curves indicated that the structural complexity level decreased from the polyhaline zone towards the mesohaline zone. Here only one to two species dominated the community. Trophic diversity was highest at Paulina, where the biomass was, to a great extent, dominated by suspension feeders (*C. edule*). In the mesohaline locations deposit feeders dominated the biomass, whereas omnivores (*N. diversicolor*) mainly dominated in the low salinity locations.

Seasonality was evident for all diversity measures, total abundance and biomass at all five locations. All commonly observed macrobenthic species showed distinct seasonal patterns. The general pattern was that of an increase in abundance during late spring and early summer, coinciding with an increase in temperature, followed by a decrease

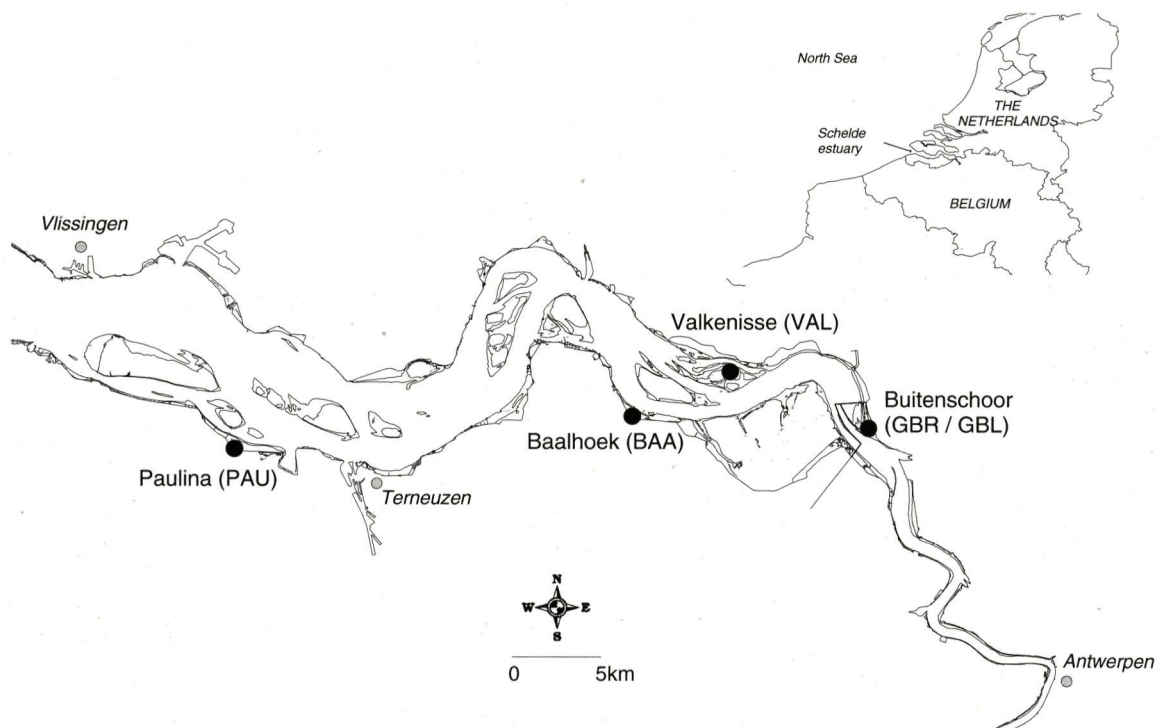


Figure 4.1. Map of the Schelde estuary with the position of the four intertidal mudflats and the five sampling locations respectively.



towards winter. This decrease could be very sharp in time, or slowly decreasing towards winter, depending on the species and/or location considered. Lowest abundances were observed in late winter and early spring. Seasonal variation in biomass followed abundance patterns, especially at the low salinity locations.

Community variation was higher during periods of peak recruitment (spring-early summer) than during non-recruitment periods. Variability in environmental variables (mainly salinity) was highest at the low salinity locations, and this coincided with highest variability in macrobenthic communities. It is argued that in the meso-/oligohaline transition zone, where salinity conditions show large, seasonal fluctuations, benthic communities change frequently, resulting in communities that seldom progress beyond early benthic-community succession. On the other hand, macrobenthic communities in the polyhaline zone appeared to be dominated more by long living species.

Introduction

Estuaries, in general, are shallow, open and dynamic systems, that are characterized by widely varying and often unpredictable hydrological, morphological and chemical conditions (DAY et al. 1989). In the estuarine ecosystem, macrobenthos is one of the important structuring elements of the food web and plays an important role in the system dynamics of estuaries (HERMAN et al. 1999). Several studies indicate that macrozoobenthic populations show large variations both in space and time (DÖRJE et al. 1986; HEIP et al. 1987; HOLLAND et al. 1987; BEUKEMA 1989; WARWICK et al. 1991; YSEBAERT et al. 1993; DAUER 1996). However, short- and mid-term seasonal variations of the quantitative composition of estuarine soft-bottom macrobenthic populations and assemblages along the estuarine salinity gradient are not well documented. Knowledge of the environmental variability and related population effects on a wide range of spatio-temporal scales is fundamental to better understand the functioning, stability and resilience of estuarine ecosystems and how humans influence them (WIENS 1989; LEVIN 1992; THRUSH et al. 1999).

For the Schelde estuary, one of the most extensively studied European estuaries (MEIRE & VINCX 1993; HEIP & HERMAN 1995; HERMAN & HEIP 1999; VAN DAMME et al. *subm.*), large scale spatial patterns of the macrobenthos are well known (e.g. YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a) and long-term monitoring programmes are being conducted (CRAEYMEERSCH 1999), but information on the short-term seasonal variation is lacking.

The purpose of the present work is to quantify the spatial and temporal (seasonal) variability in macrobenthic species composition, species assemblages and functional diversity (trophic structure) along the salinity gradient in

the Schelde estuary. The analysis includes the identification of the environmental factors controlling the observed spatial and temporal patterns of variability in the macrobenthic communities for a two year study period. Spatial analysis includes regional (among salinity zones) and local (muddy versus sandy sampling location) patterns.

Materials and methods

Study area

The Schelde estuary, a macrotidal, turbid, nutrient-rich, heterotrophic coastal plain estuary, is situated in NW Europe, near the border between the Netherlands and Belgium (Figure 4.1). It measures 160 km with a surface area of approx. 350 km². Mean tidal amplitude increases from 3.8 m at Vlissingen to 4.94 m near the Dutch-Belgian border. The river discharge varies from 20 m³ s⁻¹ during summer to 600 m³ s⁻¹ during winter, with a mean yearly average of 105 m³ s⁻¹ (BAEYENS et al. 1998). The residence time of the water in the estuary is rather high, ranging from one to three months, depending on the river discharge (SOETAERT & HERMAN 1995b). The most seaward region has a residence time of about 10-15 days. A maximum turbidity zone is found near the Dutch-Belgian border, but this zone moves over a large distance, up to the freshwater tidal zone, depending among others on the freshwater runoff (BAEYENS et al. 1998; HERMAN & HEIP 1999). Also in this zone of the estuary oxygen concentration decreases rapidly, mainly due to the heavy loading with nutrients and organic material, causing high microbial activity (e.g. GOOSEN et al. 1995, 1999). The estuary is subjected to extensive dredging and dumping, being 10-15 10⁶ m³ per year at present, to maintain the shipping channel to the port of Antwerpen.

Sampling locations were situated in the downstream part of the estuary between the Dutch-Belgian border and Vlissingen (Figure 4.1). This part of the estuary is well mixed, and characterized by a complex network of flood and ebb channels surrounded by several large intertidal flats and marshes (35% of the area). The water column is moderately to well oxygenated, with oxygen saturation increasing from 20-60 % at the border to 90-100 % at the mouth of the estuary.

The study was carried out on five sampling locations situated on four intertidal mudflats (Figure 4.1):

- Location Paulinaschor (approx. 200 m from the shore, height: +0.35 m NAP (NAP= Dutch Ordnance Level, similar to Mean Sea Level)) in the lower part of the estuary. The mudflat is a relatively sheltered area along the south bank, protected from the main channel by a sand flat.



- Location Baalhoek (approx. 175 m from the shore, +0.6 m NAP) in the middle part of the estuary. The mudflat is relatively broad (500m), with a shallow slope with small drainage channels. Only slight changes in elevation were observed since 1990, but a drainage channel disturbed the site.
- Location Valkenisse, on the east side of a large sand flat in the middle part of the estuary (+0.7 m NAP). The location is situated in a sedimentary environment; it raised by 0.3-1.0 m since 1990.
- GBL and GBR, two locations on the Buitenschoor mudflat, in the inner part of the estuary. This mudflat has a very shallow slope and is protected by a sand flat and a dam. The 'muddy' location GBR is situated northwards from the dam (150 m from the shore, +1.5 m NAP), and the 'sandy' location GBL southwards from the dam (75 m from the shore, +1.6 m NAP).

Macrobenthic sampling and laboratory analysis

The macrozoobenthos was sampled monthly between March 1993 and August 1994. At each location 15 samples were taken with a small core (\varnothing 4.5 cm) to a depth of 20 cm. Additionally five samples were taken with a core of 15 cm diameter to a depth of 40 cm. The large cores were sieved in the field through a 3 mm mesh. All benthic samples were preserved in buffered formalin (see also YSEBAERT et al. 1993). In the laboratory the 15 small core samples were sieved through a 1 mm mesh and sorted after staining with 0.02 % Rose Bengal. Organisms were counted and identified to species level, except *Nemertea* and *Oligochaeta*. Since Annelids were often broken due to handling, only parts with a head structure were counted. The large cores were used to estimate the abundance of the larger individuals of bivalves and *Arenicola marina*. Ash-free dry weight (AFDW) biomass was measured by drying all specimens at 105 °C for 12 h and ashing at 550 °C. Population parameters were estimated for the dominant macrobenthic species.

Environmental variables

Also monthly, five sediment cores (\varnothing 2.5 cm) were taken to a depth of 10 cm at each location for the analysis of sediment granulometry (laser diffraction method with a Coulter Particle Size Analyser). Organic matter (OM) in the sediment was estimated by percentage ignition loss. TOC was measured by 'non-dispersive infrared measurement' with Dohrman-DC 180 Carbon Analyser. Water quality parameters were derived from monthly monitoring campaigns at the following monitoring points: Vlissingen, Terneuzen, Zuidergat, Lamswaarde and Doel, representing

the seaward conditions of the estuary and the conditions at Paulina, Baalhoek, Valkenisse and GBR-GBL, respectively.

Data analysis

Species richness, Shannon Wiener diversity index (H'), Pielou's evenness index (J'), abundance and biomass were computed for each sampling month. Patterns on relative species abundance and biomass were produced by k -dominance curves that plot cumulative ranked abundances or biomasses against (log) species rank (LAMBSHEAD et al. 1983). Curves for species abundance and biomass were compared with the Abundance Biomass Comparison method (ABC-method, WARWICK 1986), giving an indication of the 'stress' condition of the location (unstressed, moderately stressed, heavily stressed patterns; see MEIRE & DEREU 1990).

Species were classified into feeding groups based on information of the food source from literature (e.g. FAUCHALD & JUMARS 1979; BARNES 1982). Species that feed on more than one food source were classified by their most common feeding mechanism.

Numerical classification and ordination (based on log transformed abundance data) were used to analyze community structure and its relationship to matching environmental data for the five locations together and for each location separately (FIELD et al. 1982). Classification was applied by an agglomerative clustering method (Group Average Sorting (GAS) of Bray-Curtis dissimilarities, CLIFFORD & STEPHENSON 1975) and a hybrid technique (Two-Way Indicator Species Analysis – TWINSpan, HILL 1979). Several multivariate ordination techniques were used to investigate the maximum (unconstrained) amount of variation in the species data set (indirect techniques: PCA, CA) and the relationship between species composition and the measured environmental variables (direct techniques: RDA, CCA). A preliminary detrended correspondence analysis (DCA; with detrending by segments) was performed to determine the gradient length in standard deviation (SD) units, on which it was decided whether linear (PCA, RDA) or unimodal (CA, CCA) response models had to be applied (JONGMAN et al. 1987; TER BRAAK 1994; TER BRAAK & SMILAUER 1998). Correspondence analysis (CA) and Canonical Correspondence Analysis (CCA) were used for the analysis of all five locations together; Principal Component Analysis (PCA) and Redundancy analysis (RDA) for each location separately. Forward selection of environmental variables was used to identify a subset of factors that significantly and independently explained the variation in the dataset. The significance of the addition of single variables, as well as the significance of the first ordination canonical eigenvalue and the sum of all canonical eigenvalues were tested with Monte Carlo permutation tests (10^3 permutations) (TER BRAAK & VERDONSCHOT 1995; TER BRAAK & SMILAUER 1998).



Table 4.1. Abiotic characterization of the five sampling locations (corresponding water quality monitoring point). Distance from the mouth of the estuary and sampling period for each location is given. Mean values and min.-max. are given for observed water quality (temperature, salinity, oxygen concentration, pH, suspended matter SPM, and Chlorophyll a (Chl a) concentration) and sediment variables (median grain size, mud content and TOC).

Location	CODE	Distance (km)	Sampling period	Temp. °c	Salinity psu	Oxygen mg.l ⁻¹	pH	SPM mg.l ⁻¹	Chl a µg.l ⁻¹	Median µm	Mud vol. %	TOC mg.kg ⁻¹
Paulina (Terneuzen)	PAU	15	Mar93-Aug94 ¹ 16 months	12.8 3.2-22.3	24.2 16.0-27.9	9.1 6.8-11.3	8.0 7.8-8.2	36 8-117	10 2-49	70 59-82	45 36-54	20 7-35
Baalhoek (Zuidergat)	BH	40	Mar93-May94 ² 14 months	12.3 4.9-18.9	16.4 4.2-22.3	8.9 7.1-11.0	7.8 7.6-8.1	62 20-183	12 2-52	75 39-100	43 25-62	17 8-32
Valkenisse (Lamswaarde)	PVV	43	Apr93-Aug94 ³ 16 months	13.3 5.1-19.4	13.3 2.2-19.9	8.0 6.3-10.7	7.8 7.6-8.1	58 14-160	12 3-41	168 148-181	8 2-16	1.3 0.7-3.7
Buitenschoor R (Doel)	GBR	60	Mar93-Aug94 ⁴ 17 months	14.6 6.0-24.3	7.8 0.7-13.0	4.5 1.3-10.9	7.5 7.3-7.7	78 20-230	8 1-18	47 37-63	58 50-64	37 31-49
Buitenschoor L (Doel)	GBL	60	Mar93-Aug94 ⁴ 17 months	14.6 6.0-24.3	7.8 0.7-13.0	4.5 1.3-10.9	7.5 7.3-7.7	78 20-230	8 1-18	128 120-136	25 19-29	5.2 1.0-9.3

Missing sampling months: ¹Apr94,Jul94 ²Apr94 ³Jul94 ⁴Apr94

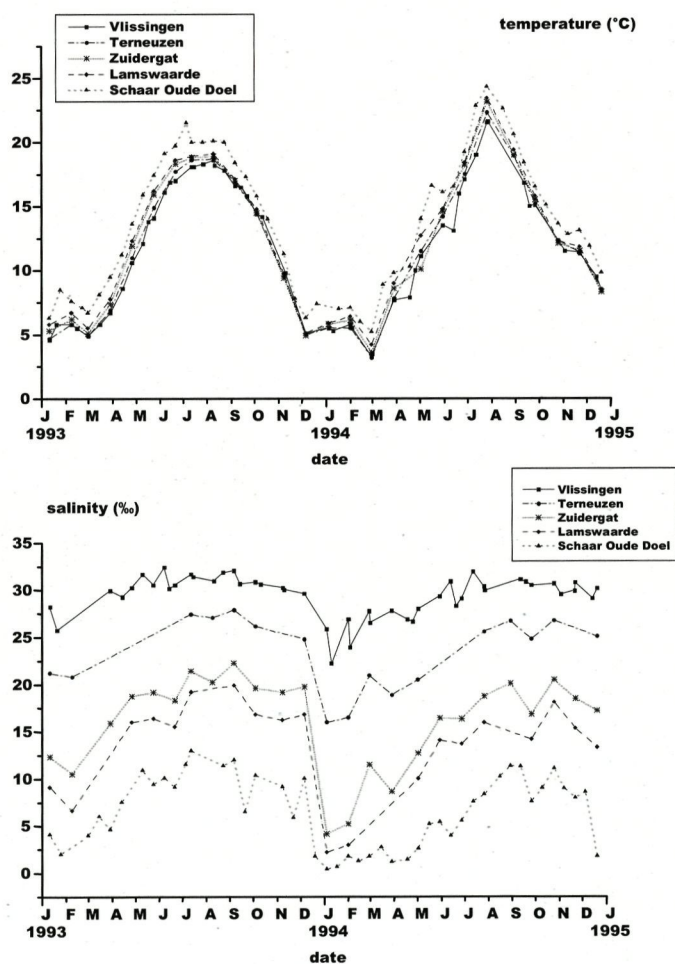


Figure 4.2. Monthly measurements of temperature (°C) and salinity at five monitoring stations along the Schelde estuary (for geographic positions of the stations, see text) for the period January 1993 – December 1994.



Alternatively, for the temporal variation in the structure of macrobenthic communities at each location, similarity among the monthly samplings was also evaluated using the Bray-Curtis index on abundance data, and further summarized by Multidimensional Scaling (MDS ordinations in two dimensions) (KRUSKAL & WISH 1978; CLARKE 1993).

Results

Abiotic characteristics

Water quality parameters and sediment characteristics of each sampling location are summarized in Table 4.1. All locations showed a similar seasonal pattern for temperature (Figure 4.2) and the study period was characterized by mild winters and normal summers. Based on the mean salinity conditions, Paulinaschor was situated in the polyhaline zone (salinity 18-30), Baalhoek and Valkenisse in the α -

mesohaline zone (10-18) and GBR and GBL in the β -mesohaline zone (5-10). A seasonal pattern was observed at all locations with high salinities in summer and lower salinities in winter and spring (Figure 4.2), which was largely due to varying freshwater runoff from the Schelde basin. These variations were much more pronounced in the mesohaline locations and diminished towards the mouth of the estuary (coefficient of variation decreased from 50% at GBR and GBL to 13% at Paulina). Between December 1993 and February-March 1994, extremely low salinities were observed due to a very high river runoff in that period. At 'Doel', salinities then dropped to 0.5-2.5, turning the conditions to almost freshwater. At 'Lamswaarde' and 'Zuidergat' salinity dropped from respectively 17 and 20 in December 1993 to 2.5 and 4 in January 1994.

Mean dissolved oxygen concentrations in the water column were lowest at 'Doel' and increased with increasing salinity. At 'Doel' the water column was highly undersaturated for dissolved oxygen during late spring and most of the summer period. Mean suspended matter concentrations in the water column were highest at 'Doel' (high tur-

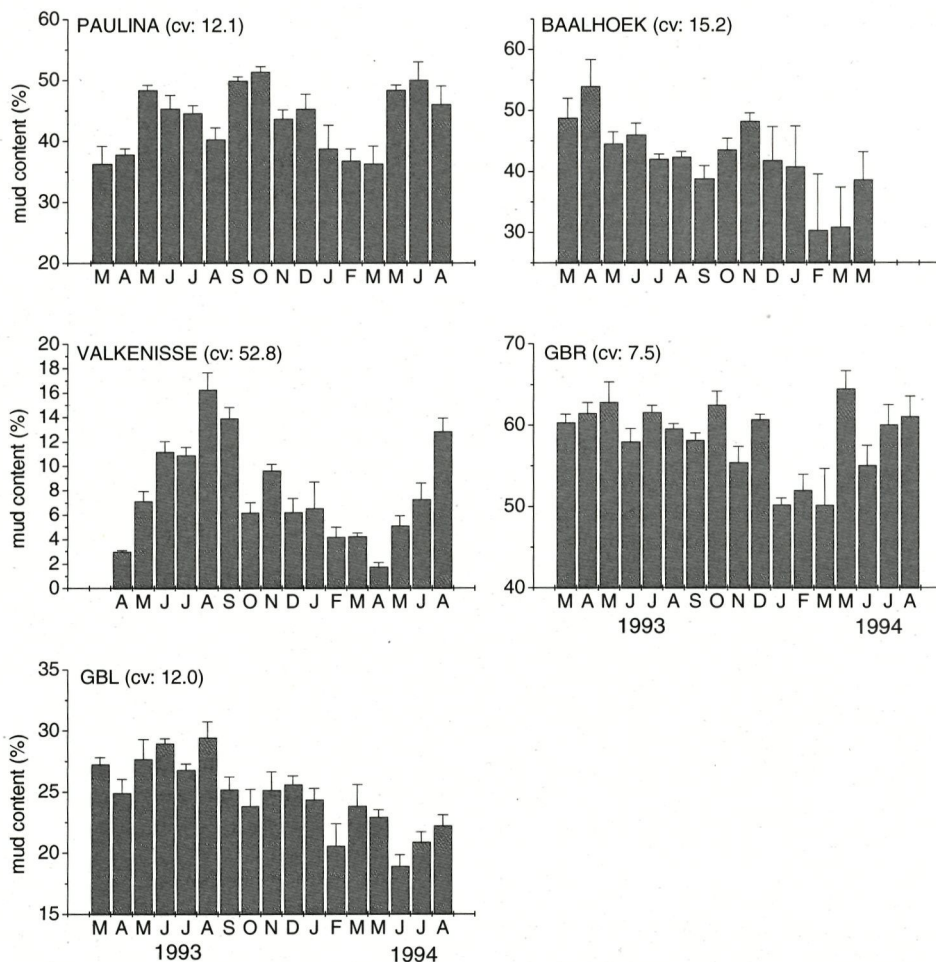


Figure 4.3. Monthly variation in mean (\pm SE) mud content (volume% < 63 μ m) at the five intertidal locations Paulina, Baalhoek, Valkenisse, GBR and GBL (cv = coefficient of variation) for the period March 1993 – August 1994.



Table 4.2. List of species observed in Paulina (PAU), Baalhoek (BAA), Valkenisse (VAL), Buitenschoor Right (GBR) and Buitenschoor Left (GBL). Feeding guilds are indicated between brackets: sdf=surface deposit feeder; ssdf=sub-surface deposit feeder; sf=suspension feeder; o=omnivore; p=predator. x = species observed. Rare species observed only 1 to 3 times are indicated with resp. 1, 2 and 3.

	Pau	Baa	Val	GBR	GBL		Pau	Baa	Val	GBR	GBL
Crustacea						Annelida					
<i>Bathyporeia pilosa/sarsi</i> (sdf)		1	x		3	<i>Anaitides mucosa</i> (p)	x				
<i>Haustorius arenarius</i> (sf)			1			<i>Arenicola marina</i> (ssdf)	x		x		
<i>Corophium arenarium</i> (sdf)			x			<i>Capitella capitata</i> (ssdf)	x	1			
<i>Corophium volutator</i> (sdf)	1	x	x	x	x	<i>Eteone longa</i> (p)		x	x	x	1
<i>Crangon crangon</i> (p)	3	1	3	2		<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i> (ssdf)	x	x	x	x	
<i>Carcinus maenas</i> (o)	x	1	3			<i>Manayunkia aestuarina</i> (sf)				x	
<i>Eurydice pulchra</i> (p)			1			<i>Nephtys</i> spp. (o)			2		
<i>Cyathura carinata</i> (o)	x	1				<i>Nephtys hombergii</i> (o)	x		2		
Mollusca						<i>Nereis diversicolor</i> (o)	x	x	x	x	x
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i> (sf)	x	x	x			<i>Nereis succinea</i> (ssdf)	1		x		
<i>Macoma balthica</i> (sdf)	x	x	x	x	x	<i>Polydora ligni</i> (sdf)	x	x	x		2
<i>Mya arenaria</i> (sf)	3	x	x	1		<i>Pygospio elegans</i> (sdf)	x	x	x	2	x
<i>Scrobicularia plana</i> (sdf)	x	x	x			<i>Spio</i> spp. (sdf)	x				
<i>Abra tenuis</i> (sdf)	x					<i>Tharyx marioni</i> (sdf)	x	1			
<i>Mysella bidentata</i> (sf)	x					<i>Oligochaeta</i> (ssdf)	x	1		x	x
<i>Petricola pholadiformes</i> (sf)		1				Nemertea (p)					
<i>Ensis</i> spp. (sf)		2					1	x	x	1	2
<i>Bivalve</i> spp. (-)		1	1			Total number of species					
<i>Hydrobia ulvae</i> (sdf)	x	x	x	2	2		26	21	24	10	11
<i>Retusa obtusata</i> (sdf)	x					(°without rare species)	20°	13°	16°	5°	6°

bidity zone) and diminished with increasing salinity. Chlorophyll *a* concentrations were lowest at 'Doel' but showed distinct and short peaks in time, coinciding with phytoplankton production (blooms).

The sediment at Paulina consisted of very fine sand (moderately oxidized), at Baalhoek it varied between mud and very fine sand (reduced), at Valkenisse it consisted of fine sand (very well oxidized), at GBR it was muddy, black and highly sulfidic (extremely reduced), and at GBL it consisted of fine sand (moderately oxidized). At Valkenisse, and to a lesser extent also at Paulina, a seasonal variation in mud content was observed in both years, with low values in winter and spring and increasing values during summer (Figure 4.3). At GBR seasonal variability was lowest, with lower mud contents only observed during the period January-March 1994, coinciding with the high river runoff. At Baalhoek and GBL mud content decreased slightly during the study period.

Diversity, abundance and biomass of the benthic macrofauna

A total of 35 macrobenthic species were recorded at the five locations (Table 4.2). Mean diversity decreased from the polyhaline zone towards the mesohaline zone (Table 4.3). On a temporal scale the number of species

was higher in summer and autumn as compared to winter and spring in all locations, except at Baalhoek where only little variation was observed (Figure 4.4). The Shannon-Wiener diversity showed a different temporal pattern among locations. Maximum diversity values were reached during summer and autumn at Paulina, Valkenisse and GBR, indicating that in this period more species contributed to the total abundance than in winter and spring. The opposite pattern was observed at Baalhoek and GBL, indicating that here numerical dominance of only a few species was more pronounced in summer and autumn as compared to the spring and winter situation. The relative variation of the different diversity measures was highest at GBR, GBL and Valkenisse.

Mean total abundance was highest in Valkenisse, followed by Paulina, Baalhoek, GBL and GBR (Table 4.3). Mean total biomass decreased from the polyhaline zone towards the mesohaline zone. Both abundance and biomass showed large seasonal variations at all locations, with lower values in winter and early spring, and an increase in late spring and summer (Figure 4.5). These variations in abundance were most pronounced at Valkenisse, GBR and GBL, where the increase during late spring and summer time amounted to 20, 8 and 7 times respectively. At Paulina this increase in abundance was much less pronounced. At Baalhoek only a slight increase during June was observed, whereas the rest of the year abundance showed a slightly



Table 4.3. Mean (\pm SE) and min-max. values observed for the diversity measures (number of species, Shannon-Wiener H' and evenness J'), total abundance in ind m^{-2} and total biomass in g AFDW m^{-2} for the considered study period. cv = coefficient of variation (%).

Location	Number of species	Shannon-Wiener H'	Evenness J'	Abundance ind m^{-2}	Biomass g AFDW m^{-2}
Paulina	16.5 ± 0.6 12-19 (cv: 14.2)	1.91 ± 0.04 1.62-2.25 (cv: 8.5)	0.68 ± 0.01 0.61-0.77 (cv: 6.1)	24134 ± 1590 12282-33473 (cv: 26.6)	67.6 ± 7.1 42.4-158.0 (cv: 41.7)
Baalhoek	11.2 ± 0.4 8-13 (cv: 17.8)	1.51 ± 0.03 1.28-1.70 (cv: 8.2)	0.64 ± 0.03 0.53-0.82 (cv: 15.1)	16573 ± 1083 10372-27000 (cv: 24.5)	28.4 ± 2.5 17.6-51.8 (cv: 33.2)
Valkenisse	13.1 ± 0.9 8-20 (cv: 27.8)	1.57 ± 0.10 0.52-2.10 (cv: 26.5)	0.61 ± 0.04 0.20-0.79 (cv: 25.1)	32139 ± 7918 3335-91297 (cv: 98.6)	18.4 ± 3.1 3.8-44.9 (cv: 67.9)
GBR	4.4 ± 0.4 2-8 (cv: 38.0)	0.86 ± 0.09 0.43-1.50 (cv: 43.0)	0.62 ± 0.05 0.27-0.97 (cv: 32.2)	7063 ± 912 1928-14504 (cv: 53.2)	3.4 ± 0.4 0.9-5.9 (cv: 44.7)
GBL	5.1 ± 0.4 3-8 (cv: 29.0)	0.83 ± 0.05 0.51-1.20 (cv: 22.5)	0.55 ± 0.04 0.28-0.94 (cv: 30.8)	14257 ± 2234 4653-31396 (cv: 64.6)	10.1 ± 1.0 4.6-18.6 (cv: 39.7)

decreasing trend. The month of increase and of peak abundance differed among locations, with a shift in the month of increase from May to June/July from the polyhaline zone towards the mesohaline zone. A similar seasonal trend was observed for biomass. Peak biomass occurred later in the season as compared to peak abundance.

The ABC-curves indicated that the structural complexity level decreased from the polyhaline zone towards the mesohaline zone (Figure 4.6). At GBR and GBL only one to two species dominated the community. The evaluation of the curves according to Warwick's model showed an 'unstressed' pattern for Paulina, and an 'unstressed to moderately stressed' pattern for the other locations. As to temporal variation, numerical dominance increased in spring/early summer (May-July), especially at Valkenisse, and decreased in summer/autumn, except at GBL and Baalhoek where a further increase was observed.

Seasonal dynamics of key species

Temporal trends in total abundance and total biomass were related to the seasonal dynamics of the most important species of the related macrobenthic communities.

Molluscs

The dominant bivalve species showed clear seasonal patterns and recruitment (spatfall) at one or more locations (Figure 4.7). *M. balthica* was observed at all locations. Spatfall appeared in both years in May-June and peak densities were reached in July or August, being highest at Paulina and Valkenisse. Densities decreased rapidly at GBR and GBL, where *M. balthica* totally disappeared during winter. At Paulina and Valkenisse densities remained relatively high after the spatfall, and decreased only in late autumn (Valkenisse) or winter (Paulina). Biomass was highest at Paulina and Valkenisse and also showed a clear seasonal

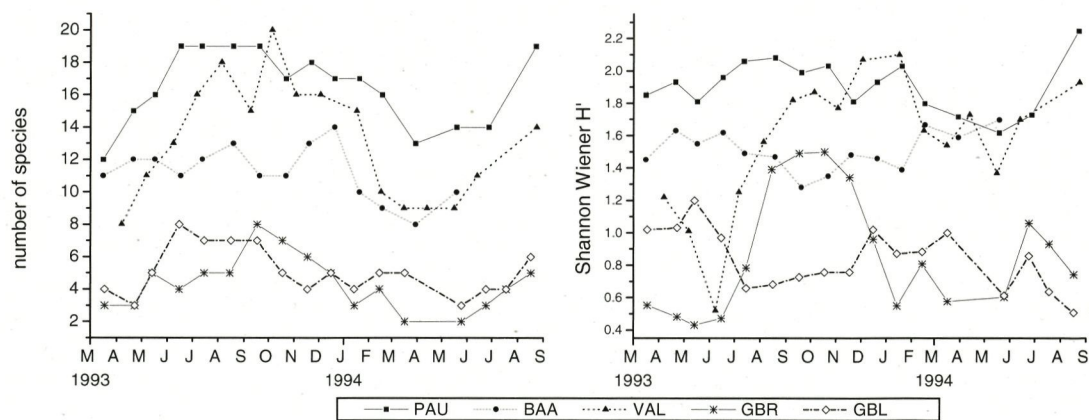


Figure 4.4. Monthly variation in diversity measures (Number of species N_0 and Shannon-Wiener diversity index H') at the five sampling locations for the period March 1993 – August 1994.

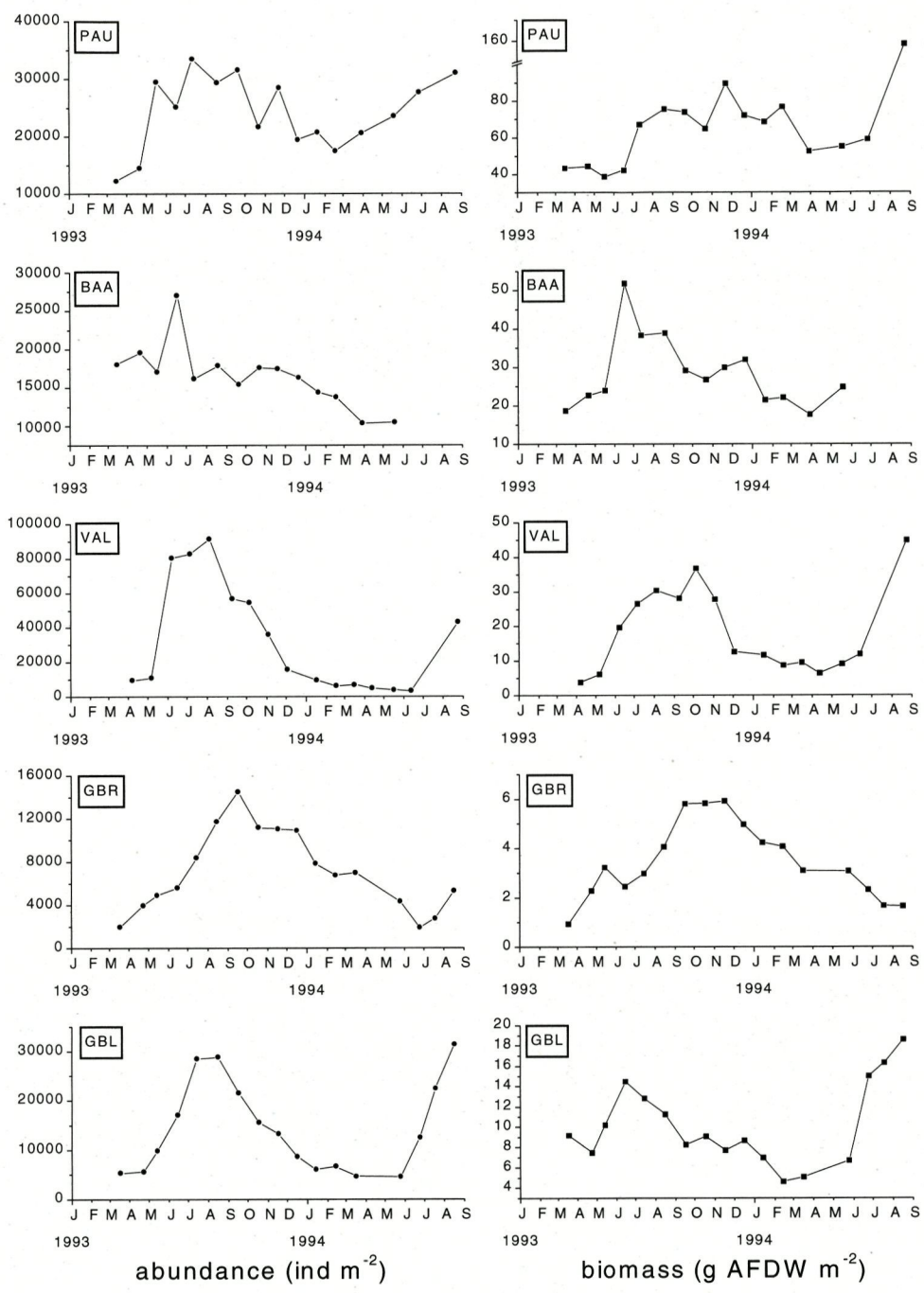


Figure 4.5. Monthly variation in total abundance (ind m⁻²) and total biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) at the five sampling locations for the period March 1993 – August 1994.

pattern. However, biomass changes were more due to the growth of the adult individuals, rather than to the arrival of spatfall.

C. edule was only common at Paulina and Valkenisse. In Paulina numbers increased from 250-375 ind m⁻² in the period March-June 1993 up to 1550 ind m⁻² in July (spatfall). Abundance dropped in August and declined further after December up to approximately 100 ind m⁻² in spring

1994. Biomass increased towards autumn, but was highly variable thereafter. The distinct increase in August 1994 was related to growth of newly arrived spatfall. In Valkenisse, *C. edule* was absent until June 1993, after which an explosive increase was noticed in July and August, due to new spatfall, up to a maximum of 6550 ind m⁻². From September numbers decreased rapidly to zero in February 1994. In August 1994 new spatfall was observed, but at

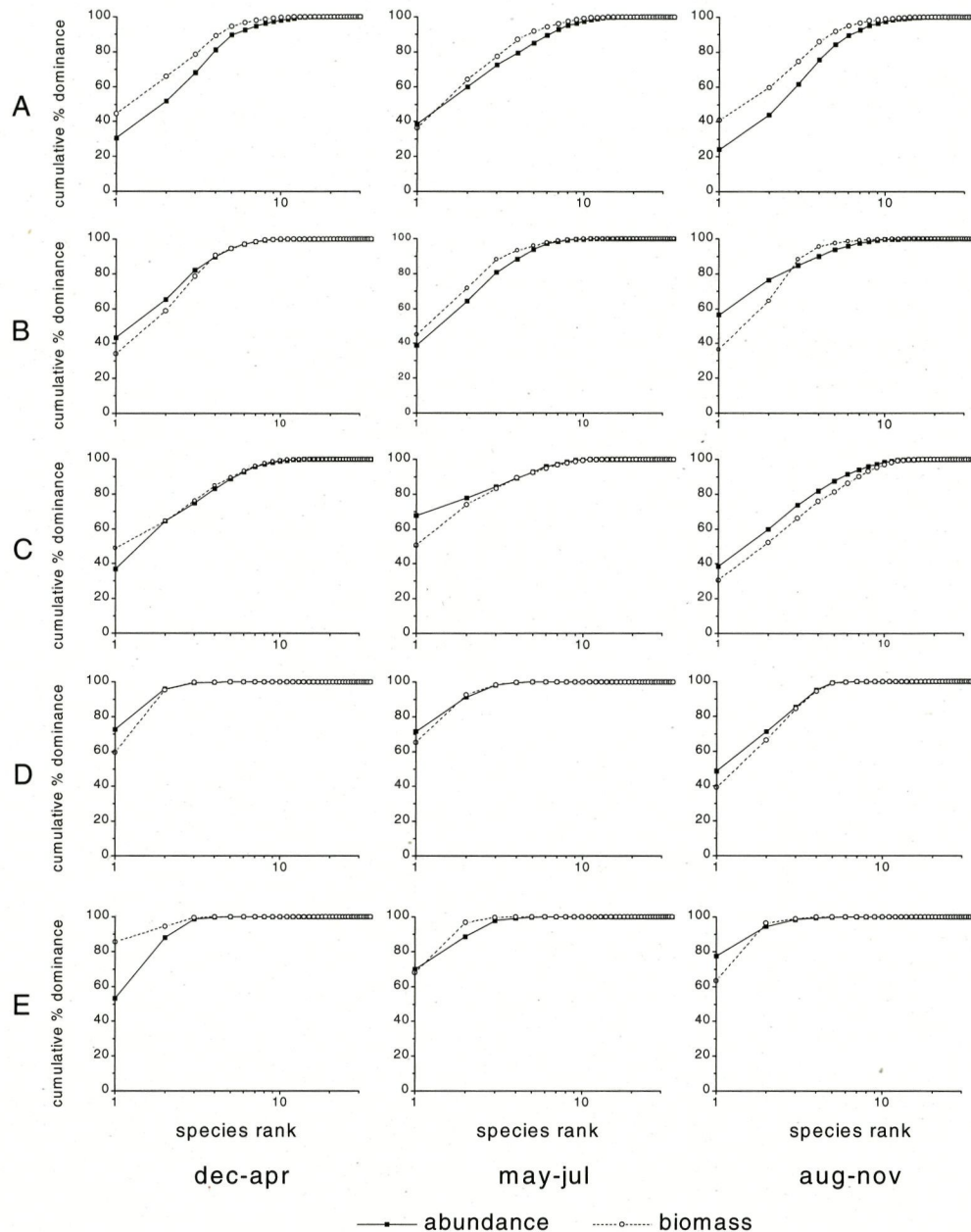


Figure 4.6. Abundance Biomass Comparison curves (ABC-curves) for the different sampling locations, showing the winter – early spring situation (December – April), the spring – early summer (recruitment) situation (May – July), and the late summer – autumn situation (Jul-Oct). A = Paulinaschor; B = Baalhoek; C = Valkenisse; D = GBR; E = GBL.

much lower densities. Biomass values at Valkenisse reflected the growth of the spatfall.

S. plana was only common at Paulina and Baalhoek. Spatfall was observed in the period March-April 1993, after which numbers decreased rapidly at Paulina. From November 1993 on, a steady level in abundance was reached at both locations, being highest at Baalhoek. In 1994 no spatfall of this species was observed. Biomass increased towards summer, and decreased towards winter. Subsequent growth in spring-summer 1994 caused a clear increase in biomass.

M. arenaria was only common at Valkenisse, whereas at Paulina and Baalhoek the species was irregularly observed in very low densities. As for *C. edule*, *M. arenaria* was also absent until June 1993, after which spatfall was observed in July. Numbers decreased towards winter and in 1994 new spatfall was observed. Biomass increased towards November, reflecting growth of the spatfall, after which biomass decreased in winter and spring due to mortality. In June-August biomass increased again, due to the new arrived spatfall and subsequent growth.

Hydrobia ulvae was the only gastropod observed at all

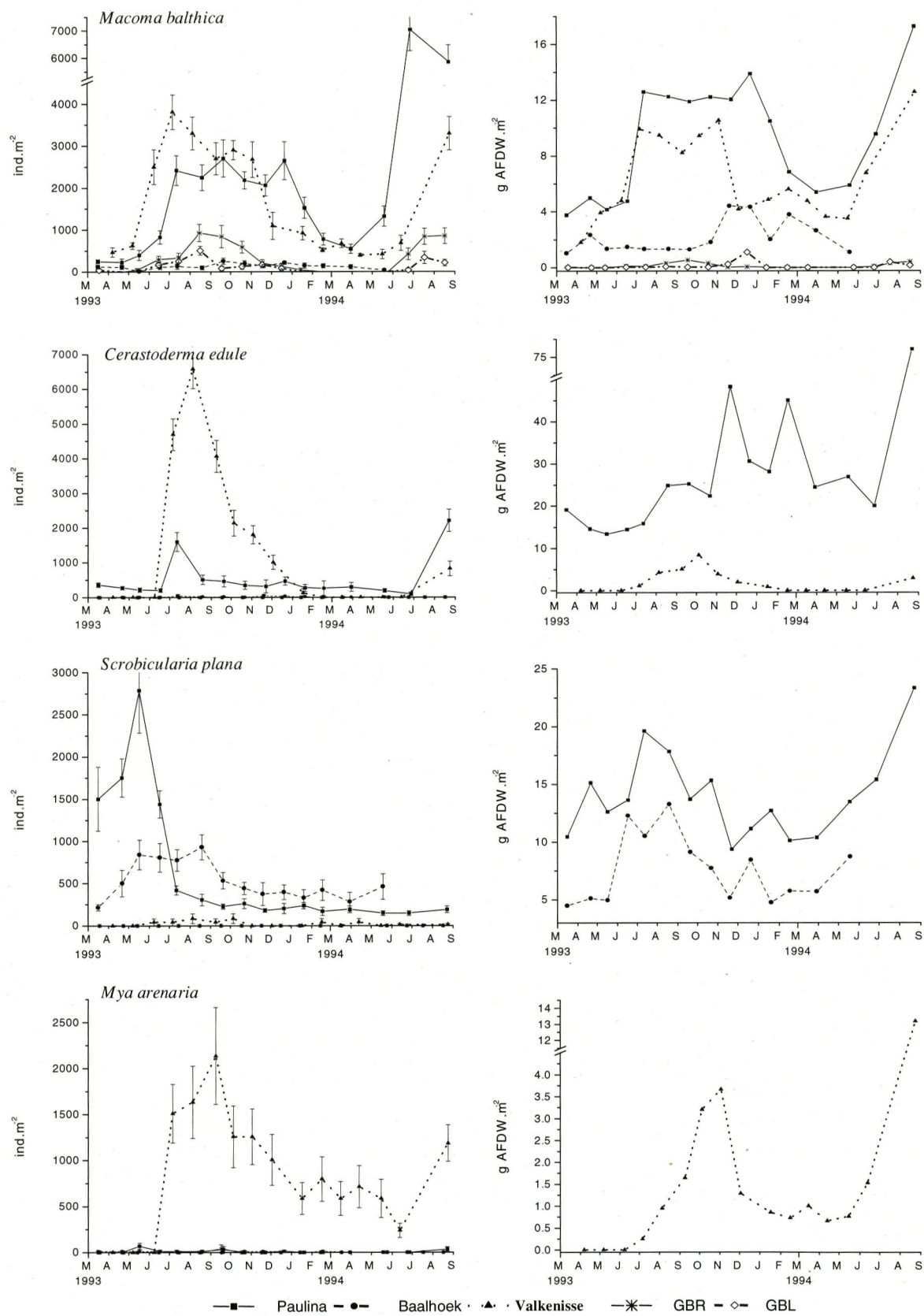


Figure 4.7. Temporal changes in abundance (left) and biomass (right) of the molluscs *Macoma balthica* (surface deposit feeder), *Cerastoderma edule* (suspension feeder), *Scrobicularia plana* (surface deposit feeder) and *Mya arenaria* (suspension feeder).

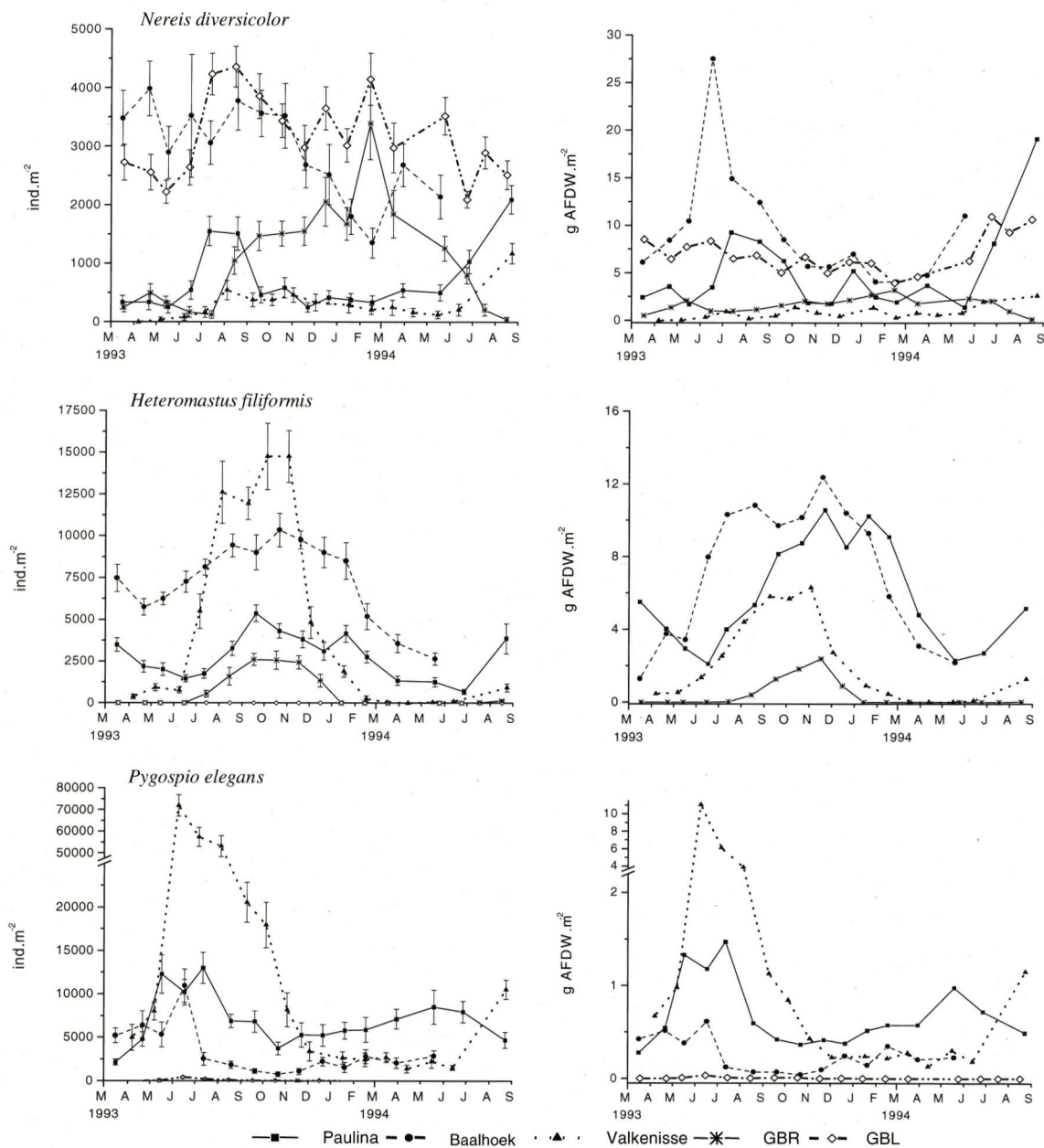


Figure 4.8. Temporal changes in abundance (left) and biomass (right) of the annelids *Nereis diversicolor* (omnivore), *Heteromastus filiformis* (subsurface deposit feeder) and *Pygospio elegans* (surface deposit feeder).

locations (at GBR and GBL only two observations of a few individuals). Densities fluctuated strongly. At Paulina abundances were below 250 ind m⁻² throughout the year, with a peak in May-June 1993 (max. 1250 ind m⁻²), but no peak in 1994. At Baalhoek no clear seasonal trend was observed. At Valkenisse clear seasonal trends were observed with an increase in abundance in spring and a peak in August, being much higher in 1994 (8500 ind m⁻²) as compared to 1993 (1200 ind m⁻²).

Annelids

The most dominant polychaetes were *N. diversicolor*, *H.*

filiformis and *P. elegans* (Figure 4.8). *N. diversicolor* was observed year round at all locations but seasonal patterns differed. Abundance increased in July 1993 at Paulina and GBL, and in August 1993 at Valkenisse and GBR. In Paulina abundance declined rapidly in September, whereas at the other locations abundance only slightly declined towards winter. In the period June-August 1994 an increase was only observed at Paulina and Valkenisse. At Baalhoek no clear seasonal trend was observed, except for a decrease during winter. Biomass values did not show clear seasonal patterns, except at Paulina, and were highest at Baalhoek, with a peak biomass of 27 g AFDW m⁻² in June 1993.



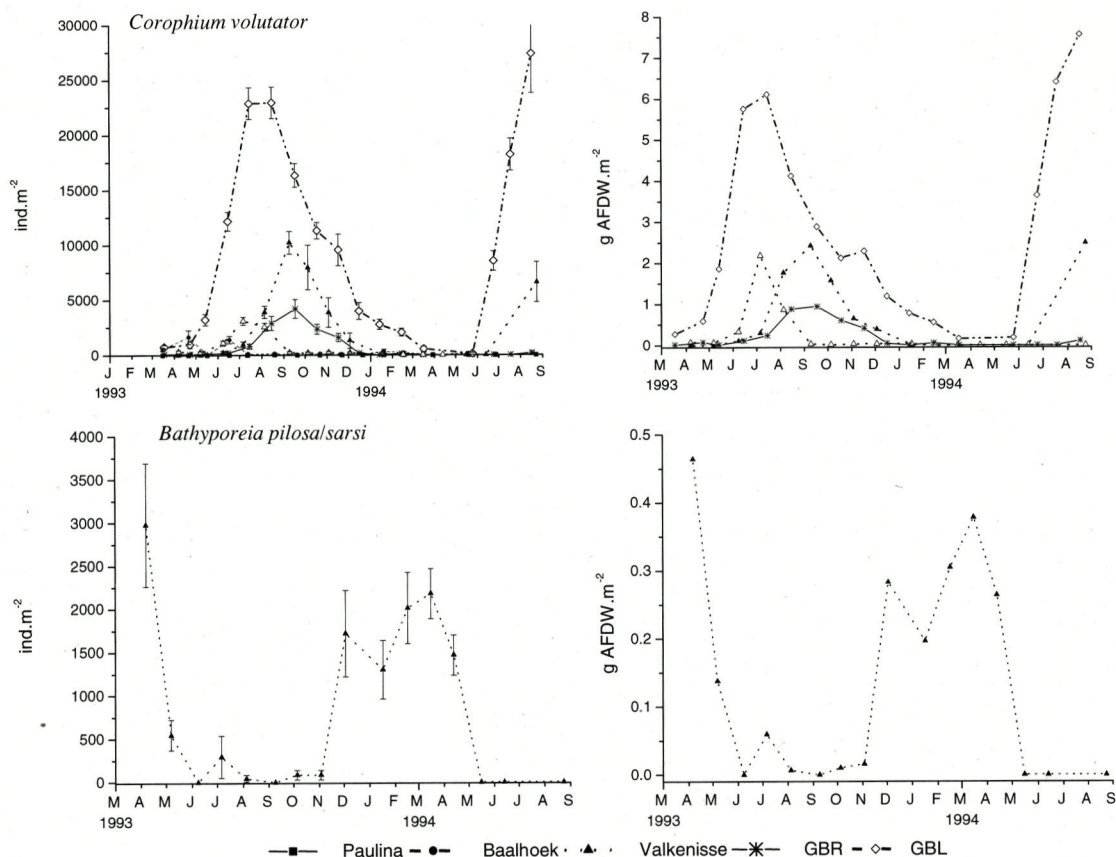


Figure 4.9. Temporal changes in abundance (left) and biomass (right) of the amphipods *Corophium volutator/arenarium* (surface deposit feeder) and *Bathyporeia pilosa* (surface deposit feeder). *C. arenarium* was only observed at Valkenisse and is indicated by open up triangles.

The capitellid *H. filiformis* showed clear seasonal patterns in abundance, especially at Valkenisse and GBL. Here, peak abundance was reached in August-September 1993, but dropped in December to zero during winter. In the period June-August 1994, none of the locations showed a distinct increase in abundance. The biomass pattern was similar to the changes in abundance.

The spionid *P. elegans* occurred in high numbers at Paulina, Baalhoek, and Valkenisse, in low numbers at GBL. The seasonal pattern was similar among locations. Abundance increased very rapidly in May-June to peak densities. At GBL, and especially at Baalhoek, peaks were very short. Numbers decreased at all locations to a relatively steady level in winter and spring, being highest at Paulina (5500 ind m⁻²), and lower at Baalhoek and Valkenisse (2000 ind m⁻²), but zero at GBL. Abundance observed in 1994 was much lower as compared to 1993, especially in Valkenisse. Biomass values followed the same trend as abundance. Other spionid species, like *Polydora ligni* and *T. marioni*, showed similar seasonal patterns.

Crustaceans

The amphipod *Corophium volutator* was a common species at Valkenisse, GBL and GBR, especially at GBL where it dominated the community in summer (Figure

4.9). Increase in abundance was earlier in GBL (May-June) as compared to GBR and Valkenisse (July-August). Peak densities were highest in GBL (25000 ind m⁻²). Biomass more or less followed the trend in abundance, but e.g. in GBL also growth of the different cohorts influenced biomass trends (pers. observ.).

Corophium arenarium was only observed at Valkenisse in 1993, showing a different seasonal pattern as compared to *C. volutator*. Numbers of *C. arenarium* increased already in June to reach a peak in July and August. In August, when numbers of *C. volutator* started to increase, numbers of *C. arenarium* decreased to almost zero in September-October.

Another amphipod, *Bathyporeia pilosa/sarsi*, was also common at Valkenisse. It was the only macrobenthic species with a completely inverted seasonal pattern, showing highest densities during winter, and nearly disappearing in summer.

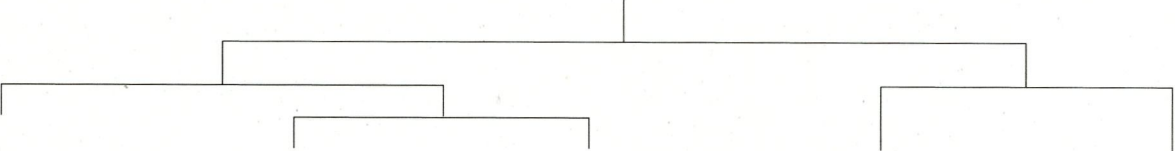
Trophic structure

Surface deposit (SDF) and subsurface deposit feeders (SSDF) numerically dominated at all locations (Table 4.4), but at different ratios: SDF at Valkenisse (71%), GBL (69%)





Table 4.4. Mean abundance (A: ind m^{-2}), mean biomass (B: g AFDW m^{-2}) and number of observations (N) for the macrobenthic species observed at the five sampling locations. Boldfaced numbers represent the three most dominant species (abundance and biomass) for each location.



Species	Paulina N=16 months			Baalhoek N=14 months			Valkenisse N= 16 months			GBR N=17 months			GBL N=17 months		
	A	B	N	A	B	N	A	B	N	A	B	N	A	B	N
<i>Tharyx marioni</i>	4031	1.04	16	3	0.004	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Retusa obtusata</i>	202	0.09	12	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Abra tenuis</i>	68	0.13	11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Spio</i> spp.	97	0.02	11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i>	520	28.1	16	10	0.02	6	1353	1.78	8	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Eteone longa</i>	874	0.42	16	51	0.06	7	359	0.23	12	1	0.001	2	-	-	-
<i>Scrobicularia plana</i>	642	14.0	16	521	7.58	14	21	1.25	15	1	0.0001	1	-	-	-
<i>Mya arenaria</i>	7	0.04	11	8	0.70	6	921	1.86	14	2	0.0001	1	-	-	-
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>	2800	5.89	16	7307	7.18	14	4354	2.03	15	661	0.40	8	-	-	-
<i>Nereis succinea</i>	3	0.004	1	-	-	-	196	0.19	14	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Cyathura carinata</i>	-	-	-	931	0.61	14	8	0.01	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Corophium arenarium</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	506	0.23	10	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Bathyporeia</i> spp.	-	-	-	6	0.003	1	794	0.13	11	-	-	-	7	0.001	3
<i>Pygospio elegans</i>	7080	0.68	16	3332	0.25	14	16806	1.74	16	5	0.001	2	54	0.004	7
<i>Hydrobia ulvae</i>	234	0.10	14	601	0.22	14	935	0.27	16	7	0.003	2	10	0.001	2
<i>Polydora ligni</i>	204	0.07	7	308	0.06	11	1457	0.24	8	-	-	-	5	0.001	2
<i>Macoma balthica</i>	2060	9.24	16	135	2.15	14	1683	6.49	16	324	0.14	12	118	0.13	11
<i>Nereis diversicolor</i>	696	5.03	16	2926	9.33	14	301	0.81	15	1073	1.63	17	3166	7.00	17
<i>Oligochaeta</i>	4393	0.52	16	6	0.0015	1	-	-	-	4235	1.06	17	1179	0.27	17
<i>Corophium volutator</i>	3	0.002	1	328	0.15	12	2195	0.61	9	748	0.21	12	9639	2.73	17
<i>Manayunkia aestuarina</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	67	0.001	6
Suspension feeders	765	28.24		331	0.79		3737	3.87		2.5	0.0003		72	0.002	
Surface deposit feeders	14037	25.20		4927	10.40		22941	10.66		1084	0.35		9828	2.86	
Subsurface deposit feeders	7288	8.25		8247	7.80		4575	2.57		4896	1.46		1179	0.27	
Omnivores	836	5.33		2929	9.34		327	0.91		1072	1.63		3166	7.00	

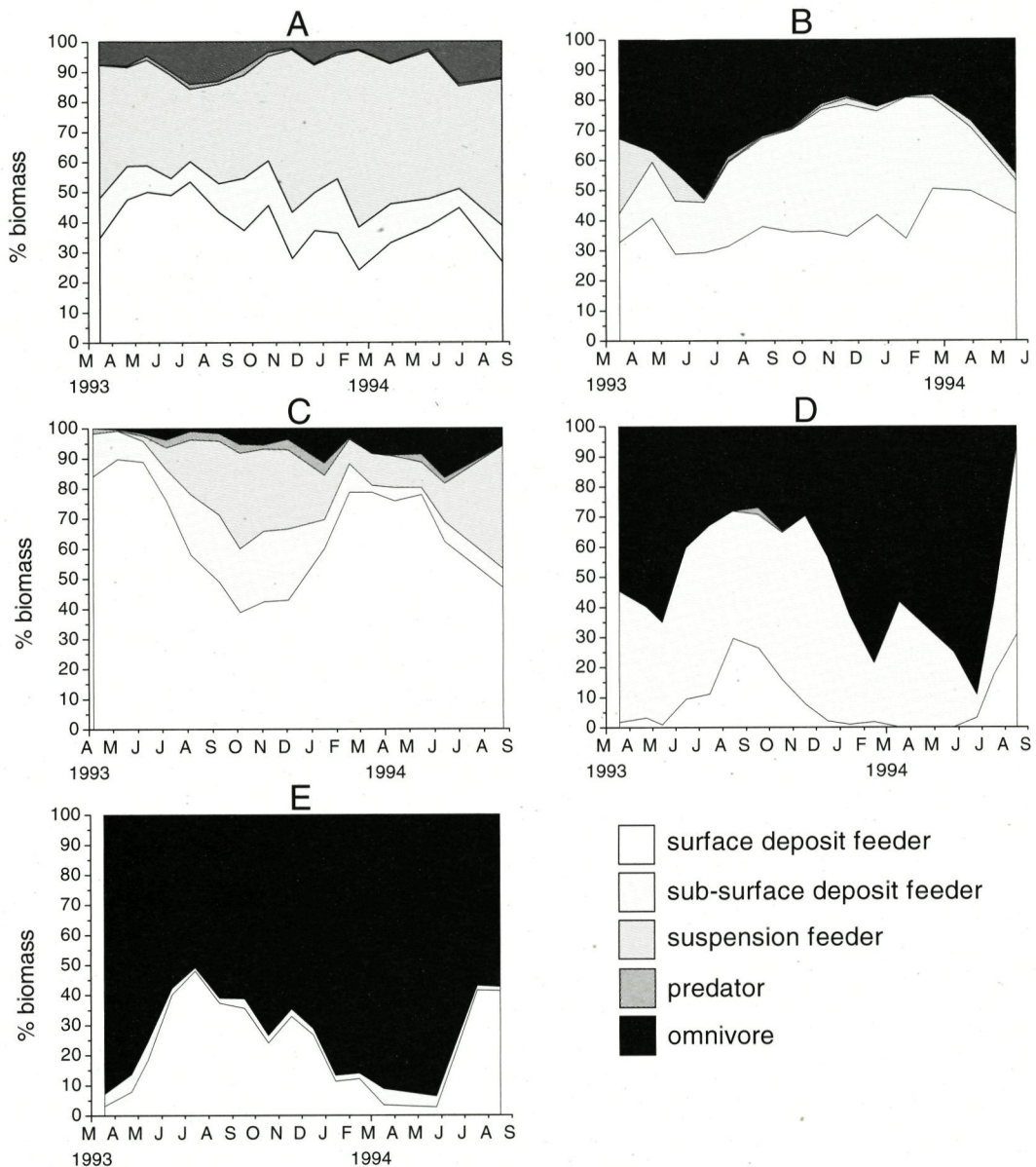


Figure 4.10. Temporal variation in the trophic structure of macrobenthic assemblages (in terms of biomass) at the five sampling locations. A = Paulinaschor; B = Baalhoek; C = Valkenisse; D = GBR; E = GBL.

and Paulina (58%), and SSDF at GBR (69%) and Baalhoek (50%). Omnivores were only important at Baalhoek, GBR and GBL with resp. 18, 15 and 22 % of the total abundance observed. At these three locations, almost no suspension feeders (SF) were observed, whereas at Paulina and Valkenisse respectively 3 and 12 % SF were observed. Based on biomass values, an increasing importance of SF was observed at Paulina and Valkenisse (respectively 42 and 21 %), whereas at the other three locations Baalhoek, GBR and GBL an increasing importance of omnivores was observed (respectively 33, 47 and 69 %). On a seasonal

scale, the relative proportion of the different feeding types was in general consistent through the year at Paulina and Baalhoek, whereas at Valkenisse, GBR and GBL clear seasonal shifts were observed, as demonstrated by the biomass (Figure 4.10). At Valkenisse the spring and winter periods were characterized by a dominance of SDF, but in summer other feeding guilds were also observed in the community. At GBR and GBL the community was dominated by omnivores and SSDF (only GBR) in winter, whereas towards summer also SDF appeared in the community.

Classification and indicator species

The cluster analysis based on monthly density samples of all locations, showed a distinct separation among the five locations (Figure 4.11). In a first division, the low salinity locations GBL and GBR were separated. In a next division, all GBL sampling months were separated from the GBR sampling months, except for the three spring months March-May 1993. For the other three locations, all sampling months of Paulina were first separated from Baalhoek and Valkenisse. In the latter cluster, first the spring sampling months of Valkenisse were separated, followed by a further division of all Baalhoek sampling months and the remaining Valkenisse sampling months. It was clear from the cluster

analysis that spatial segregation dominated upon seasonal variation among the five locations.

The dissimilarity among sampling months within one location was most pronounced at Valkenisse, GBR and GBL, and was lowest at Baalhoek.

Table 4.4 summarizes the main species composition and community structure at each location. The macrobenthic community at Paulina was characterized by some typical polyhaline species, such as *Abra tenuis* and *Tharyx marioni*. *T. marioni*, together with *Pygospio elegans* and *Oligochaeta* were numerically dominant, whereas biomass was dominated by the bivalves *Cerastoderma edule*, *Scrobicularia plana* and *Macoma balthica*. The macrobenthic community at Baalhoek was numerically dominated by

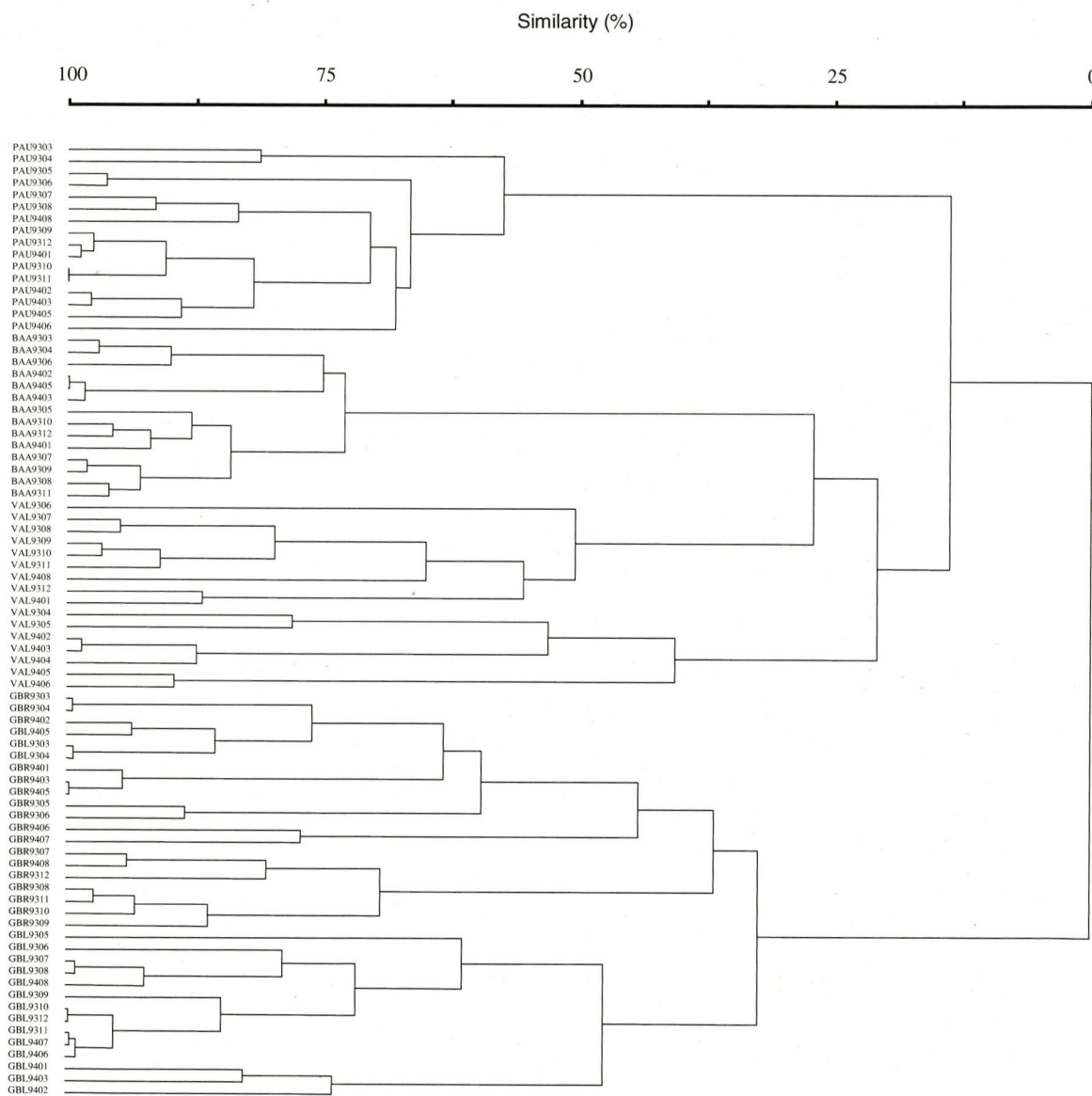


Figure 4.11. Group average sorting of all sampling months of the five locations based on abundance data using Bray-Curtis similarities. Locations are Paulina (PAU), Baalhoek (BAA), Valkenisse (VAL), GBR and GBL. Months are abbreviated as follows: 9303 = March 1993; 9304 = April 1993; ...

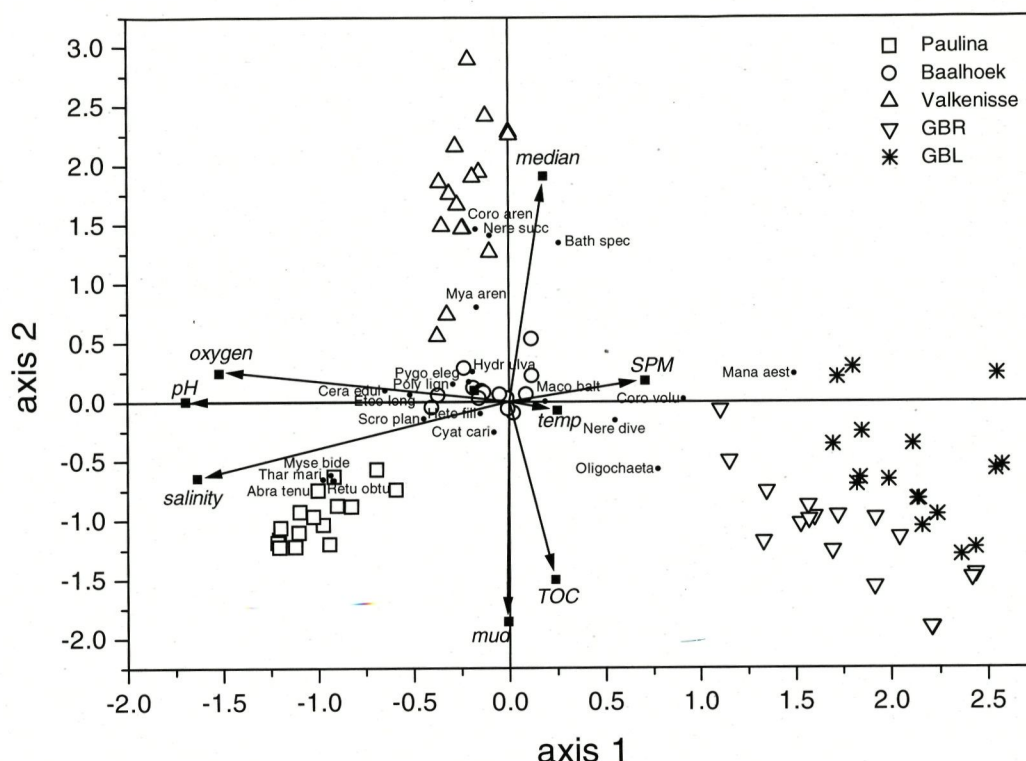


Figure 4.12. CCA ordination diagram on the monthly abundance data of all five locations together. Only most important species are presented. Environmental variables are presented as arrows. Environmental variables are the surface water quality parameters salinity, temperature (temp), oxygen concentration (oxygen), suspended matter (SPM) and pH, and the sediment characteristics mud content (mud), median (median grain size) and TOC. The orthogonal projection of a species point onto an environmental arrow represents the approximate center of the species distribution along that particular environmental gradient. Species names are represented by the first four letters of the genus and species name respectively.

Heteromastus filiformis, and to a lesser extent by *P. elegans* and *Nereis diversicolor*. *Cyathura carinata* was the most common crustacean at Baalhoek and was absent at the other locations. Biomass was dominated by *N. diversicolor*, *H. filiformis* and *S. plana*. The macrobenthic community at Valkenisse was numerically dominated by *P. elegans*, whereas biomass was mainly determined by *M. balthica*. Several crustaceans, such as *Bathyporeia spec.* and *Corophium arenarium* were only observed at Valkenisse. At GBR *Oligochaeta* and at GBL *C. volutator* were numerically dominant. *N. diversicolor*, also appearing in relatively high numbers, especially contributed to the total biomass in these communities, at GBL 70% and at GBR 50% on a yearly average, respectively. *Manayunkia aestuarina*, a typical brackish water species, was only observed at GBL in very low densities.

Species-environment associations

The first two axes of the CCA (Figure 4.12) had eigenvalues of 0.30 and 0.20 and explained 37.7% of the species variation. They were significant by Monte Carlo sta-

tistics and represented 80.8% of the species-environment relation. On the correlation biplot of the CCA the five locations have different positions, which was in general agreement with the cluster analysis. The first axis was strongly correlated with salinity ($r = -0.75$), with the polyhaline location Paulina situated at the left side of the diagram and the β -mesohaline locations GBR and GBL at the right side. Besides salinity, also oxygen concentration and pH correlated strongly with the first axis. The sediment characteristics correlated strongly with the second axis (median grain size: $r = 0.82$; mud content: $r = -0.80$), along which axis especially Valkenisse was differentiated. Also GBL and GBR were mainly differentiated along the second axis. Forward selection and Monte Carlo permutation tests of environmental variables also showed that salinity and median grain size, and to a lesser extent also oxygen concentration, contributed significantly and independently to explaining the variation in the CCA.

The position of the different species in the diagram reflected their spatial distribution. Species observed at only one location were situated near the corresponding location (e.g. *A. tenuis* and *T. marioni* at Paulina, *C. arenarium* and *Bathyporeia pilosa/sarsi* at Valkenisse, *C. carinata* at Baalhoek



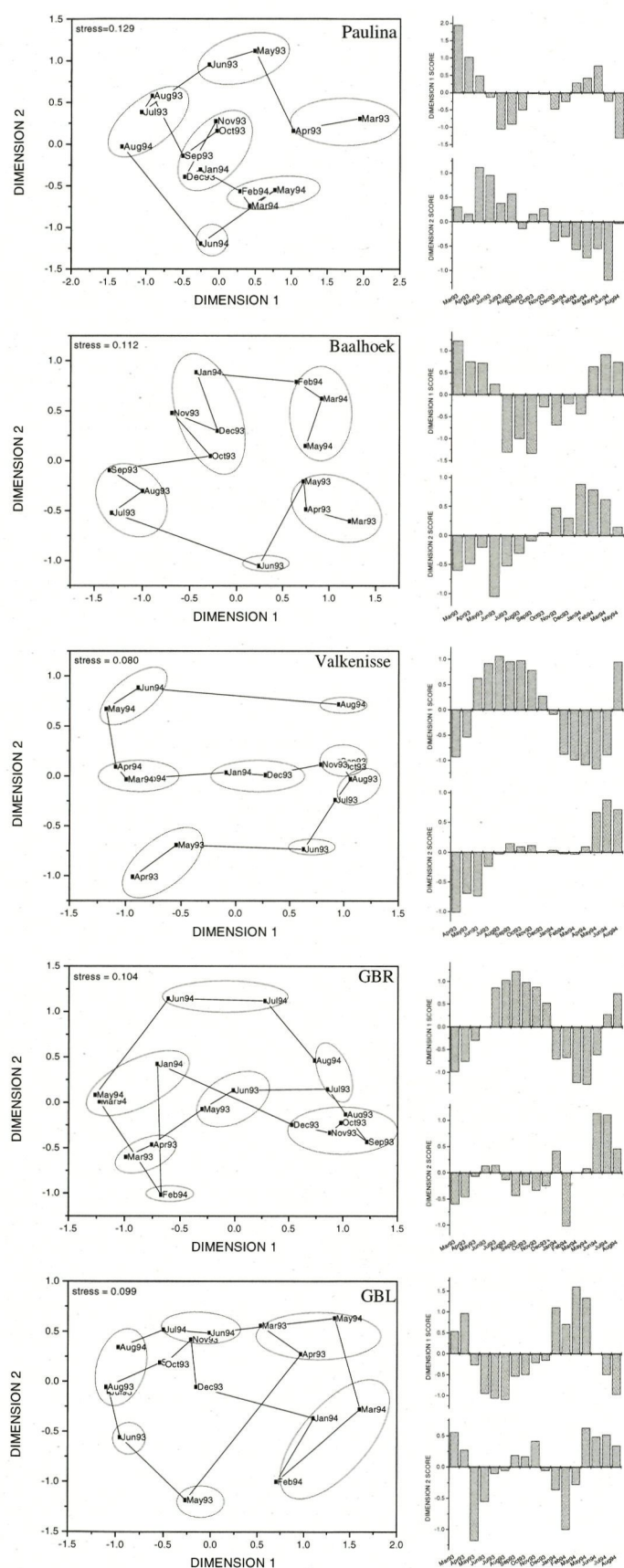


Figure 4.13. Temporal variability in macrobenthic community structure at each location. Left-hand column: ordination diagram by multidimensional scaling (MDS). Lines connect successive sampling months and circles indicate clusters obtained by Group Average Sorting of Bray-Curtis dissimilarities. Right-hand column: scores of the first and second ordination axes as a function of time. A = Paulinaschor; B = Baalhoek; C = Valkenisse; D = GBR; E = GBL.

and *M. aestuarina* at GBL). Other species, like *M. balthica* and *H. filiformis*, which were observed at all locations, were situated in the centre of the diagram.

Although spatial segregation dominated upon seasonal variation, it was observed from the CCA diagram that sampling months from Paulina and Baalhoek were more lumped, whereas sampling months from Valkenisse, GBR and GBL were more spread in the ordination space, indicating larger temporal changes in community structure here.

Temporal variability in macrobenthic community structure

Seasonal variability was analyzed for each location separately by MDS ordinations that provided good representations with stress values between 0.08 and 0.13 (Figure 4.13). The first MDS axis showed strong correlation with salinity, especially at GBL ($r = -0.85$, $p < 0.001$) and GBR ($r = 0.80$, $p < 0.001$), and to a lesser extent also at Valkenisse ($r = 0.66$, $p = 0.005$) and Baalhoek ($r = 0.64$, $p = 0.01$), whereas

at Paulina salinity was more correlated with the second MDS axis ($r = 0.52$, $p < 0.05$). Temperature was strongly correlated with the first axis at GBL ($r = -0.68$, $p < 0.005$) and to a lesser extent also at Paulina ($r = -0.53$, $p < 0.05$), and with the second axis at GBR ($r = 0.69$, $p < 0.01$). Mud content strongly correlated with the first MDS axis at Valkenisse ($r = 0.82$, $p < 0.0001$).

In general, the sampling months seemed to move through ordination space in a more or less cyclic pattern, but spring sampling months did not necessarily return to the same position from year to year. This more or less cyclic movement through the ordination space was clearly demonstrated by the changes of the scores along the first ordination axis. The distance between late summer – early autumn sampling months was smaller in comparison with spring months, indicating more distinct community changes during spring months. The August sampling month of both years was found more or less at the same position, indicating a similar benthic community structure in summer in both years.

At Paulina all sampling months showed a relatively high similarity (Figure 4.11). Months were more or less clus-

Table 4.5. Results of the PCA and RDA ordinations on the monthly sampling occasions of each location separately. Given are the eigenvalues of the first and second axis for both ordination methods. For the RDA also the percentage variance of the species data and the percentage variance of the species-environment relation explained by the axes is given cumulatively. Both the first canonical eigenvalue as the sum of all canonical eigenvalues were statistically significant by Monte Carlo permutation test ($p < 0.01$), except for Paulina (not significant). Correlations ($^{\circ}p < 0.05$; $^{\circ\circ}p < 0.01$; $^{\circ\circ\circ}p < 0.001$) of environmental variables with the axes are given only for those environmental variables that contributed significantly and independently to explaining the variation in the RDA (forward selection with Monte Carlo permutation tests; $^{\circ}p < 0.05$; $^{\circ\circ}p < 0.01$; $^{\circ\circ\circ}p < 0.001$).

	Axis 1	Axis 2		Axis 1	Axis 2
Paulina			Valkenisse		
Eigenvalue PCA	0.30	0.23	Eigenvalue PCA	0.58	0.13
Eigenvalue RDA	0.194	0.094	Eigenvalue RDA	0.50	0.10
% variance of species data	19.4	28.8	% variance of species data	49.9	59.4
Species – environment relation	43.1	64.1	Species – environment relation	74.4	88.6
Temperature $^{\circ}$	-0.72 **	0.17	Mud content $^{\circ\circ\circ}$	-0.79 ***	-0.33
			Temperature $^{\circ}$	-0.39	-0.77 ***
Baalhoek			GBR		
Eigenvalue PCA	0.34	0.25 $^{\circ}$	Eigenvalue PCA	0.61	0.15
Eigenvalue RDA	0.314	0.214	Eigenvalue RDA	0.49	0.12
% variance of species data	31.4	52.8	% variance of species data	48.9	61.0
Species – environment relation	43.4	72.9	Species – environment relation	70.3	87.8
Salinity $^{\circ\circ}$	-0.71 **	0.08	Salinity $^{\circ\circ\circ}$	-0.79 ***	0.08
Mud content $^{\circ}$	-0.36	0.68 **	Temperature $^{\circ}$	-0.35	0.59 *
			Median grain size $^{\circ}$	0.27	-0.12
GBL					
Eigenvalue PCA	0.48	0.23			
Eigenvalue RDA	0.414	0.114			
% variance of species data	41.4	52.8			
Species – environment relation	66.2	84.5			
Salinity $^{\circ\circ}$	0.83 ***	0.27			



tered in a successive way, with clusters being March-April 1993, May-June 1993, July-August 1993/1994, October 1993 – January 1994, February-May 1994 and June 1994. Baalhoek was characterized by the highest similarities among sampling months, indicating relatively small changes in the macrobenthic community from month to month. However, spring, summer and winter months were clearly segregated in the MDS ordination. In Valkenisse a relatively large dissimilarity was observed among certain groups of months. Based on the cluster analysis, spring months (Feb-June) of both 1993 and 1994 were separated from all other months. Other months were clustered in a successive way, which was clearly demonstrated in the MDS ordination. Large changes were observed from month to month, except for the late summer – autumn (Jul-Nov) period. In GBR and GBL basically the same pattern was observed as for Valkenisse, with large changes in ordination space during winter and spring months, and smaller changes during late summer – autumn.

The results of the PCA and RDA ordinations are summarized in Table 4.5. Eigenvalues of the first axis were strong at GBR, Valkenisse and GBL and suggest the gradient that it represented is highly significant and by far the most important. Eigenvalues of the second axis were low. Only at Paulina both axes of the RDA had low eigenvalues, which were not statistically significant. Temperature or salinity were most important in determining the first RDA ordination axis for all locations, both parameters also covarying to some extent (range of $r = 0.55-0.67$; $p < 0.03$). At Valkenisse mud content (strongly correlated with salinity and temperature: $r = 0.73$; $p < 0.001$) was highly correlated with the first ordination axis, reflecting the high seasonal variation in mud content at this location. The graphical bi-plot diagrams of the PCA and RDA yielded similar projections of the sampling months as those observed in the MDS ordinations, and are therefore not presented.

Discussion

Spatial variability in macrobenthic species distributions

The data from this study confirm the previously observed pattern of both species distribution and relative dominance (abundance and biomass) along the estuarine salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary (WOLFF 1973; MEIRE et al. 1991; YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a, this thesis). The spatial variation between the five locations was larger than the seasonal variation and was on a regional scale strongly influenced by salinity and on a local scale by sediment characteristics (see also e.g. FLINT & KALKE 1985).

The pattern of species richness and diversity declining with decreasing salinity is observed in most estuaries (e.g. BOESCH 1977; WOLFF 1983; MICHAELIS 1983; YSEBAERT et al. 1998a), as well as the trend from lower biomass in the low salinity zones to higher biomass in the polyhaline zone (MEIRE et al. 1991; HEIP et al. 1995; YSEBAERT et al. 1998). No clear trend in abundance was observed, similar to other observations in the Schelde estuary (YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a, this thesis).

On a more local scale (within the same salinity zone), sediment type clearly influenced the observed macrobenthic communities. In the α -mesohaline, as well as in the β -mesohaline zone, the macrobenthic community structure differed between the 'muddy' location and the 'sandy' location. Several studies indeed have indicated sediment characteristics (e.g. mud content) being important factors influencing the distribution of benthic populations (e.g. GRAY 1974; BEUKEMA 1976; ZAJAC & WHITLATCH 1982a,b; MEIRE et al. 1994; MANNINO & MONTAGNA 1997). However, as the range of sediment parameters in our study is relatively small, relative to the tolerance of the different species, most species were observed both in the sandy as in the muddy locations, but differing in relative dominance.

Temporal variability in macrobenthic species distributions

In this study seasonality was evident for all diversity measures, total abundance and biomass at all five locations. All commonly observed macrobenthic species showed distinct seasonal patterns. The general pattern was that of an increase in abundance during late spring and early summer, coinciding with an increase in temperature, followed by a decrease towards winter. This decrease could be very sharp in time, or slowly decreasing towards winter, depending on the species and/or location considered. Lowest abundances were observed in late winter and early spring. Seasonal variation in biomass followed abundance patterns, especially at GBR, GBL and Valkenisse, indicating that biomass is mainly determined by the recruitment (and successive disappearance) of newly settled individuals. At Paulina the temporal pattern in biomass was more due to the summer growth in established populations of the larger species, mainly the bivalves *C. edule* and *S. plana*, although the sharp biomass increase in August 1994 was due to newly settled *C. edule* spatfall.

A sampling interval of one month is probably too long to detect the exact time of settlement. However, both the month when the population abundance of a species increased as the magnitude of this increase varied among species, among the five locations and between both years.

For bivalves spatfall was observed for all species. For each species the observed period of spatfall was similar among locations, but differed among species: earliest for *S.*



plana (March–April), followed by *M. balthica* (May–June), *C. edule* and *M. arenaria* (both July). An extensive literature exists on the reproduction and recruitment of bivalves. In general, duration, timing and number of spawning periods vary from year to year, differ from place to place and depends on water temperature and age (e.g. MÖLLER & ROSENBERG 1983; BACHELET 1986; HARVEY & VINCENT 1989; DUCROTOY et al. 1991; ESSINK et al. 1991; HONKOOP & VAN DER MEER 1997). In this study recruitment of *M. balthica*, *C. edule* and *M. arenaria* spatfall was observed in both years, for *S. plana* only in 1993. *S. plana* is known to have very irregular spat fall (ESSINK et al. 1991). Enhanced recruitment success is often noticed for intertidal bivalve species after severe winters (e.g. BEUKEMA 1979, 1982). As in this study both winters were normal to mild, without severe frost periods, the effect of severe winters could not be investigated, but successful reproduction was apparent for all species.

Polychaetes, especially the spionid (e.g. *P. elegans*) and capitellid (*H. filiformis*) species showed a distinct recruitment success. The period of observed recruitment was similar among locations, but differed among species, being in general earlier (May–June) for the spionid species as compared to *H. filiformis* (July–August).

For the dominant amphipod *C. volutator* the increase in abundance was observed earlier at GBL (May–June) as compared to GBR and Valkenisse (July–August). This can probably be explained by the fact that in GBL a population of *C. volutator* remained present in the preceding winter, reproducing in May–June, whereas at the other two locations no *C. volutator* were observed in the preceding winter, making the settlement of new recruits depending on an influx from other places. Indeed, the overwintering generation breeds from May to June, which gives rise to a subsequent summer-breeding generation which reproduces between the beginning of July and September (e.g. MÖLLER & ROSENBERG 1982; PEER et al. 1986; pers. observ.). At Valkenisse also a remarkable temporal segregation in the occurrence of amphipods was observed, with in winter and early spring *Bathyporeia* spp. being present, in early summer *C. arenarium* and in late summer – autumn *C. volutator*. This segregation in time could be attributed to the seasonal variation in mud content, being low in winter and increasing towards summer and autumn. Normally, these amphipod species are expected to be spatially segregated, as *Bathyporeia*, like most Haustoriidae, is a typical, well adapted inhabitant of unstable, sandy sediments (BOUSFIELD 1970; KHAYRALLAH & JONES 1980), whereas a spatial segregation was observed for *C. arenarium* and *C. volutator*, preferring sandy (% silt < 10%) and muddy (% silt > 10%) respectively (FLACH 1993, 1996). At Valkenisse this temporal succession in amphipod species might be related to the clear seasonal variation in mud content.

Spatio-temporal variability in environment and macrobenthic community structure

Greatest temporal variability in water quality parameters was observed at the low salinity locations GBL and GBR and variability was lowest at the polyhaline location Paulina. Not only variability in salinity was greatest, also oxygen concentration showed highest variability at GBL and GBR. Variability in sediment characteristics was similar among locations, except for Valkenisse where a distinct seasonal pattern was observed in mud content. This clear seasonal variation in mud content was also observed on another sand flat in the Westerschelde (Molenplaat), and WIDDOWS et al. (subm.) attributed this variation to a complex interaction between biological (bio-stabilization through microphytobenthos, most pronounced in spring and summer) and physical processes (storm conditions and wave action, most pronounced in winter). The other locations were located on mudflats, situated along the banks of the estuary, and are thus more sheltered. Although variability in mud content was low at these locations, sedimentation or erosion could have appeared, as was also demonstrated on another intertidal mudflat (DE BROUWER et al. 2000). In summary, therefore, highest environmental variability was observed at GBL and GBR (highest physicochemical variability) and at Valkenisse (highest physical variability), and was lowest at the polyhaline location Paulina.

Greatest temporal variability in the general macrobenthic characteristics (number of species, total abundance and total biomass) was observed at the locations Valkenisse, GBR and GBL and variability was lowest at Paulina and Baalhoek. Therefore, it is concluded that, due to a more varying environment, temporal (short-term seasonal) variations in macrobenthic communities are much more distinct at these locations.

Both regional as local processes will determine the observed variability in the different macrobenthic communities. Reproductive activity is obviously related to water temperature, as temperature induce gamete production and release of larvae into the water column. As a result, recruitment was observed at all intertidal locations and changes in the communities were higher during periods of peak recruitment (spring–early summer) than during non-recruitment periods at all locations. The magnitude of recruitment differed among locations and is dependent on a complex interaction of different physical and biological processes. Initial settlement (and secondary dispersal) will be mainly determined by hydrodynamics, active substrate selection and inter- and intraspecific competition (e.g. BUTMAN 1987; SNELGROVE & BUTMAN 1994). For instance, at Valkenisse, situated in a sedimentary environment as indicated by the slow but continuous raise of the site, hydrodynamic conditions are probably favourable for settlement of larvae and food, as here very high and distinct peaks in recruitment were observed (e.g. *P. elegans*, *H. filiformis*).



The remaining spatio-temporal variability in macrobenthic community structure is probably more related with stress and disturbance events. Stress and disturbances emerge as important structuring forces in soft-sediment systems, stress being associated with events over broader scales in space and time, and disturbance associated with discrete events (such as storms, severe winters) (e.g. ZAJAC & WHITLATCH 1985; HALL et al. 1994). The salinity gradient acts as a physiological stress for stenohaline marine and freshwater species and places environmental stress on euryhaline species. In our study, the wider fluctuations in salinity in the mesohaline zone of the estuary, especially at GBL and GBR, resulted in a reduction of the number of species, a low biomass and a high variability. At GBL and GBR salinity conditions may change from mesohaline to almost freshwater in a one month period, as was observed in January 1994. In spring and summer salinity conditions were more favourable, allowing species like *M. balthica*, to settle down in low densities. However, *M. balthica* hardly showed any growth during summer (pers. observ.) and completely disappeared during winter. Besides *M. balthica*, also other species settled down in summer in the mesohaline zone and completely disappeared in winter (e.g. *P. elegans* at GBL, *H. filiformis* at GBR and *C. edule* at Valkenisse). This clearly coincided with the dramatic decline in salinity at that time. Therefore, spatial distribution of several macrobenthic species shifted geographically on seasonal time scales.

Additional stress in GBL and GBR might arise from the low dissolved oxygen concentrations during several months a year, especially in summer; and the high SPM concentrations. At GBR the very reduced sediment could be an additional stress factor. At Valkenisse additional stress of increased wave action during winter; as could be deduced from the decreasing mud content in winter; causing instability of the bed, might also result in a more pronounced change in macrobenthic community here.

In summary, community changes appeared much more pronounced in winter period at GBL and GBR, and to a lesser extent also at Valkenisse. At Paulina in winter only minor changes in community structure were observed.

We suggest that at the meso-/oligohaline transition zone, where salinity conditions show large, seasonal fluctuations, benthic communities change frequently, resulting in communities that seldom progress beyond early benthic-community succession. Dominance by small, newly settled benthos that feed at or near the sediment-water interface is characteristic of such disturbance (GASTON et al. 1998). The macrobenthic species observed in this zone of the estuary are typically very mobile (e.g. the amphipod *C. volutator*), opportunistic (tubificid *Oligochaeta*, capitellid *H. filiformis*) or omnivorous (the nereid *N. diversicolor*), strategies which resemble the early response to 'succession after disturbance series' (RHOADS et al. 1978) or 'distance to pollution source series' (PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978). In this

zone of the estuary probably physical and physiological stress coincides with 'high loading' stress. On top of that, sediment contamination with metals and organic micropollutants is rather high in sediments in the meso/oligohaline zone of the Schelde estuary (e.g. SRINETR 1997; ZWOLSMAN 1999), provoking additional stress (e.g. RAKOCINSKI et al. 1997).

On the other hand, in the polyhaline zone environmental variability was less, resulting in a community that did not show drastic changes, although also here seasonal patterns were obvious. The dominant species of this community were in general more long-living species, such as *C. edule* and *S. plana*.

The above described relation between community patterns and stress/disturbance was also obvious from the ABC-curves curves, indicating that the structural complexity level decreased from the polyhaline zone towards the mesohaline zone.

Spatio-temporal variation in trophic and functional structure

The regional and local patterns observed in macrobenthic community structure are also reflected in clear differences in trophic structure among the five locations. Generally, trophic diversity increased with salinity (GASTON et al. 1998) and showed highest temporal variability at the locations GBL, GBR and Valkenisse. Especially at GBL trophic structure changed from a co-dominance of omnivores and surface deposit feeders in summer to an almost exclusive dominance of omnivores in winter.

The general observation of suspension feeders being associated with sandy substrates and (surface) deposit feeders with muddy sediments, as well as both groups being spatially separated (trophic-group amensalism of RHOADS & YOUNG 1970) is not supported by this study (see also HERMAN et al. 1999).

Suspension feeders (*C. edule*) constituted an important part of the macrobenthic biomass at the polyhaline location Paulina, and their biomass diminished with increasing salinity, being almost absent at the low salinity locations GBL and GBR. This is in accordance with several other studies in the Schelde estuary (e.g. YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a, in prep.), and is most likely linked with primary productivity of the phytoplankton in the system (HEIP et al. 1995; HERMAN et al. 1999), as suspension feeders were shown to depend mainly on pelagic food sources (HERMAN et al. in press).

In comparison with suspension feeders, deposit feeders depend more on local food conditions, such as the availability and quality of the organic matter, and the biomass and productivity of microphytobenthos (HERMAN et al. 1999, in press). Deposit feeders appeared in high densities at all five locations. The occurrence of sub-surface



deposit feeders seemed to be related with mud content (and TOC). Within the same salinity zone, it was indeed observed that abundance and biomass of sub-surface deposit feeders was much higher at the 'muddy' locations as compared to the 'sandy locations'.

Mean total biomass of deposit feeders decreased considerably with decreasing salinity, especially for surface deposit feeders. A similar phenomenon was also observed by YSEBAERT et al. (in prep.) on a much larger data set on the Schelde estuary. Several factors could explain this decrease, such as facultative suspension feeding by several polychaete and bivalve species (e.g. *M. balthica* (OLAFFSON 1986; KAMERMANS 1994) and 'interface' feeding spionid polychaetes (DAUER et al. 1981; TAGHON & GREENE 1992)). Therefore, surface deposit feeders in the polyhaline zone might profit from the higher phytoplankton primary production (high quality food source) in this part of the estuary, resulting in a higher biomass. This might explain the higher biomass values observed for SDF at Paulina. Indirectly, this was observed by a clear difference in growth rate for *S. plana* and *M. balthica* at Paulina and Baalhoek (pers. observ.). For instance, newly settled *S. plana* grew between March/April and August/September from 2 to 20 mm at Paulina and from 2 to 12 mm at Baalhoek, both sites having similar mud and TOC contents, and salinity conditions within the tolerance of the species. Unfortunately, no data on microphytobenthos were available for the sampling locations.

For the low salinity locations GBL and GBR, also salinity stress could explain the lower SDF biomass here. Especially the larger bivalve species experience here lethal (e.g. for *S. plana*) or suboptimal salinity conditions (e.g. for *M. balthica*), and SDF is dominated here by the small amphipod *C. volutator*. Additionally, the nearly absence of SDF at GBR might be explained by the fact that SDF, which mainly live in tubes or burrows (e.g. *C. volutator*, *P. elegans*), were not capable of maintaining there burrows in the very soft sediment present, characterized by a very fluffy top layer.

Omnivores, mainly the nereid *N. diversicolor*, did not show a clear trend in absolute biomass values along the salinity gradient, but their high relative dominance in the lower salinity zones was apparent, and also observed by (YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a, in prep.).

Spatiotemporal patterns and estuarine management

Many monitoring programmes are being conducted to study the effect of man-induced changes of the environment (e.g. pollution, coastal engineering works, dredging/dumping activities, etc.) on the occurrence of macrobenthic populations. These programmes are mostly designed as large scale (spatial variation) and/or long-term

(temporal variation) surveys. However, often because of financial and/or logistic limitations, both the small-scale spatial variation as the short-term temporal variation is often neglected in these studies. E.g., in the Schelde estuary a large scale/long-term macrobenthic monitoring programme is running based on a spring and autumn sampling. However, seasonal patterns are a major source of variation for many estuarine systems and organisms, as was demonstrated for the macrobenthos in this study. Therefore, long-term study designs must consider carefully the frequency of sample collection or most of the observed variation will be due to inadequate sampling (HOLLAND et al. 1987). Also the incorporation of these short-term seasonal variations (especially the large seasonal variations in biomass) into ecosystem models should be considered, in order to improve the predictability of these models. Thus, in assessing the overall role of macrobenthos to the entire ecosystem, the variability associated with estuarine environmental changes, as was observed in this study, must be integrated. Sampling in only one of the 'biotic zones' will not provide adequate characterization of the benthos' importance throughout the estuary. Evenmore it is crucial to collect the necessary environmental parameters such as sediment characteristics, food related parameters (e.g. microphytobenthos), waterquality etc. to be able to interpret changes in benthic communities. Especially, more knowledge is needed on the contribution and interaction of multiple stressors in estuarine ecosystems in order to determine natural versus human induced disturbances.

Acknowledgements

This research was financed by the Impulse Programme in Marine Sciences 1992-1996 (contract N° Ms/88/100) of the Belgian Federal Office for Scientific, Technical and Cultural Affairs. We thank the Dutch Ministry of Transport, Public Works and Water Management, National Institute for Coastal and Marine Management/RIKZ and Directorate Zeeland, for their logistic support during the sampling of the location Valkenisse and for the use of the water quality parameters from their monitoring campaigns. TOC measurements were done by the Provinciaal Instituut voor Hygiëne, Antwerpen.



Chapter 5

A comparison of the macrobenthic distribution and community structure between two estuaries in SW Netherlands

PM. Meire, J. Seys, T. Ysebaert and J. Coosen

Abstract

The Wester- and Oosterschelde are the only two remaining estuaries in the Delta area of SW Netherlands. In the Westerschelde the normal estuarine gradient from a brackish to a marine tidal system is found, whereas in the Oosterschelde major coastal engineering works have profoundly changed the character of the area. There is now no salinity gradient, and turbidity and pollution are very low.

The intertidal macrofauna of both estuaries was studied intensively in 1987 and found to be similar in species composition. However, more species occurred in the Oosterschelde mainly because of the presence of extensive mussel beds. The average density was greater in the

Westerschelde, but biomass was much greater in the Oosterschelde.

Multivariate statistical analyses (TWINSPAN and DECORANA) were used to determine similarities between stations and almost no overlap occurred between stations from the Ooster- and Westerschelde. Water parameters (salinity, turbidity etc.) correlated with the first ordination axis and sediment parameters (median grain size, mud content) were correlated with the second axis. A gradient from a suspension feeder community in the Oosterschelde and polyhaline zone of the Westerschelde to a deposit feeder dominated community in the brackish zone of the Westerschelde was found. These correspond to coastal and detritus food chains. It is concluded that the absence of filter feeders in the brackish part of the Westerschelde is caused by the highly dynamic character of the estuary rather than by pollution or lack of food. Increased dredging activities could further impoverish the fauna.

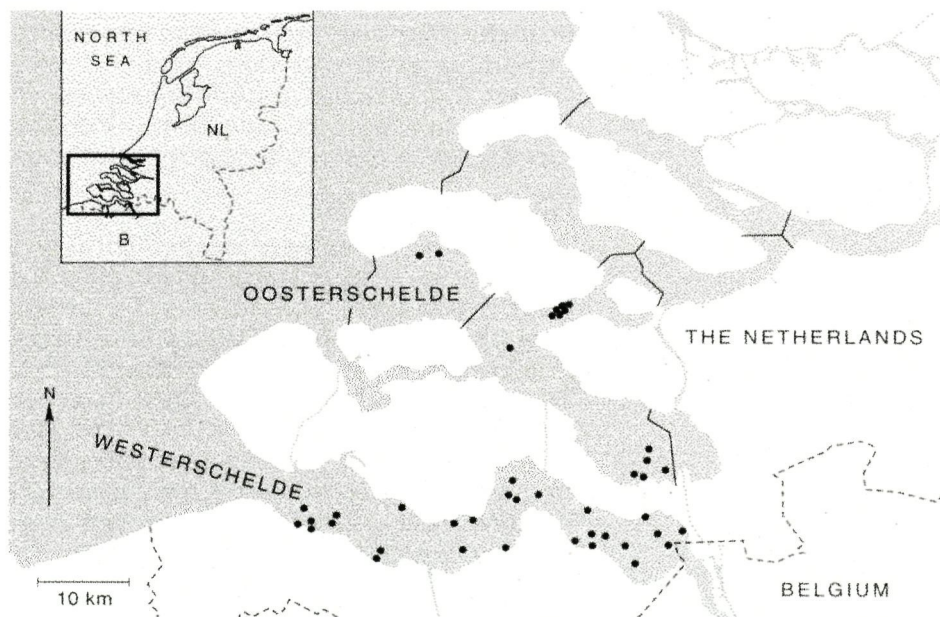


Figure 5.1. Location of the sampling stations in the Oosterschelde and the Westerschelde.



Introduction

The benthic macrofauna of the whole Delta area in the southwestern part of the Netherlands was studied intensively by WOLFF (1973). However, since then the area has been changed profoundly by major coastal engineering projects. Several estuaries have been dammed and in the Oosterschelde a storm-surge barrier has been built. This has strongly influenced the hydrodynamic properties of the estuary and stimulated much research (see also SMAAL et al. 1991). The Westerschelde has remained the only natural estuary in the whole Delta area, showing a clear gradient in salinity, turbidity, nutrient load etc., although it is severely polluted. Surprisingly little is known about the ecological value of the Westerschelde.

In the present study, the distribution of the macrobenthos in both estuaries is described and compared in relation to the prevailing environmental factors.

(SMAAL et al. 1991). This has resulted in a stable high chlorinity in the whole area and small nutrient and pollutant loads with very low concentrations of suspended matter (Table 5.1). The exchange with water from the North Sea was reduced after the construction of the storm-surge barrier in 1987. The mean tidal amplitude is lower than in the Westerschelde (3.5 m near Yerseke). The creek flow-rates are low and vary between $0.5 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ and $1.2 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ (see also SMAAL et al. 1991).

The sampling programme

The survey was carried out in September–October 1987. In the Westerschelde (Figure 5.1), 28 sampling stations were placed in different habitat types along the whole gradient. Within each station 2–4 sites were chosen, and at each site 10 cores, 4.5 cm diameter (15.9 cm^2), and 3 cores, 15 cm diameter (176.6 cm^2), were taken to a

Table 5.1. Abiotic characteristics of the Oosterschelde (OS) and the Westerschelde (between the Dutch-Belgian border and the mouth) (WS) estuary (data from Rijkswaterstaat).

	Tidal range, m	Chloride content, g Cl l ⁻¹	Suspended matter, mg l ⁻¹	Secchi disc transparency m	Mean N content, mg l ⁻¹	Mean P content, mg P l ⁻¹	Mean mud content, bottom, %	Mean Cd content, dissolved, µg l ⁻¹
OS	2.8–3.8	14–18	4–9	2.1–2.3	0.9–1.2	0.09–0.14	2.6	0.03–0.05
WS	3.8–4.5	4–17	27–66	0.2–0.8	1.6–8.1	0.18–0.86	3.3	0.13–0.22

Materials and methods

Study area

The Westerschelde is the estuarine part of the River Schelde, bordered at the east by the Dutch–Belgian border and at the west by the line Breskens–Vlissingen (Figure 5.1). The freshwater input, mainly through the River Schelde, is small (on average $105 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$, CLAESSENS 1988) compared to a tidal volume of 10^9 m^3 . The mean tidal range is 3.85 m at the mouth and 4.58 m at the Belgian border. Typical estuarine gradients in the abiotic factors are present from the mouth to the river, such as a decrease of chlorinity and oxygen content and an increase in turbidity, particulate organic matter and nutrients (Table 5.1). There is a high anthropogenic stress due to dredging activities and from large amounts of inorganic and organic contaminants from various effluents, especially in the brackish part and the River Schelde (MOERLAND 1987; DUURSMA et al. 1988).

Since the closure of the Volkerak Dam in 1969, the freshwater input in the Oosterschelde (through Volkerak sluices, a few small rivers, and some polderwater discharge) has been strongly reduced and regulated at about $50 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$

depth of 30 cm. The larger cores were washed in the field through a 3-mm-mesh sieve, whereas the smaller ones were fixed in the field with 35 % neutral formalin, brought to the laboratory and washed through a 1-mm-mesh sieve. The data from the Oosterschelde are from two different sampling programmes. The first programme was carried out at the Slikken van Vianen, an intertidal area in the central part of the estuary, where the interaction between waders and macrozoobenthos has been investigated since 1979 (MEIRE 1987; MEIRE & KUIJKEN 1984; MEIRE & COOSEN 1985; MEIRE & ERVYNCK 1986). In each of the six permanent study plots situated in the different habitat types (defined according to inundation time and sediment type), 30 cores, 4.5 cm in diameter (15.9 cm^2), and 5 cores, 15 cm in diameter (176.6 cm^2), were taken to a depth of 30 cm. The treatment of these samples was as described for the Westerschelde.

The second programme was started in 1983 to investigate the effects of the construction of the storm-surge barrier on the macrozoobenthos. Eight permanent stations were chosen in the intertidal area, taking account of the west-east gradient, and sampled twice a year (March–April, August–September). At each station, three

Table 5.2. Mean density, biomass and species composition of the locations sampled in the Oosterschelde and the Westerschelde.

	Oosterschelde	Westerschelde
Mean total density, N m ⁻²	16501	24042
Mean total biomass, g AFDW m ⁻²	111.5	14.6
Species richness	43	36
Species composition:	Species found in both estuaries	
	<i>Cerastoderma edule</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Hydrobia ulvae</i> (Pennant)	
	<i>Macoma balthica</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Mya arenaria</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Mysella bidentata</i> (Montagu)	
	<i>Retusa obtusa</i> (Montagu)	
	<i>Anthozoa</i> sp.	
	<i>Bathyporeia</i> sp.	
	<i>Carcinus maenas</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Corophium</i> sp.	
	<i>Crangon crangon</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Gammarus</i> sp.	
	<i>Anaitides</i> sp.	
	<i>Antinoella sarsi</i> (Kinberg)	
	<i>Arenicola marina</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Capitella capitata</i> (Fabricius)	
	<i>Eteone</i> sp.	
	<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i> (Claparède)	
	<i>Magelona papillicornis</i> (Müller)	
	<i>Nemertea</i> indet.	
	<i>Nephtys hombergii</i> (Savigny)	
	<i>Nereis diversicolor</i> (Müller)	
	<i>Nereis succinea</i> (Leuckart)	
	<i>Oligochaeta</i> indet.	
	<i>Polydora</i> sp.	
	<i>Pygospio elegans</i> (Claparède)	
	<i>Scoloplos armiger</i> (Müller)	
	<i>Spio filicornis</i> (Müller)	
	<i>Tharyx marioni</i> (Saint Joseph)	
	Species in Westerschelde only	
	<i>Manayunkia aestuarina</i> (Bourne)	
	<i>Ophelia rathkei</i> (McIntosh)	
	<i>Scolecopsis squamata</i> (Müller)	
	<i>Spiophanes bombyx</i> (Claparède)	
	Species in Oosterschelde only	
	<i>Crassostrea angulata</i> (Lamarck)	
	<i>Crepidula fornicata</i> (Philibert)	
	<i>Lepidochitona cinerea</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Littorina littorea</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Mytilus edulis</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Scrobicularia plana</i> (da Costa)	
	<i>Jaera albifrons</i> (Leach)	
	<i>Melita palmata</i> (Montagu)	
	<i>Pagurus bernhardi</i> (Linnaeus)	
	<i>Urothoe poseidonis</i> (Reibisch)	
	<i>Lanice conchilega</i> (Pallas)	
	<i>Microphthalmus aberrans</i> (Webster & Benedict)	
	<i>Pholoe minuta</i> (Fabricius)	
	<i>Scolecopsis foliosa</i> (Audouin & Milne Edwards)	



sets of 5 core samples, 10.3 cm in diameter (83 cm²), were taken to a depth of 30 cm. They were sieved in the field on a 1-mm-mesh sieve and fixed with 7 % neutral formalin. The water parameters (chlorinity, suspended matter, particulate organic carbon, oxygen saturation, total-N, total-P, dissolved Si, chlorophyll-*a*, dissolved Cd) are mean values of monthly measurements for 1987 (Rijkswaterstaat, unpublished data). Data were used from areas close to the sampling station. Samples for sediment analysis were collected simultaneously with the macrofaunal samples.

Laboratory methods

The small samples were washed through a 1-mm-mesh sieve and all organisms were extracted, after staining with Rose Bengal, identified to species level – except Oligochaeta and Nemertini – and counted. Bivalves were measured to the nearest mm. Density and biomass of all but two species are based on the small samples. From the large samples only *Mya arenaria* L. and *Arenicola marina* L. were extracted. The density and biomass of these two species is entirely based on the large samples. Ash-free dry weight (AFDW) biomass was obtained by weighing (± 0.0001 g) all individuals per species per sample after drying for 12 hours (110°C), and weighing again after incinerating for 2 hours (550°C). All bivalves were weighed without the shell and length-weight regressions were calculated. The resulting station/species abundance matrix data were analyzed using the multivariate techniques TWINSpan and DECORANA (GAUCH 1982). For the analysis the following congeneric species pairs were combined because of identification problems: *Corophium arenarium* Crawford/C. *volutator* Pallas, *Anatides mucosa* Orsted/A. *maculata* L., *Eteone longa* Fabricius/E. *flava* Fabricius, *Bathyporeia pilosa* Lindstrom/B. *sarsi* Watkin and *Gammarus* sp. The cut-levels used in the TWINSpan analysis were: 0, 1, 4, 16, 64, 256, 1024, 4096, 9999. No data transformation nor down-weighting of rare species was used.

Results

The total number of species was lower in the Westerschelde (36) than in the Oosterschelde (43) (Table 5.2) although the species composition was comparable and there were 29 species in common. The latter are all typical estuarine organisms such as *Cerastoderma edule*, *Hydrobia ulvae*, *Macoma balthica*, *Nereis diversicolor*, *Nephtys hombergii* and *Arenicola marina*. Fourteen species were found only in the Oosterschelde, although some of them (*Mytilus edulis*, *Scrobicularia plana*) are known to be present in limited numbers in the Westerschelde (pers. obs.). Seven species were restricted to the Westerschelde samples.

The mean total density was higher in the

Westerschelde than the Oosterschelde, respectively 24042 (SE: 4244) and 16501 (SE: 3343) individuals m⁻². However, mean total biomass was much higher in the Oosterschelde (11–15.5 g AFDW m⁻²; SE: 36.3 g) than in the Westerschelde (14.6 g AFDW m⁻²; SE: 3.3 g).

Based on the densities of each species per station, seven station groupings can be separated using TWINSpan (Figure 5.2). Group 1 stations are in the Oosterschelde and are characterized by the presence of *M. edulis* and a series of species such as *Crepidula fornicata* and *Littorina littorea* which are associated with the mussel beds. Group 7 consists of two stations with an impoverished benthic fauna whereas the remaining five groups have a rather similar species composition although the relative abundance of species differs between groups. After the second division in the analysis, all samples from the Oosterschelde are separated from those in the Westerschelde. When performing TWINSpan on the biomass data all samples from both estuaries were separated after the first division (unpublished data). However, groups identified were very similar; therefore further analysis here is restricted to the analysis based on the density of the macrofauna.

In order to characterize the seven TWINSpan-groups (Figure 5.2), average values of some important abiotic factors are given in Figure 5.3 A–E. With the exception of group 7 – which consists of two impoverished stations – a clear gradient in salinity between the groups is observed. Groups 1–3 (all stations from the Oosterschelde) and group 4 (stations from the marine part of the Westerschelde) have high mean chlorinities (14.9–16.6 g Cl l⁻¹). Group 6 consists of stations in the brackish part of the Westerschelde, group 5 (11.2 g Cl l⁻¹) and group 7 (10.3 g Cl l⁻¹) are intermediate. Oxygen saturation follows a similar gradient, with more than 100% saturation on a yearly base in the Oosterschelde, only 84 % in the marine part of the Westerschelde decreasing to 63% in the brackish part. Suspended matter, nutrients etc, follow an opposite gradient with low values in the Oosterschelde and increasing values towards the brackish part of the Westerschelde. Sediment parameters also differ between groups: groups 1–3 consist of fine sand (median grain size: 134–154 μ m) with a low mud content (1.0–4.6 %), whereas the Westerschelde groups (4–7) consist of fine to medium sand (125–233 μ m) and higher mud contents (0.8–12.0 %).

A Detrended Correspondence Analysis (DECORANA) based on the species abundance matrix reveals the same gradients (Figure 5.4). Stations from the Oosterschelde and Westerschelde are clearly separated along the first axis (eigenvalue: 0.696) which is related to the water chlorinity, suspended matter, nutrient content and pollution stress (Cd content) (Table 5.3). The second axis (eigenvalue: 0.290) is correlated with sediment characteristics (median grain size, mud content) (Table 5.3). Axes 3 and 4 (eigenvalues: 0.156 and 0.063, respectively) are unimportant and





Figure 5.2. TWINSpan based on the densities of macrobenthic organisms in Oosterschelde and Westerschelde in 1987. Seven groups were separated and within each group the mean densities of the species are represented with dots.

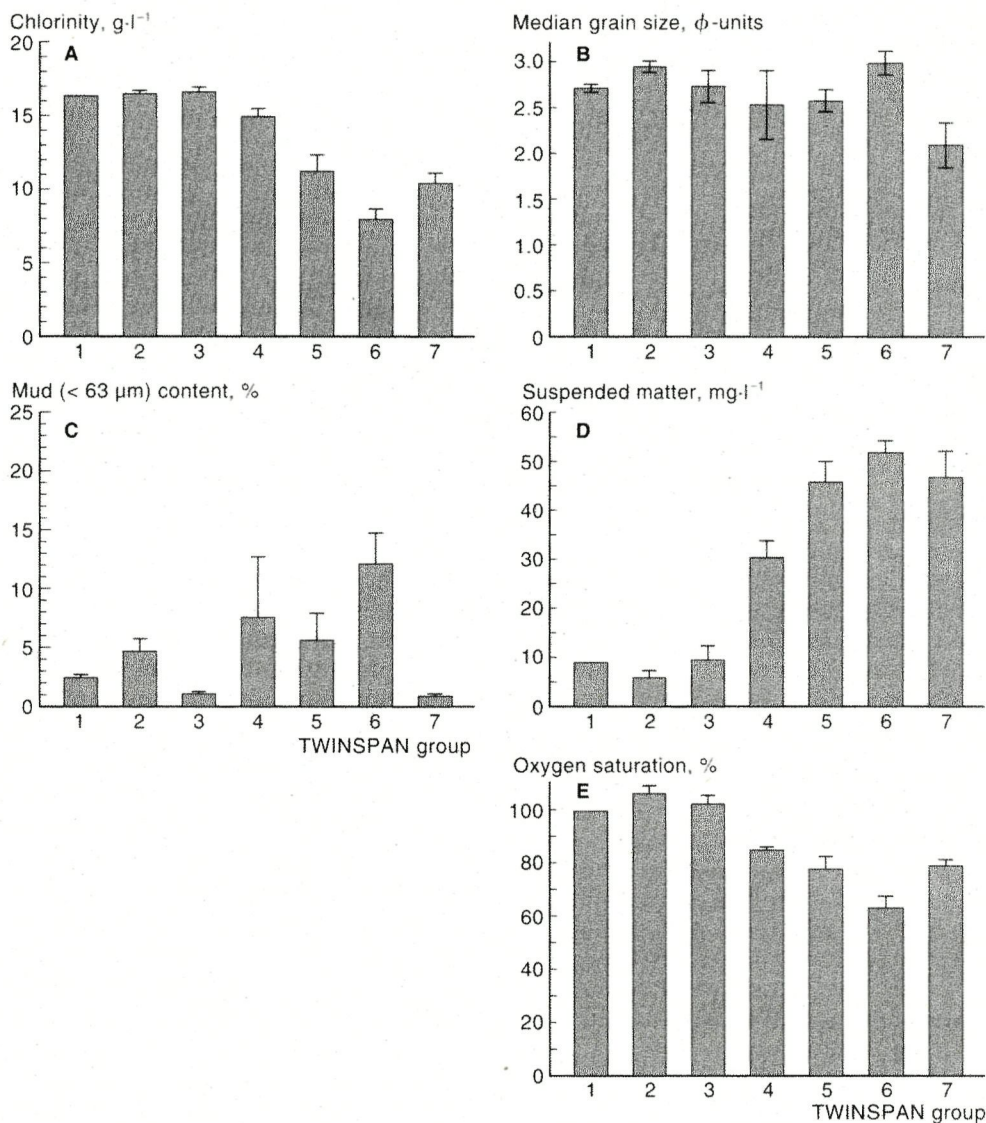


Figure 5.3. Abiotic factors (mean values ± SE) per TWINSpan-group: chlorinity, median grain size, mud content, suspended matter, oxygen saturation.

not considered further. The biomass data gave similar results.

The abiotic gradients are reflected in the faunal parameters. Total biomass and species richness were highest in the mussel beds (group 1) and in the Oosterschelde as a whole in comparison to the Westerschelde (Table 5.4). Within the Westerschelde, the lowest values were found in the brackish part (group 6). Species were not distributed uniformly over the different groups. Some species (*Heteromastus filiformis*, *Polydora ligni-ciliata* and *Pygospio elegans*) were much more abundant in the Westerschelde. Other species (*Hydrobia ulvae* and *Scoloplos armiger*) had higher densities in the Oosterschelde. The density of *Macoma balthica* and *Cerastoderma edule* was highest in group 4 stations but their biomass was higher in the

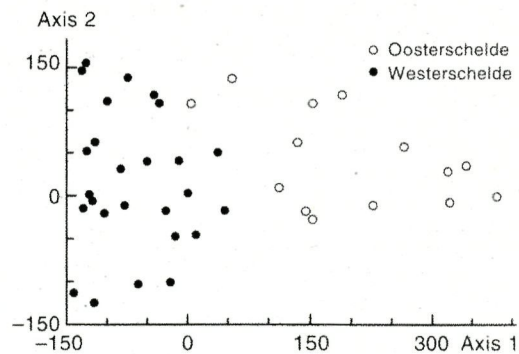


Figure 5.4. Detrended Correspondence Analysis based on the densities of macrozoobenthos in Oosterschelde and Westerschelde: position of the sampling stations along the first two DCA-axes.



Table 5.3. Correlation coefficients (Spearman's rank) between the scores on the two first DCA-axes and some environmental factors.

Factor	Axis 1		Axis 2	
	rs	Significance	rs	Significance
Chlorinity	0.70839	***	0.42963	**
O2-saturation	0.75881	***	0.39758	*
Particulate organic carbon	-0.76803	***	-0.26775	n.s.
Suspended matter	-0.81476	***	-0.32976	*
Total-P content	-0.63559	***	-0.45601	**
Total-N content	-0.69314	***	-0.47044	**
Dissolved Si	-0.70235	***	-0.45474	**
Dissolved Cd	-0.81719	***	-0.07609	n.s.
Median grain size	0.19376	n.s.	-0.51253	***
Mud content	-0.22151	n.s.	-0.61466	***
Inundation time	-0.11953	n.s.	-0.24170	n.s.

* p ≤ 0.05; ** p ≤ 0.005; *** p ≤ 0.001; n = 40.

Oosterschelde (Table 5.4). This can be attributed to the differences in length – frequency distributions, since larger individuals were almost absent in the Westerschelde (Figures 5.5 and 5.6), particularly in the brackish part. This feature also applies to *Mya arenaria* whose largest individuals measured only between 6 and 7 mm, although densities varied between a few and 4350 m⁻².

The difference between the TWINSPAN-groups is not only reflected in the species composition but also in the distribution of trophic and major taxonomic groups (Figures 5.7 and 5.8). A gradual decrease in the proportion of the biomass of filter feeders and a gradual increase in that of deposit feeders occurred from the Oosterschelde to the brackish part of the Westerschelde (Figure 5.7). A similar gradient can be found for taxonomic groups where it seem that polychaetes replaced molluscs in the brackish, more turbid zone of the Westerschelde (Figure 5.8).

Discussion

The species composition was similar between both estuaries and is typical for Northwest European estuaries (WOLFF 1973). Although the area sampled in the Oosterschelde is about 20% less than in the Westerschelde, seven more species were found, indicating the higher diversity. However, most species found in only one estuary are known also to occur in the other (unpublished data), although in low numbers or in small patches. Some differences exist however: *Manayunkia aestuarina* is a typical brackish water species and is only found in the Westerschelde at chlorinities of 5-8 g Cl⁻ l⁻¹. *Crassostrea angulata* on the other hand occurs only in the Oosterschelde. This species has been cultivated for some years by oyster farms and is now spreading gradually throughout the estuary.

Table 5.4. Mean biomass (g AFDW m⁻²), number of species and density (N m⁻²) and biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) of some species in the different TWINSPAN-groups.

TWINSPAN-group	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Mean biomass	300.7	64.6	48.8	36.5	6.9	16.2	0.5
Number of species	25.3	17.4	17.3	17.8	12.2	11.3	6.5
Density							
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>	2704	405	67	1004	2745	5342	32
<i>Polydora ligni/ciliata</i>	294	4	2	334	118	3615	0
<i>Pygospio elegans</i>	112	129	996	7228	6026	9872	24
<i>Hydrobia ulvae</i>	42	10675	1849	8	65	17	0
<i>Scoloplos armiger</i>	196	439	1166	51	0	0	0
<i>Macoma balthica</i>	363	617	446	2846	851	1625	0
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i>	3207	2417	520	4249	333	461	0
Biomass							
<i>Macoma balthica</i>	3.4	3.3	1.7	4.4	1.8	1.4	0
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i>	179.6	49.4	34.3	17.1	1.0	1.0	0

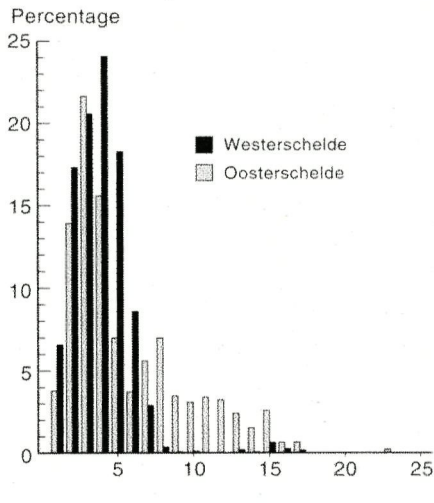


Figure 5.5. Length-frequency distributions of *Macoma balthica*, as found in the Oosterschelde ($n = 514$) and Westerschelde ($n = 2249$) in 1987.

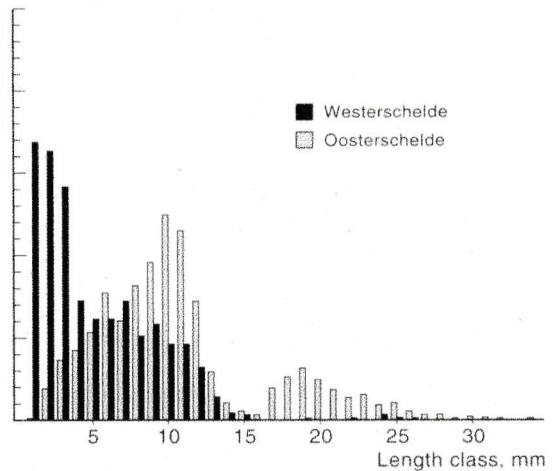


Figure 5.6. Length-frequency distributions of *Cerastoderma edule*, as found in the Oosterschelde ($n = 1745$) and Westerschelde ($n = 1481$) in 1987.

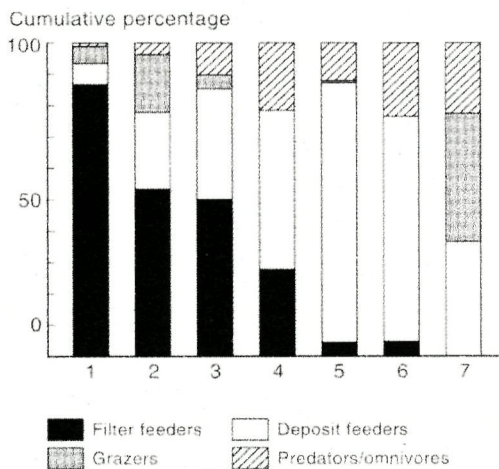


Figure 5.7. Relative biomass proportions of the different trophic groups over the seven TWINSpan-groups.

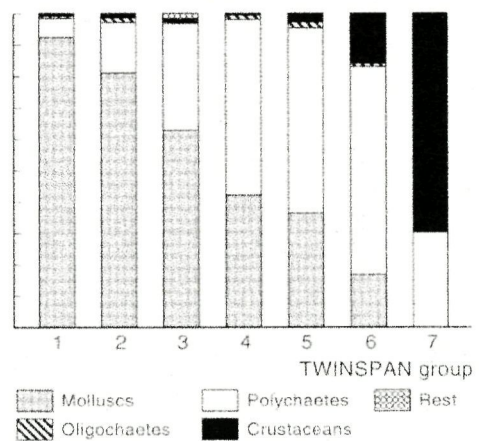


Figure 5.8. Relative biomass proportions of the different systematic groups over the seven TWINSpan-groups.

The gradient in the fauna of the Westerschelde is similar to that found by VERMEULEN & GOVAERE (1983) and can also be compared with those of the Ems and the Weser (MICHAELIS 1983). In the upper and middle parts of these estuaries, the same species are dominant (zones 1, 2 and 3 in Table 5.5) although some differences exist. Species such as *Macoma balthica*, *Heteromastus filiformis* and *Pygospio elegans* are much more abundant in the Westerschelde-mouth compared to the other estuaries. For *H. filiformis*, mean biomass values of $7.1 \text{ g AFDW m}^{-2}$ were found compared to less than 1 g AFDW m^{-2} in Ems- and Weser-mouth. In contrast, a typical brackish water species such as *Streblospio shrubsolei* is common in the brackish part of the Weser, much rarer in the Ems and lacking in the

Westerschelde. The polychaete *Manayunkia aestuarina* follows the opposite trend. Compared to the Loire (ROBINEAU 1987), more species have been found in the Westerschelde.

The biomasses found on the mussel beds in the Oosterschelde were lower than those recorded by ASMUS (1987) for the Danish Wadden Sea. However, the overall biomass of macrobenthos in the Oosterschelde is high in comparison to the Westerschelde and other estuarine areas such as the Dutch Wadden Sea, which has an average value of 27 g AFDW m^{-2} (BEUKEMA 1983). However, the average value of over $110 \text{ g AFDW m}^{-2}$ for the Oosterschelde is too large because mussel beds were overrepresented in the samples compared with their actu-



Table 5.5. Comparison of the macrobenthic fauna in the Ems, Weser and Westerschelde. The data for Ems and Weser are extracted from MICHAELIS (1983).

	Ems	Weser	Westerschelde
Zone 1:			
Chlorinity, g Cl.l ⁻¹	2.5-6.5	3.5-5	4.5-6.5
Total number of species	8	17	13
Mean biomass (g AFDW. m ⁻²)	2.5		9
Numerical dominant species in common: <i>Oligochaeta</i> / <i>Nereis diversicolor</i> / <i>Corophium volutator</i>			
Zone 2:			
Chlorinity, g Cl.l ⁻¹	6.5-9	5-8	6.5-9
Total number of species	35	20	17
Mean biomass (g AFDW. m ⁻²)	8.8		15
Numerical dominant species in common: <i>Nereis diversicolor</i> / <i>Corophium volutator</i> / <i>Oligochaeta</i> / <i>Macoma balthica</i> / <i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>			
Zone 3:			
Chlorinity, g Cl.l ⁻¹	9-13	8-13	9-13
Total number of species	34	28	28
Mean biomass (g AFDW. m ⁻²)	13.6		8.4
Numerical dominant species in common: <i>Macoma balthica</i> / <i>Heteromastus filiformis</i> / <i>Arenicola marina</i>			
Zone 4:			
Chlorinity, g Cl.l ⁻¹	13-17	13-17	13-17
Total number of species	8-140*	120*	34
Mean biomass (g AFDW. m ⁻²)	22		33
Numerical dominant species in common: <i>Heteromastus filiformis</i> / <i>Pygospio elegans</i>			

* Based on more surveys than has been used for the Westerschelde.

al distribution. VAN DER MEER et al. (1989) estimated the average biomass for the whole Oosterschelde at nearly 50 g AFDW m⁻². In the Westerschelde a gradient from lower biomass values in the brackish (9 g AFDW m⁻²) to higher biomass in the marine zone (33 g AFDW m⁻²) was found, a trend which is found in other estuaries such as the Ems (Table 5.5). The biomass in the Westerschelde on average was higher than in the Ems.

In the present study, the water parameters (salinity, turbidity etc.) and sediment characteristics (median grain size and mud content) were found to be the most important factors influencing the estuaries' macrozoobenthos. This agrees with VERMEULEN & GOVAERE (1983) who analyzed the benthic fauna along four transects in the Westerschelde. The importance of these factors is very well documented (e.g. GRAY 1974, MICHAELIS 1983). Compared to the Oosterschelde, Ems, Weser, Elbe and Elder, the Westerschelde had the largest tidal amplitude and flood volume (Table 5.6), both indicating the highly dynamic character of the system. However, this factor is difficult to measure but is considered here to have a very important influence on the fauna. The greater dynamics of the Westerschelde compared to the Oosterschelde is partly reflected in the greater variability of the sediment types (median grain size varied between 123 and 176 µm

in the Oosterschelde and between 71 and 292 µm in the Westerschelde; mud content varied between 0.4 and 7.7 % in the Oosterschelde and between 0.7 and 36.3 % in the Westerschelde).

The trophic structure of the benthic communities differed strongly between the Ooster- and Westerschelde and also within the Westerschelde a clear gradient was found. This corresponds with different types of food chains within the estuaries as suggested by HUMMEL et al. (1988). The brackish part of the Westerschelde is characterized by a detritus-based food chain, the mouth of the estuary by a coastal phytoplankton-based food chain. The large input of organic matter from the river and the flocculation of organic material in the brackish zone result in high concentrations of organic matter. The corresponding low transparency inhibits primary production although concentrations of nutrients are high. Organic detritus is an important link between primary and secondary production, bacteria being essential for the transfer of energy through this food chain. In the marine tidal zone, the importance of suspended organic matter is less and the primary production is higher. Therefore the energy flow from nutrients through phytoplankton to zooplankton and zoobenthos is more important than the flow from detritus to zooplankton and zoobenthos. The high proportion of filter feeders in the

Table 5.6 Comparison of some general characteristics of the Ems, Weser, Elbe, Eider, Westerschelde and Oosterschelde. Data from KÜHL & MANN (1983), CLAESSENS (1988) and Anon. (1986).

	Mean flood volume, 10 ⁶ m ³	Mean tidal amplitude, cm
Eider	40	273
Elbe	650	297
Ems	780	311
Weser	155	364
Westerschelde	1100	382-490
Oosterschelde	850*	308

* This is the value predicted for the period after the construction of the storm surge barrier. In the pre-barrier period a value of 1220 10⁶ m³ was measured.

Oosterschelde and in the marine part of the Westerschelde and the predominance of deposit feeders in the brackish part are consistent with these food chains. Some problems exist however. First of all, although the proportion of deposit feeders in the brackish part was much higher, their actual biomass was not. Highest values were found on the mussel beds (24 g AFDW m⁻²) where the input of pseudofaeces probably is a very important food source for the deposit feeders, but in groups 2 and 3 their biomass was at least similar to the values found in the Westerschelde (13, 17, 20, 7 and 12 g AFDW m⁻² in TWINSPAN-groups 2 – 6, respectively). This is despite the much lower values of suspended matter or detritus in the Oosterschelde. The absence of filter feeders in the brackish part of the Westerschelde, and hence the predominance of deposit feeders warrants further consideration. A poor food supply for filter feeders should explain their absence. Indeed, primary production is lower in the Westerschelde (100 g C m⁻² y⁻¹ in the brackish part and 200 g C m⁻² y⁻¹ in the marine part) compared to the Oosterschelde (300 g C m⁻² y⁻¹, unpubl. results Rijkswaterstaat). The differences in primary production are however much smaller than the differences in the biomass of filter feeders (255, 31 and 25 g AFDW m⁻² in TWINSPAN-groups 1 – 3 compared with 11, 0.5 and 0.75 g AFDW m⁻² in TWINSPAN-groups 4 – 6, respectively). Therefore it is likely that several other factors, such as turbidity, salinity, exposure time, pollution, oxygen saturation, sediment dynamics etc., contribute to the difference in trophic structure. Analysis of the distribution of individual bivalve species, such as *Mya arenaria*, suggests that the master-factor causing the absence of this and other filter feeders from the Westerschelde, is its highly dynamic nature, corresponding to the 'Umlagerung' (mobility of the sediment) as described by JEPSEN (1965).

The differences in basal food sources (detritus versus phytoplankton) between the brackish and marine part of the Westerschelde and the Oosterschelde have certainly an impact on the composition of the macrobenthic populations. However, it also seems probable that hydrodynamic

factors to a large extent determine the benthos. The dynamic nature of the Westerschelde is presently influenced by dredging. About 15 million cubic metres are removed yearly from the channels, of which a large part is dumped again in the river in the flood channels (BELMANS 1988). The deepening of the channels causes a greater volume of water entering the estuary and hence an increase of current velocities. This has also caused an increase in tidal amplitude during the last decades (DOEKES 1986). These processes may strongly influence macrobenthic populations in the Westerschelde in future years.

Acknowledgements

This study was made possible with the financial help of Rijkswaterstaat, Tidal Waters Division. The project and paper benefited greatly from stimulating discussions with A. Smaal, J. Craeymeersch, P. Meininger and F. Twisk.



Chapter 6

Zonation of intertidal macrobenthos in estuaries of Schelde and Ems

T. Ysebaert, P. Meire, J. Coosen and K. Essink

Abstract

Based on data, collected in 1980-1990, the intertidal benthic macrofauna of the Schelde and Ems estuaries was compared. The spatial occurrence of the benthic macrofauna along the salinity gradient, including the freshwater tidal area was emphasized. Both estuaries appeared to have a very similar species composition, especially at genus level. The higher number of species observed in the Schelde estuary was probably due to a greater habitat diversity. In both estuaries species diversity decreased with distance upstream. The total density did not vary along the estuarine gradient, whereas biomass is highest in the polyhaline zone.

In both estuaries distinct intertidal benthic communities were observed along the salinity gradient: a marine community in the polyhaline zone, a brackish community in the mesohaline zone, and a third community in the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones of the estuary. These three communities were very similar between both estuaries. Their main characteristics were discussed together with the occurrence and distribution of the dominant species.

For the Schelde estuary and to a lesser extent also for the Ems estuary, there was evidence that antropogenic stress had a negative effect on the intertidal macrobenthic communities of the oligohaline/freshwater tidal zone. Only *Oligochaeta* were dominating, whereas the very euryhaline and/or true limnetic species were missing. In the mesohaline zone, the Schelde estuary was dominated by large numbers of short-living, opportunistic species, whereas in the Ems estuary relatively more stable macrobenthic communities were observed. A comparison with some other European estuaries showed in general similar trends as those observed for the Schelde and Ems estuaries.

Introduction

Estuaries are transitional environments between rivers and the sea, and are characterized by largely varying and

often unpredictable hydrological, morphological and chemical conditions (DAY et al. 1989; MCLUSKY 1989, 1993; COSTANZA et al. 1993). In most of the world's estuaries, this natural stress is intensified by human activities. Land reclamation, drainage of waste from domestic, industrial and agricultural activities, shipping and dredging are mainly responsible for the direct and indirect loss of the estuarine environment (DAVIDSON et al. 1991; GRAY 1997). This may have important negative effects on the biota and thus on the ecological structure of the system. Estuarine ecosystems are not only ecosystems with unique biodiversity characteristics, but they are also highly productive systems. They perform several vital functions, e.g. as nursery areas for fish and shrimp, feeding areas for migrating and wintering waterbirds, migration routes for anadromous and catadromous fish, etc. (ODUM 1983; DAY et al. 1989; MCLUSKY 1989).

Until recently, estuarine management strategies did not take into account these important ecosystem functions, but were mainly based on purely economical interests. Nowadays, estuarine management often tries to incorporate the functioning of the ecosystem. This, however, requires knowledge of the functional processes and structure of communities and foodwebs in estuaries.

Within the estuarine foodweb, benthos takes a central role, being one of the most important primary consumers. Macrobenthos, in its turn, is the main food item of many estuarine fish and bird species, and may also be consumed by man. Besides its central role within the estuarine foodweb, benthos is also relatively sensitive to antropogenic influences, on species, population as well as on community level (e.g. PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978; BAYNE et al. 1988; DAY et al. 1989). Macrobenthic communities of severely impacted estuaries (e.g. Schelde estuary) are therefore expected to be affected in a certain way. The degree of human impact can be estimated by comparing the present situation with historical or geographical (e.g. a relatively pristine estuary) references. In the absence of quantitative historical data to show when the estuary was unaffected by human impact, as for the Schelde estuary, a comparison with another estuary can be considered.

The purpose of this paper is to examine the intertidal benthic macrofauna of two estuaries of more or less the same latitude but with a different degree of antropogenic stress: the heavily polluted and highly stressed Schelde es-



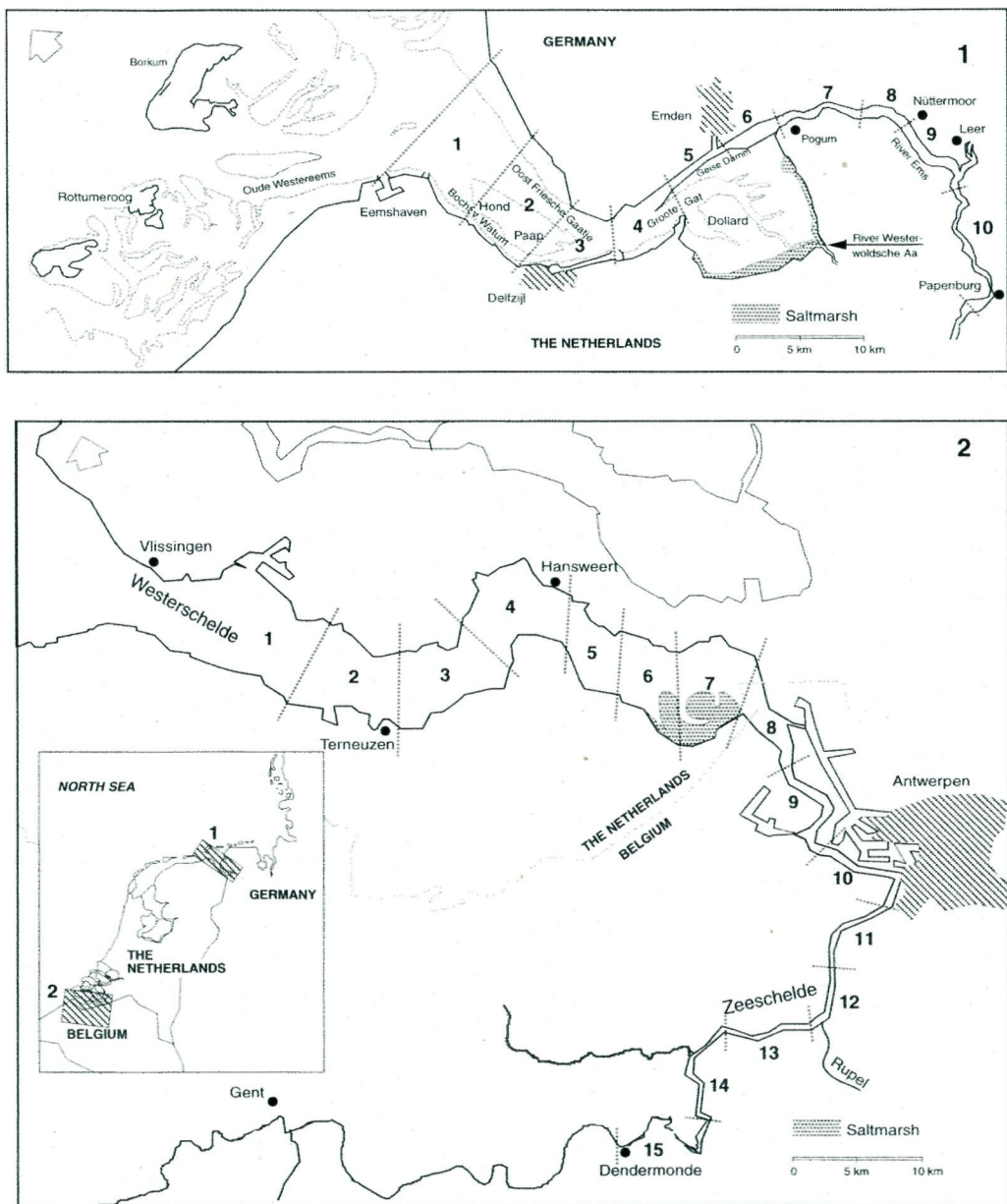


Figure 6.1. The Ems (1) and Schelde (2) estuary subdivided into 10 and 15 sub-areas respectively.

tuary and the relatively moderately stressed Ems estuary. The spatial occurrence of the macrobenthos along the complete salinity gradient is emphasized. The study is based on a compilation of datasets, collected from 1980 to 1990.

- Freshwater tidal part or limnetic zone (salinity < 0.5 p.s.u.);
- Upper part or oligohaline zone (salinity 0.5 - 5 p.s.u.);
- Inner part or mesohaline zone (salinity 5 - 18 p.s.u.);
- Middle/lower part or polyhaline zone (salinity 18 - 30 p.s.u.).

Materials and methods

Study area

The tidal limit was used as the upstream boundary of an estuary. The classification of the estuarine divisions by MCLUSKY (1993) was followed:

Schelde estuary

The Schelde estuary measures 160 km between the mouth at Vlissingen (The Netherlands) and Gent (Belgium), where it is artificially stemmed (Figure 6.1). The mean tidal amplitude varies from 3.8 m at Vlissingen to a max. of 5.2 m near the tributary Rupeel, and diminishes upstream to 2 m near Gent. The river discharge varies from 20 m³ s⁻¹ during summer to 400 m³ s⁻¹ during winter, with a yearly average of 105 m³ s⁻¹. The total volume of



Table 6.1. Mean salinity (yearly average), number of locations and number of samplings (sampling times) per sub-area in the Schelde and Ems estuary. For the position of the sub-areas: see Figure 6.1.

Schelde estuary	Sub-areas														
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	Polyhaline				Mesohaline				Oligohaline			Limnetic			
Salinity p.s.u.	28	25	22	20	17	13	12	9	5	2.4	1.6	0.7	0.5	<0.5	<0.5
No. locations	23	31	13	18	27	39	16	21	2	1	2	2	2	4	3
No. samplings	27	31	13	18	47	78	16	21	2	1	2	2	2	4	3

Ems estuary	Sub-areas									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	Polyhaline				Mesohaline			Oligohaline/Limnetic		
Salinity p.s.u.	28	25	22	20	17	14	9	5	1.8	<0.5
No. locations	33	51	25	10	23	96	52	10	15	22
No. samplings	104	62	42	21	26	97	52	10	15	22

the estuary ($2.5 \cdot 10^9 \text{ m}^3$) is large in comparison with the volume of fresh water that enters each day from the river ($9 \cdot 10^6 \text{ m}^3$). The mean annual chlorinity decreases from $\pm 16.6 \text{ g Cl l}^{-1}$ (salinity 30 p.s.u.) near Vlissingen to $\pm 4.5 \text{ g Cl l}^{-1}$ (salinity 8.1 p.s.u.) at the Belgian-Dutch border. From the tributary Rupel onwards the water becomes fresh. The lower and middle estuary, the Westerschelde, between the Dutch-Belgian border and Vlissingen (55 km), is a well mixed region characterized by a complex morphology with flood and ebb channels surrounding several large intertidal mud- and sandflats. The surface of the Westerschelde is 310 km^2 , of which tidal flats and marshes cover 34 %. The average depth is around 10 m. The water column is moderately to well oxygenated, with oxygen saturation increasing from 20-60 % at the Dutch-Belgian border to 90-100 % at the mouth of the estuary. The middle estuary is especially subject to extensive dredging and dumping. The inner and upper estuary, together with the freshwater tidal part, the Zeeschelde, between the Dutch-Belgian border and Gent (105 km), is characterized by a single channel, bordered with relatively small mudflats and marshes (28 % of total surface). On an European scale, however, these freshwater tidal mudflats and marshes are a very rare habitat. The Zeeschelde is heavily polluted by domestic, industrial and agricultural waste loads. The presence of a nearly anoxic water column during most of the year is one of the striking features of this area. The chemical, physical and biological properties of the Schelde estuary have been documented in detail by HEIP (1988, 1989), MEIRE et al. (1992), and in several papers in MEIRE & VINCX (1993) and HEIP & HERMAN (1995).

Ems estuary

The Ems estuary is situated in the northeast of The Netherlands on the border with Germany. The total length between Papenburg and Eemshaven amounts to 80 km

(Figure 6.1). Mean tidal amplitude amounts to 2.2 m near Delfzijl and reaches a maximum of 3.2 m near Emden. It diminishes upstream to about 1.8 m where tidal propagation is stopped by a weir. On a yearly basis, the average freshwater input amounts to $115 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$. The major source of freshwater inflow is the river Ems, with a mean discharge of $\pm 100 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$, ranging from 25 to $390 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$. The Westerwoldsche Aa, a small canalized river discharging into the Dollard, has a mean river runoff of $12.5 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$. The mean annual chlorinity decreases from $\pm 16 \text{ g Cl l}^{-1}$ (salinity 28.5 p.s.u.) near Eemshaven to $\pm 8 \text{ g Cl l}^{-1}$ (salinity 14.5 p.s.u.) at the mouth of the Dollard, and near Nüttermoor the water becomes fresh. The lower estuary downstream of the Dollard has a funnel shape. This region extends to Eemshaven where the estuary joins the Wadden Sea. Most flats lie along the shore, but a large tidal flat (the Hondpaap) divides the estuary into two parts creating two channels. The total surface of the lower estuary is 155 km^2 of which 36 % comprises tidal flats. The average water depth is 3.5 m, the channel being 9-10 m deep. The inner part of the estuary consists of a shallow bay, the Dollard (100 km^2). Tidal flats cover 85 % and the mean water depth in the Dollard is shallow (1.2 m). The upper estuary is characterized by a single channel, bordered with very small mudflats. The Ems estuary suffers less from pollution compared with the Schelde estuary. Nutrient concentrations in the water are dominated by discharges from the river Ems and the small river Westerwoldsche Aa. In the early 1980s conditions improved, especially in the Dollard, due to a reduction of waste discharge by a developing sanitation scheme (ESSELINK et al. 1989). Dissolved oxygen concentrations rarely drop below 70 % of the saturation value, even in the maximum turbidity zone. The chemical, physical and biological properties of the Ems estuary have been documented by ANONYMOUS (1985), BARETTA & RUARDIJ (1988), DE JONGE (1992), DE JONGE & ESSINK (1992).

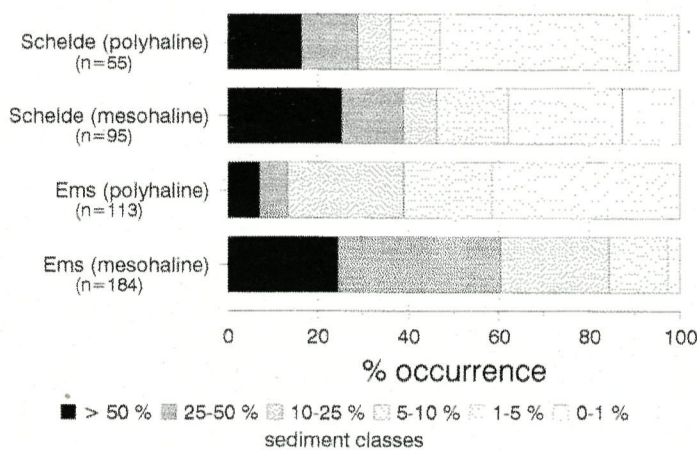


Figure 6.2. Frequency of occurrence (%) of different sediment types in the polyhaline and mesohaline zone of the Schelde and Ems estuaries respectively. Sediments were divided in six classes based on the mud content ($< 53 \mu\text{m}$) of the sampling locations.

Sampling methods and laboratory procedures

Most of the faunistic data were derived from earlier reports of our own institutes (Ems estuary: EPPINGA 1991; EPPINGA & ESSINK 1990; KLEEF 1991; VISSER et al. 1987; Schelde estuary: e.g. MEIRE et al. 1991; YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1991; YSEBAERT et al. 1993) or from reports of other Institutes (Ems estuary: RHODE 1982; STEUWER & KÖRITZ 1986; BÖHME 1989; Schelde estuary: HEIP et al. 1986; JANSSEN et al. 1988). Although RHODE (1982) provided data older than 1980, it was also used because it is the only one available on the freshwater tidal part of the Ems estuary.

Most of the studies except for RHODE (1982) sampled macrobenthos quantitatively, using a corer (several diameters) and sieving with a 1.0 mm mesh aperture, except for BÖHME (1989) who used 0.6 mm and RHODE (1982) who used 0.125 mm. However, the laboratory procedures differed substantially among different studies, especially among those of the Ems estuary. Often not all species were quantified (e.g. Spionids, *Heteromastus filiformis*, *Hydrobia ulvae*, *Marenzelleria viridis*), and biomass was not always determined to species level. In most studies Oligochaeta were either not considered or considered as one group. Only a few studies included sediment characteristics (e.g. grain size distribution, median grain size, mud content). So the observed range in mud content (fraction $< 53 \mu\text{m}$) was not considered in detail. For more details on the sampling methods and laboratory procedures see YSEBAERT & MEIRE (1993).

Data analysis

Based on salinity gradient and morphological characteristics (e.g. occurrence of tidal flats) the Ems and Schelde estuaries were divided into 10 and 15 sub-areas, respectively (Figure 6.1, Table 6.1).

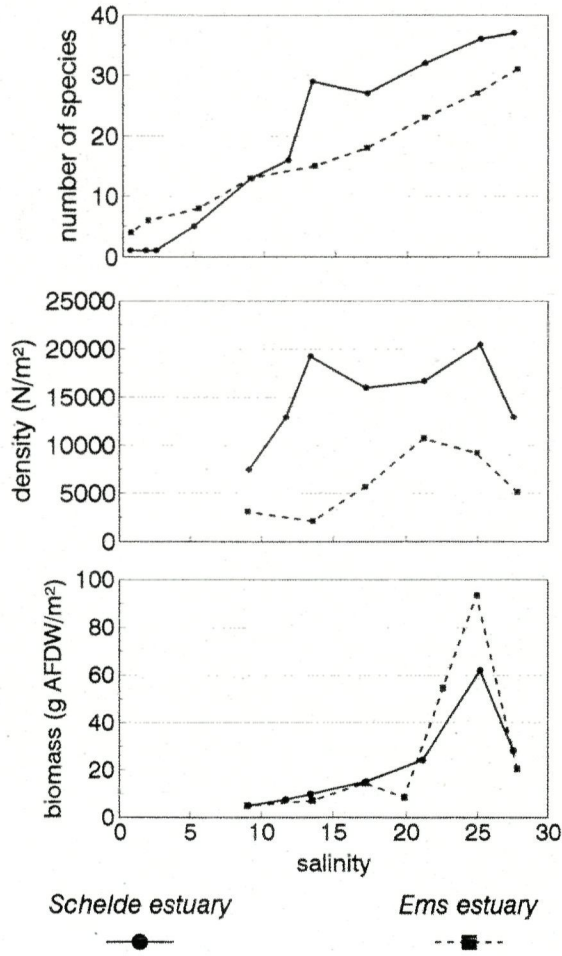


Figure 6.3. Total number of species (Oligochaeta considered as one group) and total density (N m^{-2}) and total biomass (g AFDW m^{-2} , Oligochaeta and *M. viridis* not included) observed along the salinity gradient of the Schelde and Ems estuaries.

Table 6.2. Species observed in the Schelde and Ems estuaries (presence indicated by x; rare species (= < 10 times observed) indicated with number of observations). Feeding types: DF, Deposit Feeder; FF, Filter/suspension feeder; O, Omnivore; P, Predator.

Species	Feeding type	Schelde	Ems	Species	Feeding type	Schelde	Ems
Annelida, Polychaeta				Mollusca, Bivalva			
Alkmaria romijni	DF	1		Abra alba	FF	1	
Anaitides mucosa	P	x	x	Cerastoderma edule	FF	x	x
Arenicola marina	DF	x	x	Ensis directus	FF		1
Atylus swammerdami	P	1		Ensis sp.	FF	6	
Autolytus prolifer	P	1		Macoma balthica	DF	x	x
Boccardia redeki	FF	1		Mya arenaria	FF	x	x
Capitella capitata	DF	x	x	Mysella bidentata	FF	x	2
Eteone longa	P	x	x	Mytilus edulis	FF	x	x
Eumida sanguinea	P	2		Scrobicularia plana	DF	x	x
Harmothoe sp.	DF		x	Spisula sp.	FF	x	
Harmothoe sarsi	DF	2		Tellina fabula	DF	2	
Heteromastus filiformis	DF	x	x	Tellina sp.	DF	1	
Lanice conchilega	DF	6		Tellina tenuis	DF	1	
Lepidonotus squamatus	P		1	Mollusca, Gastropoda			
Magelona papillicornis	DF	4	x	Assimineia grayana	DF	4	
Manayunkia aestuarina	FF	x		Gastropod fresh water	DF		x
Marenzelleria viridis	P		x	Hydrobia ulvae	DF	x	x
Nephtys caeca	P	1		Hydrobia ventrosa	DF		3
Nephtys hombergii	P	x	x	Littorina littorea	DF	2	3
Nereis diversicolor	O	x	x	Potamopyrgus jenkinsi	DF		4
Nereis succinea	DF	x	x	Retusa obtusa	P	x	x
Nereis sp.	DF	x	x	Crustacea, Amphipoda			
Ophelia limacina	DF	2		Bathyporeia pelagica	DF	x	
Ophelia rathkei	DF	3		Bathyporeia pilosa/sarsi	DF	x	x
Polydora sp.	DF	x	1	Bathyporeia sp.	DF	x	x
Pygospio elegans	DF	x	x	Corophium arenarium	DF	x	x
Scoloplos armiger	DF	x	x	Corophium volutator	DF	x	x
Scolecopsis foliosa	P/DF		9	Corophium sp.	DF	x	x
Scolecopsis squamata	DF	x		Gammarus locusta	O		3
Spiophanes bombyx	DF	x		Gammarus salinus	O	x	
Spio sp.	DF	2	5	Gammarus sp.	O	x	5
Streblospio shrubsolei	DF		8	Gammarus fresh water	O		2
Tharyx marioni	DF	x	x	Haustorius arenarius	FF	x	
Annelida, Oligochaeta				Urothoe poseidonis	DF	3	
Oligochaeta	DF	x	x	Urothoe sp.	DF		1
Limnodrilus hoffmeisteri	DF	x	x	Crustacea, Isopoda			
Monopylephorus irroratus	DF		x	Eurydice pulchra	P	x	
Paranais litoralis	DF		x	Idotea chelipes	-		1
Paranais sp.	DF		2	Cyathura carinata	-	x	
Tubificoides benedeni	DF	x	x	Sphaeroma rugicauda	-	1	1
Tubifex costatus	DF	x	x	Crustacea, Decapoda			
Tubifex tubifex	DF		1	Carcinus maenas	O	x	x
Hirudinea				Crangon crangon	P	x	x
Theromyzon tessulatum	P		1	Crustacea, Mysidacea			
Nemertinae				Mysidacea	O	x	x
Nemertini	P	x	x	Insecta			
				Ceratopogonidae larvae	-		x

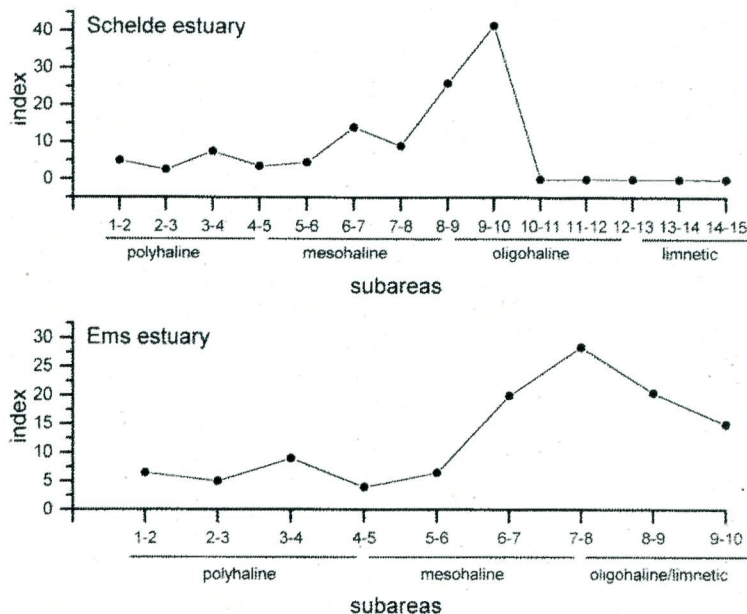


Figure 6.4. Index of faunal change based on coenocline similarity projections (qualitative data). For explanation: see text.

Because sampling methods and laboratory procedures differed, analysis had to be limited to 65 taxa (or less) from the 84 taxa recorded. Epibenthic species like Mysids, *Crangon crangon*, *Carcinus maenas* and *Gammarus* spp., that were not always identified, were excluded from the analyses. Species that could not be identified to species level, or species with difficult identification keys, were considered as genus: *Corophium* spp., *Bathyporeia* spp., *Hydrobia* spp., *Tellina* spp., *Harmothoe* spp., *Urothoe* spp. Oligochaeta were considered as one group. Analysis was performed on pres-

ence/absence and % occurrence (65 species; all samples), and on density and biomass (35 and 24 species respectively; no Oligochaeta; polyhaline and mesohaline zone only; only autumn samples to reduce seasonal variability).

The faunal change along the estuarine gradient was analyzed by means of the coenocline similarity projection (CSP) (after BOESCH 1977), using the qualitative Sørensen similarity coefficient. The similarity indices between the different sub-areas were then projected along the salinity gradient, the so-called coenocline similarity projections

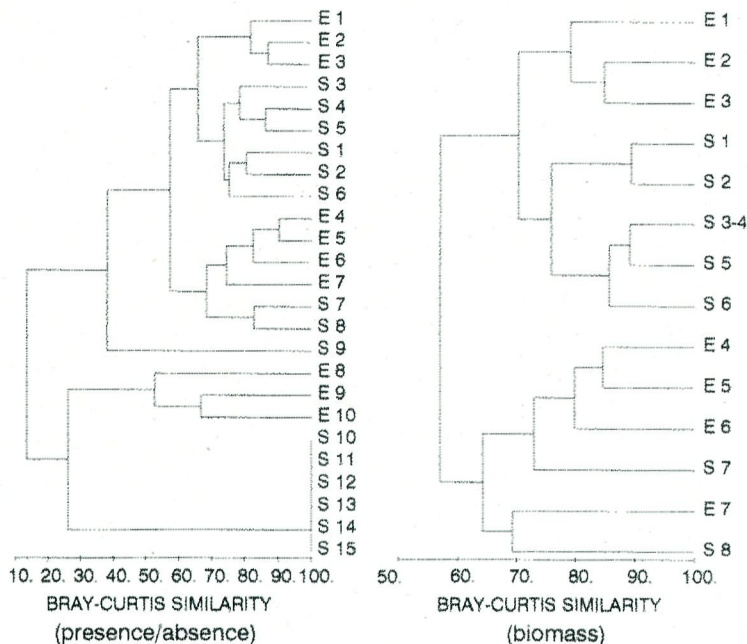


Figure 6.5. Hierarchical agglomerative clustering of macrobenthic communities based on presence/absence data of 65 species (all sub-areas) and on fourth root transformed biomass data of 24 species (poly- and mesohaline zone only) respectively, using group-average linking on Bray-Curtis similarities (Schelde: 15 sub-areas S1-S15 and Ems: 10 sub-areas E1-E10).



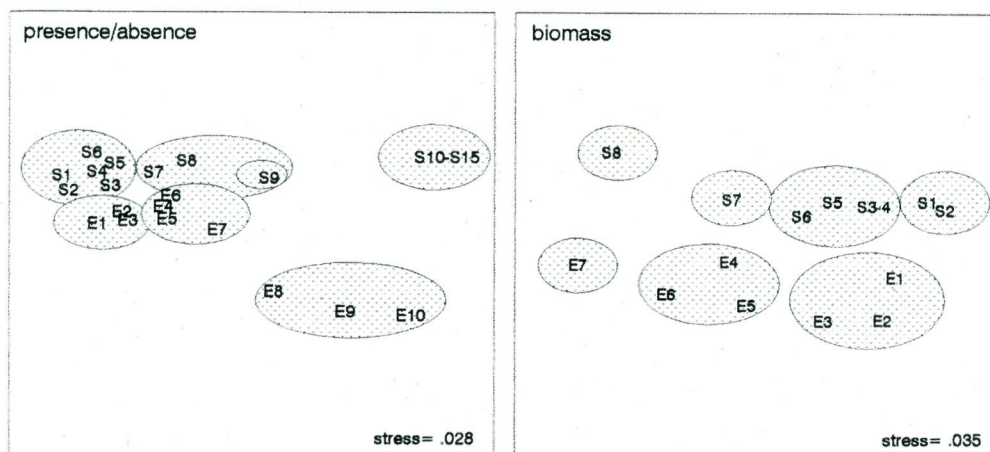


Figure 6.6. MDS ordination based on presence/absence data of 65 species (all sub-areas) and on fourth root transformed biomass data of 24 species (poly- and mesohaline zone only) respectively. Communities as identified by GAS and TWINSpan are circled.

(BOESCH 1977). This simple graphical technique projects a between-site similarity matrix as a series of curves plotted for sites/areas ordered along an environmental gradient. The average slopes of all projected similarity curves were computed for each between-site interval to get a better presentation of the rate of coenocline change. The derived index, called index of faunal change, indicates in which zone large or small faunal changes occurred. The following multivariate analyses were applied: classification by TWINSpan cluster analysis (HILL 1979) and by an agglomerative clustering method (group average sorting (GAS) of Bray-Curtis dissimilarities) and ordination by non-metric multi-dimensional scaling (MDS), using the Bray-Curtis similarity measure. MDS stress values < 0.05 means excellent presentation (CLARKE 1993). Plotting of the TWINSpan /GAS clusters on 2-D ordination planes aided in evaluating the divisions imposed. GAS and MDS were performed using the statistical package PRIMER (CARR et al. 1993; CLARKE 1993). Density and biomass data were subjected to $\sqrt[4]{}$ transformation prior to analysis. Mean values are presented with standard errors.

Results

Sediment characteristics

A wide variety of sediment types was observed in both the poly- and mesohaline zones of the Schelde and Ems estuaries (Figure 6.2). In the Schelde estuary $\pm 10\%$ of the locations had a mud content $< 1\%$. These very coarse sediments were not observed in the Ems estuary. In general, the polyhaline zones of both estuaries were characterized by relatively coarser sediments than the mesohaline zones. The mesohaline zone of the Ems estuary was dominated by very fine sediments, in the Schelde estuary a wide range of sediment types was observed within this

zone. For the freshwater tidal part the few data generally revealed very fine sediments with a mud content $> 25\%$.

General trends in diversity, density, and biomass

In general, the total number of species was higher in the Schelde than in the Ems estuary (Table 6.2). In the Schelde estuary lot of species were, however, observed only a few times. In both estuaries the common species and genera occurred. A gradual decrease in the total number of species in each sub-area was observed from the mouth towards the freshwater tidal part (Figure 6.3); more species disappeared than were replaced by new species upstream. This is most pronounced in the Schelde estuary, where in the oligohaline and freshwater tidal parts no new species were observed. Only Oligochaeta were found (YSEBAERT et al. 1993) and no freshwater organisms. On the other hand, in the Ems estuary freshwater species like freshwater gastropods and gammarids and insect larvae were observed (RHODE 1982). The mean number of species of the sampling locations per zone also decreased upstream with high numbers in the polyhaline zone and lower numbers towards the mesohaline and oligohaline zone. In the Schelde estuary, 12.8 ± 0.5 and 7.2 ± 0.3 species were observed in the polyhaline and mesohaline zone, respectively. In the Ems estuary the same trend was observed with 10.4 ± 0.2 species in the polyhaline zone and 5.5 ± 0.2 species in the mesohaline zone. In the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zone of the Ems estuary, the mean number of species decreased further to 3.6 or less. In both estuaries, total density (without Oligochaeta) did not show a clear trend along the salinity gradient except for a slight decrease towards the mesohaline zone and towards the mouth (Figure 6.3). Density was significantly higher in the Schelde estuary than in the Ems estuary. Oligochaeta were more abundant in the mesohaline zone than in the poly-



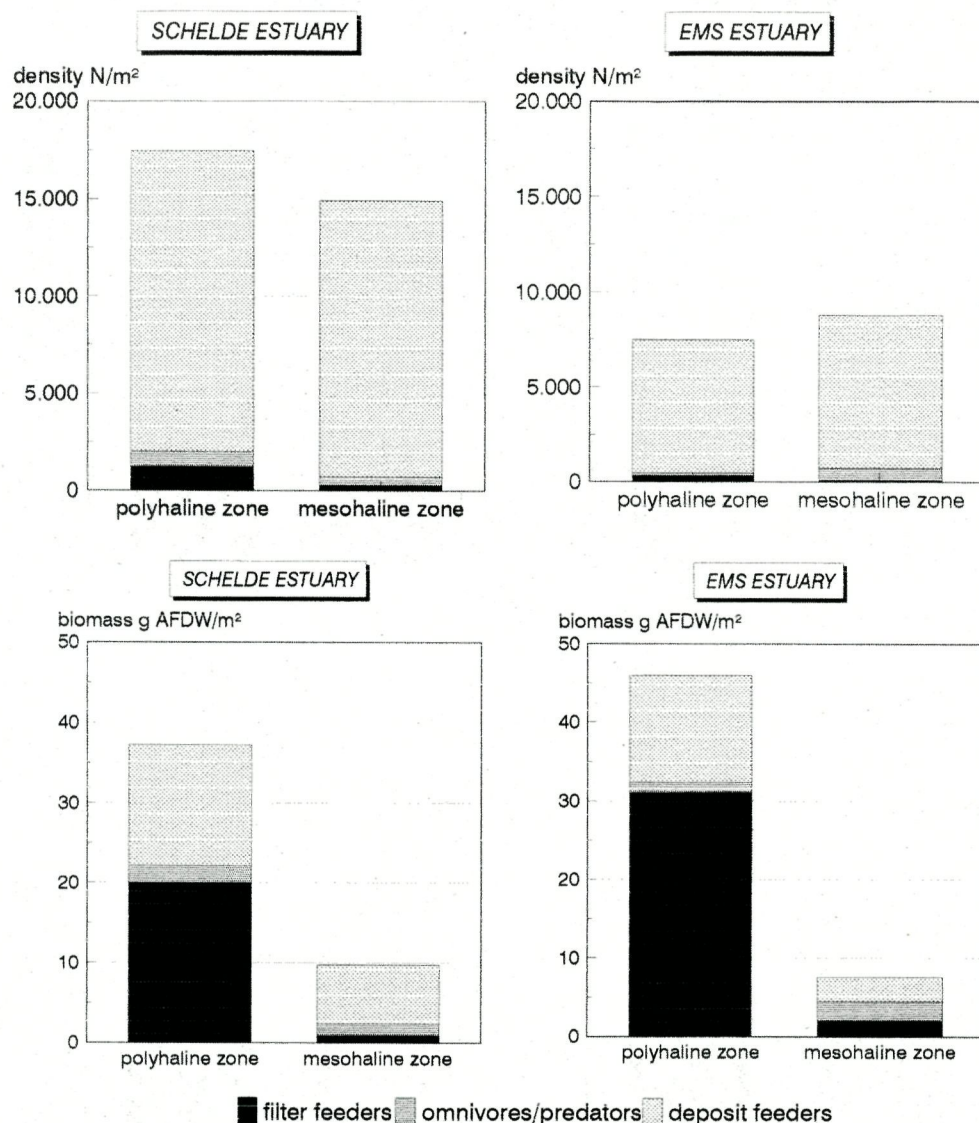


Figure 6.7. Feeding strategies -based on density and biomass respectively- of the intertidal macrobenthos in the polyhaline and mesohaline zone of the Schelde and Ems estuary.

haline zone. Biomass was highest in the polyhaline zone, and decreased towards the mesohaline and freshwater tidal part (Figure 6.3). In the polyhaline zone, the outermost area (mouth) had a lower biomass than the inner areas. The scarce information on the oligohaline and freshwater tidal parts indicated a relatively low biomass in these regions. RHODE (1982) gave biomass values of 0.6-3.1 g AFDW m⁻² for this section of the Ems. Similar data were found in the Schelde estuary, except for one location in the freshwater tidal zone where a biomass of 45 g AFDW m⁻² was observed.

In the polyhaline zone, many species were present with no one species really dominating. In the mesohaline zone, fewer species occurred, but in relatively higher numbers, indicating only a few really dominant species occurred here. This was even more pronounced in the oligohaline and freshwater tidal part of both estuaries where *Oligochaeta* dominated.

Estuarine zonation and characterization of benthic communities

The index of faunal change, based on the coenocline similarity projections, did not change significantly within the polyhaline zone of both estuaries (Figure 6.4), but became more pronounced in the mesohaline zone; the largest faunal change was observed in the transition between the mesohaline and oligohaline zone. In the Schelde estuary, from sub-area 10 on the index became zero, implying no further changes in faunal composition (only *Oligochaeta*). On the other hand, in the upstream areas of the Ems estuary the index remained relatively high implying a further faunal change in the freshwater tidal part of this estuary, as indicated by the appearance of some freshwater species.

Multivariate analyses with presence/absence, % occurrence and density and biomass data all gave similar results.

The general pattern was illustrated with the group average sorting of Bray-Curtis similarities and the MDS (Figures 6.5 and 6.6) on presence/absence data and biomass data respectively. The analyses on presence/absence data, which included the freshwater tidal and oligohaline zones, resulted in three geographically separated communities in each estuary. The first division separated the oligohaline and freshwater zones of both estuaries from the higher salinity zones. In a further division the high salinity zones were divided into a polyhaline and a mesohaline zone. In the Schelde, some of the mesohaline sub-areas (5-6) grouped

upstream situated sub-areas. In the mesohaline zone, the upper sub-areas were clearly separated.

In each estuary three communities could be distinguished: a marine community in the polyhaline zone, a brackish community in the mesohaline zone and a third community in the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones. The community in the polyhaline zone of both estuaries was characterized by a relatively high diversity due to the occurrence of several species that were restricted to this zone (e.g. *Magelona papillicornis*, *Scoloplos armiger*, *Myrella bidentata*, *Anaitides mucosa*) or species that rarely penetrated the

Table 6.3. Mean occurrence (O, %), density (D, N m⁻² ± SE, (maximum density)), and biomass (B, g AFDW m⁻² ± SE, (maximum biomass)) of the most dominant species in the polyhaline and mesohaline zone of Schelde and Ems estuaries (D and B, autumn samples only). ? = insufficient data.

Species		Schelde polyhaline	Schelde mesohaline	Ems polyhaline	Ems mesohaline
		Subarea 1-4 O: n=89 D: n=58 B: n=50	Subarea 5-8 O: n=162 D: n=123 B: n=89	Subarea 1-4 O: n=229 D: n=199 B: n=141	Subarea 5-7 O: n=175 D: n=172 B: n=158
<i>Macoma balthica</i>	O	87	81	98	94
	D	855 ± 151 (5217)	578 ± 82 (5869)	332 ± 49 (7048)	177 ± 20 (3332)
	B	2.9 ± 0.4 (15.9)	1.0 ± 0.1 (4.22)	2.5 ± 0.2 (13.9)	1.2 ± 0.1 (8.8)
<i>Nereis diversicolor</i>	O	69	60	86	97
	D	466 ± 107 (3928)	447 ± 89 (6983)	117 ± 10 (838)	607 ± 33 (2719)
	B	1.7 ± 0.4 (13.7)	1.5 ± 0.6 (49.6)	1.0 ± 0.1 (8.2)	2.5 ± 0.2 (10.7)
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>	O	83	81	78	62
	D	4072 ± 758 (21668)	3816 ± 588 (32570)	1700 ± 165 (9000)	355 ± 62 (10057)
	B	8.0 ± 1.4 (43.3)	3.6 ± 0.7 (26.5)	5.2 ± 0.6 (15.9)	0.5 ± 0.1 (6.1)
<i>Corophium</i> sp.	O	58	70	76	97
	D	590 ± 272 (13026)	5561 ± 1082 (51350)	2734 ± 583 (45126)	1278 ± 189 (18066)
	B	0.13 ± 0.07 (2.9)	1.0 ± 0.2 (9.1)	2.0 ± 0.4 (16.7)	0.4 ± 0.1 (3.1)
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i>	O	65	19	51	0
	D	1311 ± 221 (7448)	211 ± 75 (5240)	65 ± 22 (3507)	0
	B	19.7 ± 5.2 (199.9)	0.6 ± 0.2 (9.1)	1.5 ± 0.4 (30.3)	0
<i>Mya arenaria</i>	O	14	22	77	59
	D	50 ± 39 (2247)	142 ± 61 (4352)	286 ± 51 (5345)	89 ± 16 (2098)
	B	0.2 ± 0.1 (5.0)	0.3 ± 0.2 (12.7)	29.6 ± 5.9 (457.0)	1.9 ± 0.2 (15.2)
<i>Pygospio elegans</i>	O	89	78	18	6
	D	5374 ± 1220 (56630)	3953 ± 774 (52564)	?	69 ± 36 (4879)
	B	0.4 ± 0.1 (5.0)	0.3 ± 0.2 (2.6)	?	?

together with the polyhaline sub-areas. Within each zone, the Schelde sub-areas were clearly separated from the Ems sub-areas. The biomass, excluding the freshwater and oligohaline zones, was similar. Within the high salinity zones, the mouth of both estuaries was separated from the more

estuary up to the middle reaches (e.g. *Nephtys hombergii*, *A. marina*). The most common species (both in terms of occurrence and density) within the polyhaline community were however typically euryhaline species like *H. filiformis*, *N. diversicolor*, *M. balthica*, *Hydrobia ulvae*, *Eteone longa*,

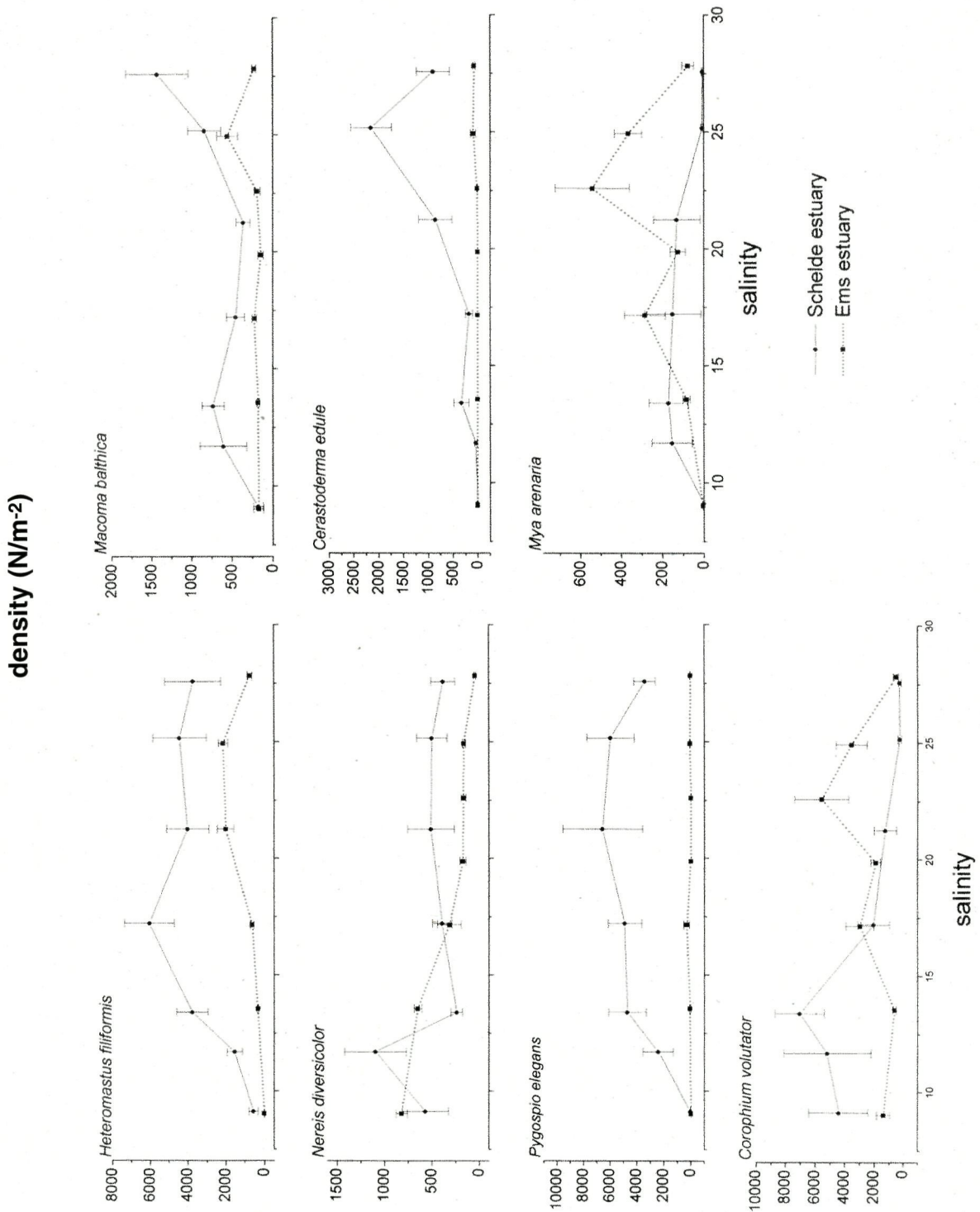


Figure 6.8. Density ($N\ m^{-2} \pm SE$) of some important macrobenthic species along the salinity gradient of the Schelde and Ems estuary (full line: Schelde estuary; dotted line: Ems estuary).

Corophium sp. (Ems estuary only), *P. elegans* (Schelde estuary only). In the Schelde estuary *Cerastoderma edule*, *Tharyx marioni* and *C. capitata* were also common. The polyhaline communities were dominated numerically by deposit feeders (Figure 6.7). In terms of biomass a filter

feeder dominated: *C. edule* in the Schelde estuary and *M. arenaria* in the Ems estuary, respectively (Figure 6.7).

The mesohaline community of both estuaries was characterized by a low diversity. The most common species were *C. volutator*, *H. filiformis*, *N. diversicolor*, and *Macoma bal-*



biomass (g AFDW/m²)

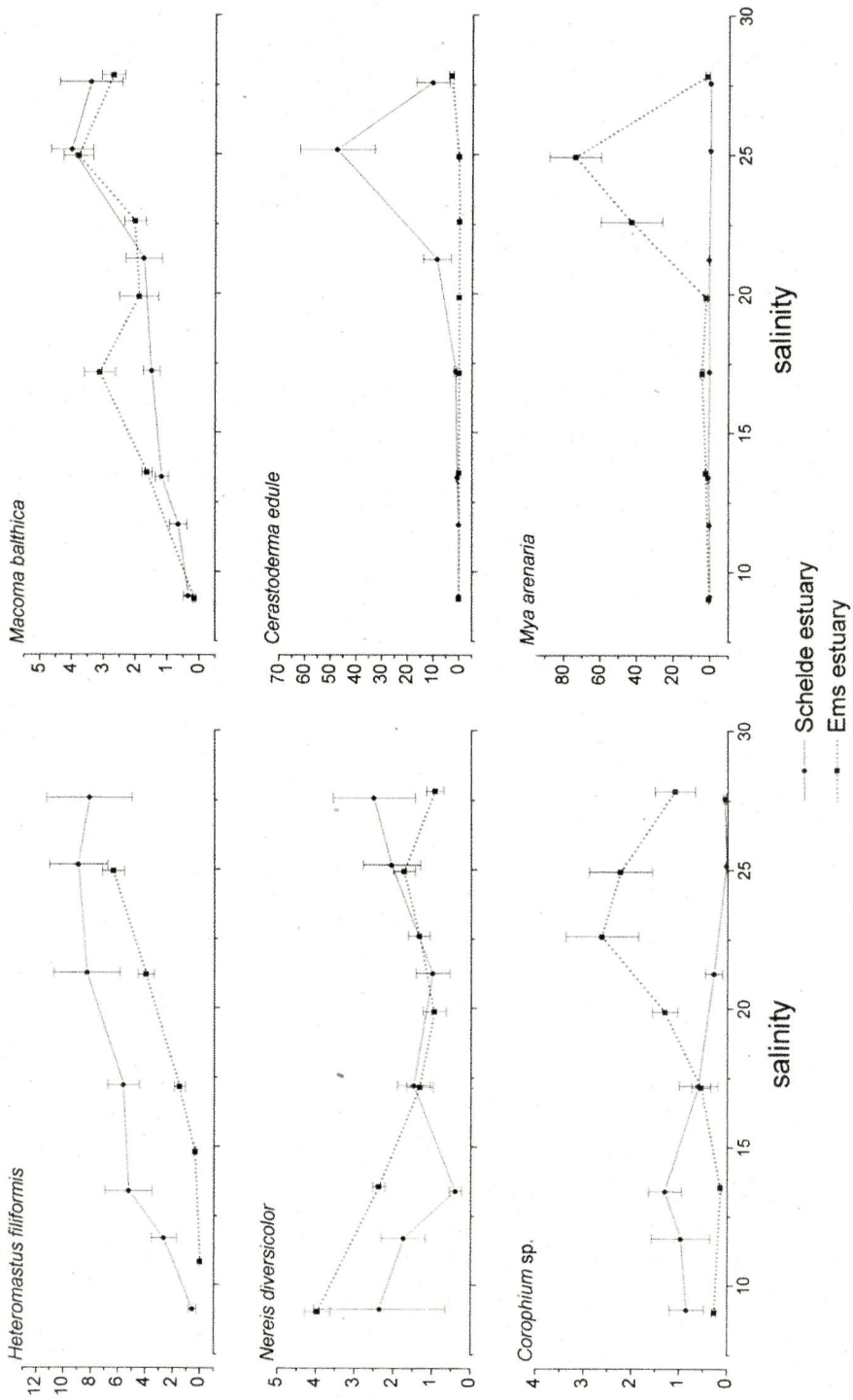


Figure 6.9. Biomass (g AFDW m⁻² ± SE) of some important macrobenthic species along the salinity gradient of the Schelde and Ems estuary (full line: Schelde estuary; dotted line: Ems estuary).

thica. Towards the oligohaline zone, only *C. volutator* and *N. diversicolor* appeared, together with *Oligochaeta*. In terms of feeding strategies, the mesohaline community was numerically dominated by deposit feeders in both estuaries (Figure 6.7). The biomass of the mesohaline community of the

Schelde estuary was dominated mainly by deposit feeders (*M. balthica*, *P. elegans*, *H. filiformis*, *Corophium* sp.), while in the Ems estuary a more diverse community with equal numbers of deposit feeders, omnivores (*N. diversicolor*) and filter feeders (*M. arenaria*) was found (Figure 6.7).

The freshwater tidal and oligohaline zones of both estuaries were characterized by an impoverished benthic community, dominated by Oligochaeta. In the Ems estuary some typical freshwater organisms (e.g. insect larvae (Ceratopogonidae), freshwater gastropods), and some euryhaline species, penetrating the estuary up to the oligohaline (e.g. *Corophium volutator*) or up to the freshwater tidal zone (e.g. *Nereis diversicolor*) were also observed. Deposit feeders dominated the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones of both estuaries.

The dominant species

Annelids dominated the intertidal macrobenthos of the Ems and Schelde estuaries and by molluscs (bivalves) and crustaceans (amphipods) to a lesser extent. Information on the occurrence, density and biomass is summarized in Table 6.3 and Figures 6.8 and 6.9.

Annelids

H. filiformis was the most common polychaete in the Schelde estuary, but the second most common in the Ems estuary. In both estuaries *H. filiformis* became less common below a salinity of ± 12 p.s.u. In the Schelde estuary, high densities occurred both in the polyhaline and mesohaline zone, whereas in the Ems estuary much lower densities were observed in the mesohaline zone. Total densities were much higher in the Schelde estuary as compared to the Ems estuary. In the Schelde and to a lesser extent also in the Ems estuary, this species represented an important part of the total biomass. It was the most important deposit feeding polychaete. *N. diversicolor* was another very common species, and the most common omnivore, up to the very low salinity zones in both estuaries. It penetrated more upstream in the Ems estuary (up to the limnetic region) than observed in the Schelde estuary, where the species was absent in the oligohaline zone. *N. diversicolor* had a relatively large contribution to the total biomass, especially in the mesohaline zone of both estuaries. The spionid *P. elegans* was a very common polychaete in the Schelde estuary, reaching very high densities in both the poly- and mesohaline zone, but only occurred occasionally in the Ems estuary in very low densities. This difference could partly be attributed to methodological differences (see above), but later studies also observed low densities of *P. elegans* in three stations in the Dollard region (DEKKER 1992, 1993). The contribution of *P. elegans* to the total biomass was minimal. *E. longa* was a common species in both estuaries, especially in the polyhaline zone, but its contribution to the total density and biomass was low. *Marenzelleria viridis*, a North American brackish water spionid, was observed in the Ems estuary first in 1983, but had not been observed in the Schelde estuary. Since then, this species has become more and more dominant, espe-

cially in the Dollard region of the Ems estuary (ESSINK & KLEEF 1988; 1993). Due to the lack of quantitative data the contribution of *M. viridis* to the total density and biomass was not considered in this study. To date, this species however makes up to 50-75 % of the total biomass of the intertidal mudflats of the Dollard (DE JONGE & ESSINK 1992; ESSINK & KLEEF 1993; ESSINK et al. 1998).

Molluscs

M. balthica was the most common mollusc species in both estuaries, occurring in decreasing density and biomass from the marine reaches up to the oligohaline zone. Total density was higher in the Schelde estuary than in the Ems estuary, but biomass was similar, implying smaller individuals (spat) in the Schelde estuary. Indeed, in the Dollard region populations consisted of different year classes, whereas in the Schelde estuary only spat was found in areas with similar salinities. Probably additional stress factors such as pollution or increased hydrodynamics caused decreased survival of these animals in the Schelde estuary. *M. balthica* had a large contribution to the total biomass. *C. edule* was a very common species in the polyhaline part of the Schelde estuary, contributing > 50 % to the total biomass. In the mesohaline part of this estuary, *C. edule* was much less common and most of the individuals found were young spat. On the other hand, in the Ems estuary *C. edule* was observed only occasionally in low densities and biomasses. In the mesohaline part the species was absent. *M. arenaria* showed a reverse pattern, being common in the Ems estuary and rather rare in the Schelde estuary. In the polyhaline zone of the Ems estuary *M. arenaria* contributed for ± 65 % to the total biomass, in the mesohaline zone for 26 %. Other bivalves were much less common and included *Scrobicularia plana* and *Mytilus edulis*. No intertidal mussel beds were observed in either estuaries, except for a few small areas on the German side of the Ems estuary (BÖHME 1989). The only common gastropod of both estuaries was *H. ulvae*, being most common in the polyhaline zone. Mean densities were comparable with locally very high peak densities.

Crustaceans

By far the most important crustaceans in both estuaries were amphipods of which *Corophium* is the most common. *Corophium* sp. was observed along the whole estuarine gradient. In the Schelde estuary density was much higher in the mesohaline zone, whereas in the Ems estuary the reverse was observed. In the mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary *Corophium* sp. was one of the most dominating species. The amphipods *Bathyporeia* sp. and *H. arenarius*, and the isopod *E. pulchra* were regularly observed in the Schelde estuary, especially in the mesohaline zone. In the Ems estuary, *Bathyporeia* sp. was much less common, and *H. arenarius* and *E. pulchra* were totally



absent. In the Schelde estuary, these species were typically found in relatively coarse sediments, situated in highly dynamic areas (e.g. megaripples) (see also YSEBAERT et al. 1993).

Discussion

Species composition and distribution

The Schelde and Ems estuaries show a very similar species composition, especially at the genus level. Most of the common species are the same in both estuaries. More species are however observed in the Schelde estuary. The observed difference in number of species is most likely related with the different available habitat (sediment) types in both estuaries. Very coarse sediments rarely occur along the Ems estuary, whereas in the Schelde estuary both the polyhaline and mesohaline zones contain areas with coarse sediment. Beside the low dynamic habitats (e.g. mudflats) typical for both estuaries, the intertidal zone of the Schelde estuary is therefore also characterized by the occurrence of high dynamic habitats (e.g. 2D- and 3D-megaripples). The associated typical mobile benthic infauna (e.g. amphipods (*Bathyporeia* spp., *H. arenarius*) and isopods (*E. pulchra*)) is regularly observed in the intertidal zone of the Schelde estuary (see also YSEBAERT et al. 1993). In the intertidal zone of the Ems estuary mainly uniform low dynamic areas are observed, especially in the mesohaline zone (Dollard region). The common species *M. balthica*, *C. volutator* and *N. diversicolor* are observed in > 90% of all locations considered, indicating a relatively uniform occurrence along the whole estuary (polyhaline and mesohaline zone).

Since more sampling locations are considered in the Ems estuary than in the Schelde estuary, the observed difference in number of species cannot be due to sampling intensity. To some extent this difference can however be explained by methodological differences in both field and laboratory techniques used (see Material & Methods). E.g., species like *Manayunkia aestuarina*, *Spiophanes bombyx*, *Polydora* sp. are observed regularly in the Schelde estuary, and not in the Ems estuary. Studies like STEUWER & KÖRITZ (1986) and BÖHME (1989) which determine Spionids up to species level, however, also do not mention the presence of *Polydora* sp.

A compilation of the large amount of historical data of the intertidal macrofauna of the Ems estuary from 1950 to 1980 is discussed in MICHAELIS (1983). In general, the species commonly observed in our study are similar to those also observed earlier: *M. aestuarina* and *Polydora* sp., mentioned by MICHAELIS (1983) as less common, are not observed in this study. The absence of *H. arenarius* and *E. pulchra* (MICHAELIS 1983) is consistent with our findings.

For the Schelde estuary, less historical data are available. Data of the Westerschelde from 1965 to 1973 (WOLFF 1973) indicate a similar distribution and similar dominant species. *N. diversicolor* no longer appears up to the freshwater tidal zone, as compared to earlier in the Schelde estuary and to the present situation in the Ems estuary.

The macrobenthic fauna observed in the Schelde and Ems estuaries is very similar with observations from other European estuaries. DAVIDSON et al. (1991) classifies British aquatic estuarine communities into seventeen hard shore communities and 16 soft shore communities. Within the soft shore communities five communities are found on more than 20 % of 102 estuaries. The most common of these are a muddy sand community in areas of variable or normal salinity, and a mud community in more sheltered areas of variable and reduced salinity. These two communities also dominate in the Schelde and Ems estuaries, with the same dominating species, being in the muddy sand community the polychaetes *A. marina*, *P. elegans*, *N. hombergii*, *S. armiger* and *S. bombyx* and the molluscs *M. balthica*, *C. edule* and *H. ulvae*, and in the variable/reduced salinity mud community the polychaetes *N. diversicolor* and *Ampharete grubei* and the bivalves *S. plana* and *M. arenaria*, in addition to those of the normal/variable salinity muddy sand community. The exposed sand community (DAVIDSON et al. 1991) is also found in the Schelde estuary, being dominated by crustaceans, mainly small amphipod species such as *H. arenarius*, and polychaete worm species such as *N. cirrosa*. Two soft shore communities, mussel beds and beds of marine grasses (DAVIDSON et al. 1991), are not found in the Schelde and Ems estuaries.

Several studies describe the distribution and abundance of macrofauna along an estuarine salinity gradient. In the Forth estuary (Scotland) MCLUSKY (1987) observes in the upper estuary a *Oligochaeta* population to dominate. In the inner/middle estuary the number of species increases with typical representatives being *N. diversicolor*, *M. balthica*, *C. volutator* and *H. ulvae*. The absence of the last three species further upstream is attributed to the high organic enrichment and severe oxygen depletion in that upper part of the Forth estuary (MCLUSKY 1987). At some places of the middle Forth estuary, also *C. edule* and *M. arenaria* appear. In the lower Forth estuary diversity increases further and typical representatives are the molluscs *M. balthica*, *C. edule*, *M. arenaria* and *H. ulvae* and the annelids *Nephtys hombergii* and *Arenicola marina*. In the Shannon estuary, Ireland's largest estuary and one of the very few major European estuaries with little antropogenic influence, the few available data indicate that the main macrofaunal species found in the inner/middle estuary appear to be *M. balthica*, *N. diversicolor*, *N. hombergii* and *C. volutator* (WILSON et al. 1993), and also *H. ulvae* and *S. plana*. (MERNE 1985). The most upstream sites appear to contain only *N. diversicolor*. The low diversity in the Shannon estuary is probably explained by the very high mud and silt content of the



sediments. A more detailed investigation of one intertidal mudflat in the poly/mesohaline zone of the Shannon estuary shows 26 species of which oligochaetes, the polychaetes *T. marioni*, *P. elegans*, *N. diversicolor* and *C. capitata*, the bivalves *M. balthica* and *S. plana*, and the amphipod *C. volutator* are the most abundant (O'SULLIVAN 1980). In the Loire estuary (France) diversity is decreasing upstream (ROBINEAU 1987). The polyhaline zone is characterized by *C. edule*, *M. arenaria*, and *N. caeca*, the mesohaline zone by oligochaetes, *C. volutator*, *M. balthica*, *H. ulvae* and *N. diversicolor*. In the Weser estuary (Germany), the middle and upper reaches are characterized by oligochaetes, *C. volutator*, *N. diversicolor*, *H. filiformis*, *M. balthica*, *S. shrubsolei* (KOLBE 1992). From 1986, *M. viridis* invades the Weser estuary and becomes one of the dominating species here. This successful invasion is very similar to that observed in the Ems estuary (ESSINK & KLEEF 1988).

Community structure

Both estuaries are characterized by the occurrence of three benthic communities along the salinity gradient: a marine community in the polyhaline zone, a brackish community in the mesohaline zone, and a third community in the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones. These three communities are very similar in both estuaries, but differ within each estuary.

Most of the dominating species of the marine community are typically euryhaline species, that also dominate in the brackish community. The marine community in the Schelde estuary tends to penetrate further into the estuary as compared to the Ems. In the Schelde, several 'marine' species are indeed observed in the mesohaline zone as well. Often these species only occur there temporarily, not being able to reproduce (e.g. successful spatfall of *C. edule* not surviving the winter because of lower salinities; pers. observ.). This confirms earlier findings that macrobenthic communities are not static, but that the boundaries of the estuarine zones are continuously fluctuating in space and time, especially in the mesohaline and oligohaline zones (REMANE 1958; DEN HARTOG 1964, 1971; WOLFF 1973; MCLUSKY 1989; RIEDEL-LORJE et al. 1995).

Our findings that in both estuaries the macrobenthic trophic structure is dominated to a large extent by suspension feeders in the polyhaline zone and by deposit feeders in the mesohaline zone is supported by the general findings of HUMMEL et al. (1988) and HAMERLYNCK et al. (1993). These authors describe two separate food chains in the Westerschelde: a photo-autotrophic coastal food chain in the polyhaline zone and a heterotrophic chain in the mesohaline zone. Thus, in the Schelde and Ems estuaries, the high biomass values of suspension feeders (*C. edule* and *M. arenaria*) can be explained by a high primary production in the polyhaline zone (e.g. KROMKAMP et al.

1995). In the mesohaline zone deposit feeders are favoured by the riverine input of large amounts of suspended matter (detritus). In the Schelde estuary this is reflected in the presence of mainly opportunistic, short-living, smaller species, occurring in very high densities (e.g. *P. elegans*, *C. volutator*, *H. filiformis*). Besides food availability, also the dynamic environment probably favours these opportunistic species and inhibits the presence of stable populations of longer living animals. The macrobenthic trophic structure in the meso- and oligohaline zones of the Ems estuary (Dollard region) appears, however, more diverse than in the Schelde estuary, also containing a substantial portion of suspension feeders (*M. arenaria*). Besides the less dynamic environment, large amounts of microphytobenthos, which are resuspended in the watercolumn by wind or tidal driven fluxes, may here provide a source of primary production to be consumed by suspension feeders (DE JONGE 1992). The contribution of resuspended microphytobenthos to the total primary production in the Schelde estuary is as yet unknown, but it may be significant (DE JONGE & DE JONGE 1995). In addition, high concentrations of suspended matter may hamper the occurrence of suspension feeders in the mesohaline zone of the Schelde estuary.

Data on European freshwater tidal habitats are very scarce, not only for the benthic compartment, but for the whole ecosystem (ODUM 1988). Based on CASPERS (1948) and WOLFF (1973) for the Elbe estuary (Germany) and the former Biesbosch (The Netherlands), respectively, the benthic community of the freshwater tidal area is expected to contain more than 30 species, eight of which belong to Oligochaeta, ten to Chironomidae, eight to molluscs and four to crustaceans. The benthic community of the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones of both Schelde and Ems estuaries can therefore be characterized as impoverished communities dominated by Oligochaeta, which are more pronounced in the Schelde estuary. Elevated concentrations of pollutants observed in the Schelde estuary (VAN ECK et al. 1991; VAN ZOEST & VAN ECK 1993; ZWOLSMAN & VAN ECK 1993), and the fact that large parts of the system are often completely anoxic, especially during summer time (VAN DAMME et al. 1995), may account for this. The almost exclusive dominance of Oligochaeta often observed in the upper parts of other estuaries can also be attributed mostly to organic enrichment associated with severe oxygen depletion (MCLUSKY et al. 1980; MCLUSKY 1987; SHILLABEER & TAPP 1989).

MEES et al. (1995), who report on the hyperbenthos in the Schelde, Ems and Gironde estuaries, find that the low salinity hyperbenthic community is completely absent in the Schelde estuary, but present in the other two estuaries. These authors attribute this absence in the Schelde estuary to oxygen deficiency. They also mention a shift towards higher salinity zones for several brackish species like *Neomysis integer*, *Mesopodopsis slabberi*, *Pomatoschistus microps* and *Gammarus salinus*.



An improvement in water and sediment quality in the Schelde estuary will re-establish a more diverse freshwater community and will allow euryhaline species to penetrate further upstream in the estuary. This is already observed in the upper Forth estuary (Scotland) where a reduction in the organic inflow has resulted in a reduction in oligochaete numbers and a further penetration intertidally of some euryhaline and brackish water species like *N. diversicolor*, *C. vultuator* and *M. aestuarina* (MCLUSKY et al. 1993). Also in the Tees estuary (northeast England) an increase in diversity and abundance with a penetration of marine fauna into the estuary is observed after water quality improvements (SHILLABEER & TAPP 1989). It must be stressed that a recovery of benthic and fish communities in these reaches of the estuary not only depends on a good water quality but also on the presence of sufficient natural habitats. Due to the direct loss of habitats by channelization and reclamation, this is hampered in several estuaries (e.g. Weser estuary, SCHUCHARDT et al. 1993).

Conclusions

Both in the Schelde estuary and to a lesser extent also in the Ems estuary, anthropogenic stress appears to affect the intertidal macrobenthic communities in a negative way in the oligohaline/freshwater tidal zone. In the mesohaline zone, the Schelde estuary is dominated by high numbers of short-living, opportunistic species, whereas in the Ems estuary relatively more stable macrobenthic communities are observed. This is probably more related with higher physical stress (both natural and anthropogenic) in this zone of the Schelde estuary than with pollution effects. Genuine brackish water species are not common in both estuaries, which can also be attributed to the environmental deterioration due to human impacts (MICHAELIS et al. 1992).

In comparison with other European estuaries, diversity, density and biomass are often higher in the poly- and mesohaline reaches of the Schelde and Ems estuary. The dominating macrobenthic species in most of the European estuaries are very similar and all showed a high tolerance towards the high-frequency/high-amplitude variations of the estuarine environment, inhabited a wide range of habitats and showed, in certain life stages, a high degree of mobility (dispersion). These possible 'keystone' organisms can contribute to the estuarine ecosystem resilience by modifying the impact on the ecosystem structure resulting from environmental changes (COSTANZA et al. 1993) and their role in the functioning of the estuarine ecosystem should be studied in more detail in the future. The limited amount of present data on the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones of European estuaries show in most cases an impoverished fauna, suffering mainly from a high organic enrichment in this part of the estuary. Pollution effects are however not always directly visible. More research should be undertaken on chronic effects (e.g. hampered repro-

duction or decreased growth rate) of pollution. Estuarine management should also pay special attention to the morphological structure of the estuarine system. Changes in the physical nature of the estuary (e.g. reclamation, canalization, dredging) will certainly affect the survival of the estuarine ecosystem, directly and indirectly. A thorough understanding of both the natural and anthropogenic stress acting on macrobenthic communities in estuaries is therefore necessary.

Acknowledgements

This study was supported by Rijkswaterstaat, National Institute for Coastal and Marine Management/RIKZ (project PROEST). We thank all the people who provided additional macrofauna data. We especially thank the other institutes who let us use their data. We thank Ian Lawler for providing macrobenthic data on the Shannon estuary. Mr. Job Jungcurt (RIKZ, Haren) is thanked for making Figure 6.1.



Chapter 7

The subtidal macrobenthos in the mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary (Belgium): influenced by man?

T.Ysebaert, L. De Neve and P. Meire

Abstract

The macrobenthos of the subtidal, mesohaline zone of the Schelde estuary (Belgium) was sampled in October 1996 and 1997 at 54 and 73 sampling locations respectively. Sediments ranged from silty to very coarse, with the dominant sediment type being silt (33% of all locations). Of the 35 macrobenthic species observed, only seven species occurred in more than 20% of the samples. The polychaete *Heteromastus filiformis* and Oligochaeta were most common. Multivariate techniques revealed three distinct communities, linked mainly with sedimentological factors: (1) a species-poor (9 species) community with a dominance of the amphipod *Bathyporeia pilosa*, a low mean abun-

dance and biomass (86 ind m⁻², 0.0189 g AFDW m⁻²), and a mean median grain size of 215 ± 19 µm (fine sand); (2) a species-rich (22) community, with the small polychaete *Polydora ligerica* as indicator species, a relatively high mean abundance and biomass (2298 ind m⁻², 1.395 g AFDW m⁻², oysters excluded), a mean median grain size of 133 ± 41 µm, and also the occurrence of sediments with hard substrates being characteristic for this community; (3) a community with an intermediate species richness (12), abundance and biomass (248 ind m⁻²; 0.249 g AFDW m⁻²), with *H. filiformis* and Oligochaeta as indicator species, and a median grain size of 76 ± 9 µm. In the study area several typical brackish water species were observed (e.g. *Polydora ligerica*, *Corophium lacustre*, *Gammarus salinus*).

Mean total abundance and biomass were very low, and the benthic communities appeared to be under stress, with a dominance of mainly small, sub-surface deposit and sur-

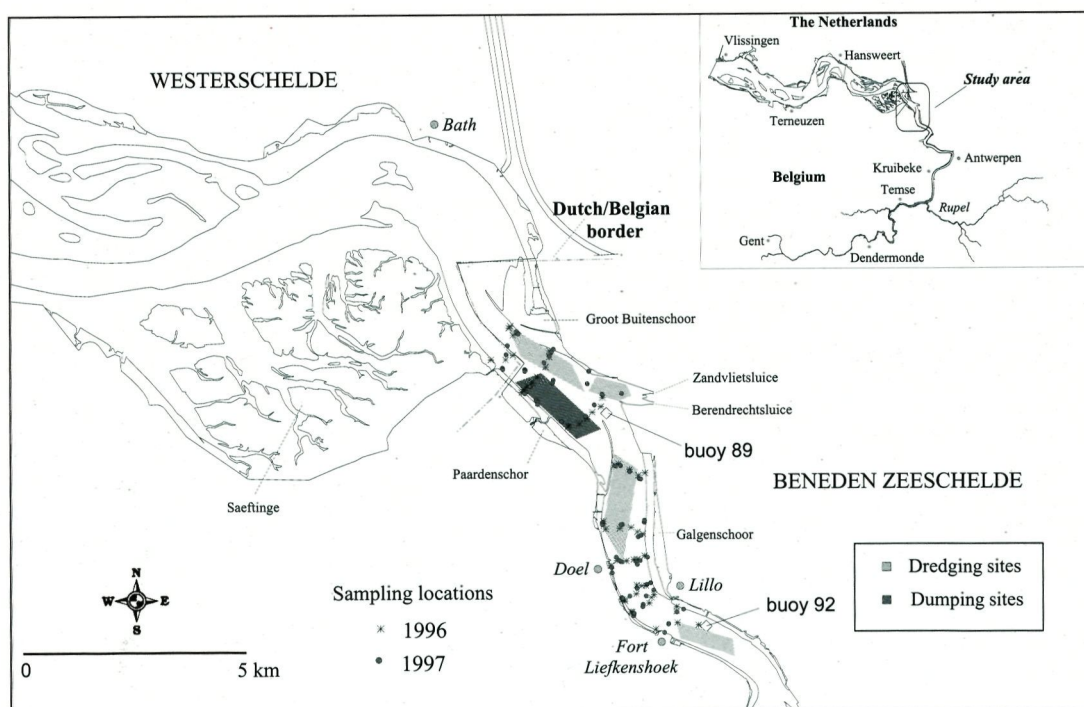


Figure 7.1. Geographical view of the Beneden Zeeschelde area with indication of the 54 and 73 sampling locations in 1996 and 1997, and with the main dredging and dumping sites in this part of the estuary.



face deposit feeding opportunistic species. This is probably a combined effect of both natural physical and human-induced disturbance. Only sediments with hard substrates (e.g. rocks) seem to favour species richness, providing a shelter against physical disturbance.

Introduction

The inner and upper parts of estuaries are often severely impacted by man. Land reclamation results in a high degree of estuarine habitat loss. Drainage of wastewater, dredging for shipping, safety constructions (e.g. dykes, storm surge barriers), fixation of banks, etc. change the chemical and physical properties of these estuarine habitats (COSTANZA et al. 1993; GRAY 1997).

The Schelde estuary is one of the larger NW-European estuaries with a complete salinity gradient, including a large freshwater tidal area. Especially the part between the Dutch-Belgian border and the Rupel is severely impacted and heavily polluted by domestic, industrial and agricultural waste loads and the concentrations of micropollutants are high (VAN ECK & DE ROOIJ 1993; SOETAERT & HERMAN 1995a,b; ZWOLSMAN 1999). From the 1980's on water quality has started to improve slowly, and this improvement continues in the 1990's (VAN DAMME et al. 1995; VAN ECK et al. 1998). Near the Dutch-Belgian border, the large industrialized area of the harbour of Antwerpen is situated. Being a major sedimentation area, this zone is dredged intensively in order to keep it accessible for navigation (CLAESSENS et al. 1991). The last decade several harbour infrastructures (e.g. container terminals) have been constructed in the area, and a further deepening of the shipping channel has been undertaken.

Although the intertidal macrobenthic communities along the Schelde estuary are well known (e.g. YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a), recent data about the spatial distribution of macrobenthos in the mesohaline subtidal part of the Zeeschelde were lacking almost completely thus far. However, knowledge of the present status of the macrobenthos in this part of the estuary could give an indication of the present ecosystem health, since benthos is recognized as a suitable ecological group for monitoring and detecting effects of stress and pollution (e.g. PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978; BOESCH & ROSENBERG 1981; WARWICK & CLARK 1993; DIAZ & ROSENBERG 1995; GASTON et al. 1998).

In this study the spatial distribution of macrobenthic communities in the mesohaline subtidal part of the Zeeschelde is described based on data collected in 1996 and 1997. The results are compared with the species diversity along the complete Schelde salinity gradient and with data from 1952 (LELOUP & KONIETZKO 1956). Possible effects on benthic communities of dredging operations and other anthropogenic influences, like the occurrence of hard substrates within the sediment are discussed.

Materials and methods

Study area

The Schelde estuary, a macrotidal coastal plain estuary, is situated near the border between The Netherlands and Belgium. It measures 160 km with a surface area of approximately 350 km². The Westerschelde (55 km) represents the downstream Dutch part with the poly-/mesohaline zone of the estuary; the Zeeschelde (105 km), the Belgian part of the Schelde estuary, represents the meso-/oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones (Figure 7.1). The mean tidal range is 3.8 m in Vlissingen, 5.2 m in Antwerpen and 2.0 m in Gent.

The study area is situated in the maximum turbidity and mesohaline zone of the Zeeschelde (BAEYENS et al. 1998; FETTWEIS et al. 1998), between the Dutch-Belgian border and Fort Liefkenshoek (Figure 7.1). In this part of the estuary mean tidal range is about 4.94 m.

Sampling and laboratory analysis

Temperature, salinity and oxygen concentrations were measured monthly at two buoys in the study area (Figure 7.1). The macrobenthos was sampled in October 1996 and October 1997 in respectively 9 and 10 transects (Figure 7.1). In every transect about 6-7 locations were sampled, divided over three depth strata (<2.95 m; 2.95-7.95 m; >7.95 m below MLLWS). In total 54 and 73 locations were sampled in 1996 and 1997. On each location one Van Veen grab (0.105 m²) was taken, from which one small core (Ø 2 cm) for sediment analysis was taken. The benthic samples were sieved through a 1 mm mesh in the field and preserved in neutralized formalin. Position and water depth of the grab sample were noted.

In the laboratory samples were sorted after staining with 0.02% Rose Bengal. All organisms were identified to species level, except for the genus *Ostrea*, the *Oligochaeta* and one *Spionid* specimen, and counted. The ash-free dry weight (AFDW) biomass was obtained by drying all specimens at 105°C for 12 h and ashing them at 550°C.

Sediment characteristics (median grain size, mud content (volume % <63 µm) were determined by laser diffraction with a Malvern Mastersizer S. Six sediment types were distinguished, according to KRAMER et al. (1994). Sediment samples containing hard substrates (e.g. stones) were all classified as type 7. Maximum ebb and flood current velocities were estimated for an average tide with the hydrodynamical model SCALDIS (VAN DER MEULEN & SILEON 1997), having a spatial resolution of 100 m.

Data analysis

Macrobenthic species were classified into trophic groups based on the food source: sub-surface deposit feeders (SSDF), surface deposit feeders (SDF), suspension feeders



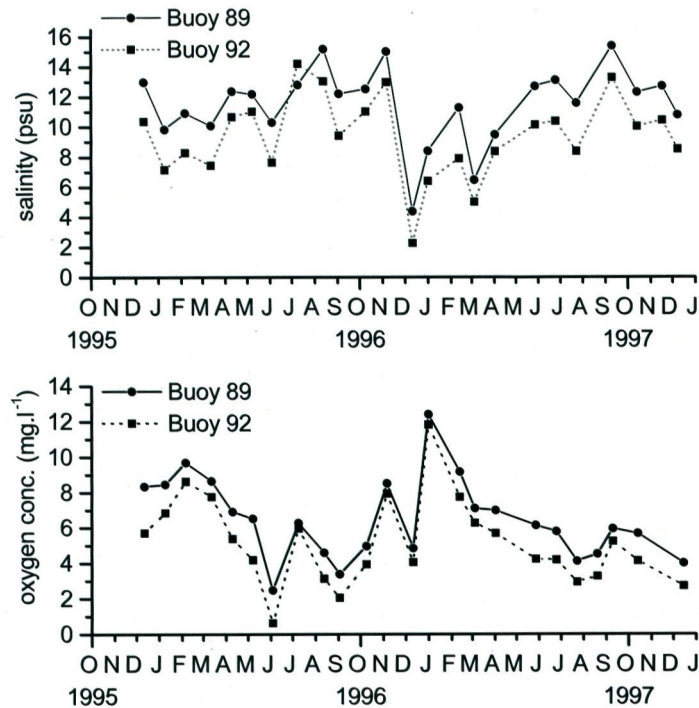


Figure 7.2. Monthly measurements of salinity and oxygen concentrations at buoy 89 and 92 within the study area (for geographic positions of the buoys, see Figure 1).

(SF), omnivores (O) and predators (P). Spionid species and *Macoma balthica* (Linnaeus) were classified as SDF-SF, as these species may switch between both feeding types.

The abundance/biomass comparison method - ABC (*k*-dominance curves for species abundance and biomass (LAMBSHEAD et al. 1983) was used to detect environmental stress (WARWICK 1986; MEIRE & DEREU 1990).

To identify groups of similar locations the following analyses were performed on the density datasets of 1996, 1997 and 1996-1997 together (fourth root transformed): a classification (clustering based on the Bray-Curtis similarity index and Group Average Sorting - GAS) (CLIFFORD & STEPHENSON 1975), an ordination (Multi Dimensional Scaling - MDS) (KRUSKAL & WISH 1978), and a hybrid technique (Two-Way Indicator Species Analysis - TWINSpan) (HILL 1979). Cut-levels used were 0, 2.0, 2.3, 2.7, 3.5, 4.5. Rare species (single observation), the epibenthic shrimps *Crangon crangon* (Linnaeus) and *Palaemon longirostris* (Milne Edwards), empty samples (3 in 1996, 5 in 1997) and samples with only one individual were excluded from the analyses. The relationship between the spatial distribution of the locations in the MDS ordination and the environmental variables was indicated by a Spearman Rank Order Correlation between the axes from the ordination and the environmental variables. The clusters, resulting from the multivariate analyses, were characterized by their typical species composition, diversity (Shannon Wiener diversity index H') and the environmental variables. Statistical differences for biotic and abiotic variables among groups were analysed by Kruskal-Wallis test. Mean values are given with standard error (SE).

Results

Abiotic characterization of the sampling locations

Water quality measurements at the two buoys in the study area (Figure 7.1) showed a strong seasonal pattern in water temperature and smaller seasonal fluctuations in salinity and oxygen concentrations, which were related to the river runoff, being higher in winter (Figure 7.2). The area was mesohaline (yearly average 1996: 10.5 psu; 1997: 10.1 psu) throughout the year (one exception in December 1996). Oxygen concentrations were often less than 5 mg O₂ l⁻¹, especially in summer.

Mean median grain size and mean mud content were $141 \pm 19 \mu\text{m}$ and $38 \pm 4\%$ respectively, both showing a large variation. In both years the dominant sediment type was silt (Table 7.1). 5.5% in 1996 and 12% in 1997 belonged to the sediment types medium sand (250-500 μm) and coarse sand (500-1000 μm), hereafter considered together as the sediment type medium-coarse sand. 13% in 1996 and 20.5% in 1997 of the samples were of sediments with hard substrates. Mud fraction slightly decreased and median grain size slightly increased with depth, but there was no significant correlation with depth (median grain size: Spearman $R=0.18$; $P=0.06$ and mud fraction: Spearman $R=-0.17$; $P=0.08$; $N=86$).

Based on model calculations, mean maximum ebb and flood current velocities were $0.886 \pm 0.06 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ and 0.786



Table 7.1. Sediment types, based on median grain size, of the subtidal sampling locations in 1996 (N=54) and 1997 (N=73) respectively.

Sediment type		Range (μm)	1996		1997	
			# samples	%	# samples	%
type 1	clay	< 2	0	0.0	0	0.0
type 2	silt	2 - 63	18	33.3	24	32.9
type 3	very fine sand	63 - 125	9	16.7	9	12.3
type 4	fine sand	125 - 250	17	31.5	16	21.9
type 5	medium sand	250 - 500	3	5.5	7	9.6
type 6	coarse sand	500 - 1000	0	0.0	2	2.7
type 7	hard substrate	--	7	13.0	15	20.5

$\pm 0.020 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ (N=127) respectively. Only at three locations the model calculated current velocities lower than 0.20 m s^{-1} . Highest current velocities observed were 1.23 and 1.16 m s^{-1} under ebb and flood conditions respectively. No correlation was found between current velocities and depth (N=127; Spearman $R=0.13$; $P=0.16$), nor between current velocities and median grain size (N=106; Spearman $R=0.13$; $P=0.20$) or mud content (N=106; Spearman $R=-0.12$; $P=0.22$).

General characteristics of the macrobenthic fauna

Of the 35 species observed (28 in 1996; 24 in 1997), 31% were annelids, 26% molluscs and 43% arthropods (Table 7.2). Only seven species occurred in more than 20% of the samples. The polychaete *Heteromastus filiformis* (Claparède) (65% of the samples in 1996, 33% in 1997) and *Oligochaeta* (61.5% in 1996, 50.7% in 1997) were most common. Six species were observed only once. The number of species per location was low (Figure 7.3); locations with one or two species were most common (44%).

The mean total density of all locations was $681 \pm 171 \text{ ind m}^{-2}$, the mean density in 1996 ($861 \pm 341 \text{ ind m}^{-2}$) was noticeable higher than in 1997 ($549 \pm 158 \text{ ind m}^{-2}$), although not significantly (Mann-Whitney U-test: N(1996)=54; N(1997)=73; $U=1720$; $P=0.2227$). Densities were dominated by annelids (87% of the total density; 89% in 1996; 84% in 1997) (Table 7.2). Arthropods occurred to a lesser extent and molluscs occurred only in very low densities (Figure 7.4). Most locations had a total density between 100-1000 ind m^{-2} in 1996 (42%) and between 10-100 ind m^{-2} in 1997 (44%) (Figure 7.3). Highest densities observed were 17352 and 9286 ind m^{-2} in 1996 and 1997 respectively.

The mean total biomass of all locations was $0.94 \pm 0.35 \text{ g AFDW m}^{-2}$. In 1996 mean biomass ($1.26 \pm 0.75 \text{ g AFDW m}^{-2}$) was higher than in 1997 ($0.68 \pm 0.24 \text{ g AFDW m}^{-2}$), although not significantly (Mann-Whitney U-test: N(1996)=54; N(1997)=73; $U=1911.5$; $P=0.77$). The difference in biomass was caused by the high biomass of a few

oysters (*Crassostrea angulata* (Lamarck) and *Ostrea* spp. found at 3 and 2 sampling locations in 1996 and 1997 respectively, and making 67% of total biomass in 1996 and only 20% of total biomass in 1997. If oysters were removed from the dataset, mean biomass of both years was more comparable (1996: $0.41 \pm 0.13 \text{ g AFDW m}^{-2}$ 1997: $0.55 \pm 0.16 \text{ g AFDW m}^{-2}$). Contrary to density, biomass was not only dominated by annelids (1996: 50%; 1997: 30%), but also by arthropods (1996: 42%; 1997: 66%) (Figure 7.4). The dominant annelids were *Polydora ligierica* (Ferronière) and *H. filiformis*; the dominant arthropods were *Crangon crangon* and *Palaemon longirostris* (Table 7.2). It should be emphasized that these arthropods were all epibenthic species, and therefore do not belong to the sedentary infauna. Most locations (55%) had a total biomass between 0.01-1 g AFDW m^{-2} (Figure 7.3), with a maximum of 40 g AFDW m^{-2} (a location with 12 oysters) in 1996 and 15 g AFDW m^{-2} in 1997.

The macrobenthic community was numerically dominated by SDF-SF species (59%), which were mainly the spionids *Polydora ligierica* and *Polydora ligni* (Webster). The other important group were SSDF with 29%, being represented by *H. filiformis* and *Oligochaeta*. Suspension feeders (oysters) dominated the biomass (47%), but when these few oysters were excluded predators dominated (55%), followed by SDF-SF (spionids) with 20%. The predators were mainly the epibenthic shrimps *C. crangon* and *P. longirostris*, not being a permanent part of the benthic infauna.

The k-dominance curves for species abundance and biomass (besides oysters) (ABC-curves) showed a stressed pattern, as indicated by the abundance curve falling above the biomass curve (Figure 7.5). This means that the benthic community was dominated by one or a few very small species and only a few larger species were present.

Community structure and environmental variables

The multivariate analyses did not produce a distinction between the datasets of 1996 and 1997. Therefore the



Table 7.2. Number of observations (%), mean density (ind m⁻²) and mean biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) of all macrobenthic species observed in the subtidal, mesohaline zone of the Zeeschelde estuary in 1996 (N=54) and 1997 (N=73) respectively.

	1996			1997		
	# observations	Density	Biomass	# observations	Density	Biomass
	%	ind m ⁻²	g AFDW m ⁻²	%	ind m ⁻²	g AFDW m ⁻²
Annelida						
<i>Eteone longa</i> (P)	5.5	0.9	0.0004	*	*	*
<i>Harmothoe impar</i> (P)	3.6	0.4	0.0004	1.4	0.1	0.0001
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i> (DF)	65.5	143.4	0.0575	32.9	74.4	0.0642
<i>Marenzelleria</i> spp. (P)	1.8	0.4	-	1.4	0.3	*
<i>Nereis diversicolor</i> (O)	*	*	*	1.4	0.1	0.0001
<i>Nereis succinea</i> (DF)	25.5	23.0	0.0492	26.0	22.2	0.0403
<i>Oligochaeta</i> (DF)	61.5	58.2	0.0015	50.7	72.3	0.0014
<i>Polydora ligérica</i> (SDF-SF)	34.5	479.6	0.0908	27.4	232.0	0.0501
<i>Polydora ligni</i> (SDF-SF)	23.6	47.0	0.0085	27.4	55.3	0.0077
<i>Pygospio elegans</i> (SDF-SF)	16.4	4.2	0.0002	15.0	6.0	0.0016
<i>Spionidae</i> spp. (SDF-SF)	1.8	0.2	-	*	*	*
Mollusca						
<i>Barnea candida</i> (SF)	1.8	0.4	0.0040	*	*	*
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i> (SF)	1.8	0.2	0.0004	*	*	*
<i>Crassostrea angulata</i> (SF)	5.5	2.4	0.8432	*	*	*
<i>Hydrobia ulvae</i> (SDF)	3.6	0.4	0.0001	*	*	*
<i>Macoma balthica</i> (SDF-SF)	16.4	2.9	0.0267	16.4	3.3	0.0206
<i>Mya arenaria</i> (SF)	9.1	2.1	0.0037	4.1	1.2	0.0004
<i>Mytilus edulis</i> (SF)	7.3	1.0	0.0002	2.7	0.4	0.0006
<i>Ostrea</i> spp. (SF)	*	*	*	2.7	0.4	0.1337
<i>Petricola pholadiformis</i> (SF)	*	*	0.0004	1.4	0.4	-
Arthropoda						
<i>Bathyporeia elegans</i> (SDF)	7.3	0.9	0.0002	1.4	0.1	0.0000
<i>Bathyporeia pilosa</i> (SDF)	31.0	23.4	0.0023	22.0	5.9	0.0004
<i>Corophium insidiosum</i> (SDF)	11.0	8.3	0.0005	13.7	5.7	0.0002
<i>Corophium lacustre</i> (SDF)	14.5	15.2	0.0019	13.7	16.2	0.0016
<i>Corophium volutator</i> (SDF)	23.6	23.7	0.0049	32.9	38.4	0.0055
<i>Crangon crangon</i> (P)	14.5	1.4	0.0517	15.1	1.8	0.1755
<i>Eurydice pulchra</i> (P)	9.1	1.9	0.0015	9.6	1.0	0.0022
<i>Gammarus salinus</i> (O)	1.8	0.2	0.0003	4.1	1.3	0.0011
<i>Melita palmata</i> (SDF)	1.8	0.2	0.0004	1.4	0.3	0.0006
<i>Mesopodopsis slabberii</i> (O)	3.6	0.4	0.0001	5.5	0.7	0.0000
<i>Neomysis integer</i> (O)	1.8	0.2	-	*	*	*
<i>Palaemon longirostris</i> (P)	3.6	0.5	0.0845	9.6	1.0	0.1241
<i>Pleusymtes glaber</i> (SDF)	12.7	4.8	0.0008	15.1	8.7	0.0011
<i>Rhithropanopeus harrisii</i> (P)	3.6	0.5	0.0186	9.6	1.3	0.0481
<i>Balanus</i> spp. (SF)	Present			present		

*, not found; -, not determined

further analysis and discussion of community structure is based on the data of both years together. Both Twinspan and Cluster analyses produced three clusters, which also returned in the MDS ordination (Figure 7.6A). In the GAS-classification the first cluster (cluster 1) was separated at a 15% similarity, the two remaining at a 35% similarity. 16 locations mutually showed very little similarity and did not form a cluster. These locations were considered as group 4 (restgroup).

Neither macrobenthos species richness, density, biomass, nor one of the MDS-axes were significantly correlated with depth (Table 7.3). On the other hand, mud content was significantly correlated with macrobenthos species richness and density, being highest for the silt type sediment. Both axes of the MDS ordination were significantly correlated with mud content and median grain size, indicating that the distribution of the samples in the MDS ordination was mainly determined by the sediment parame-



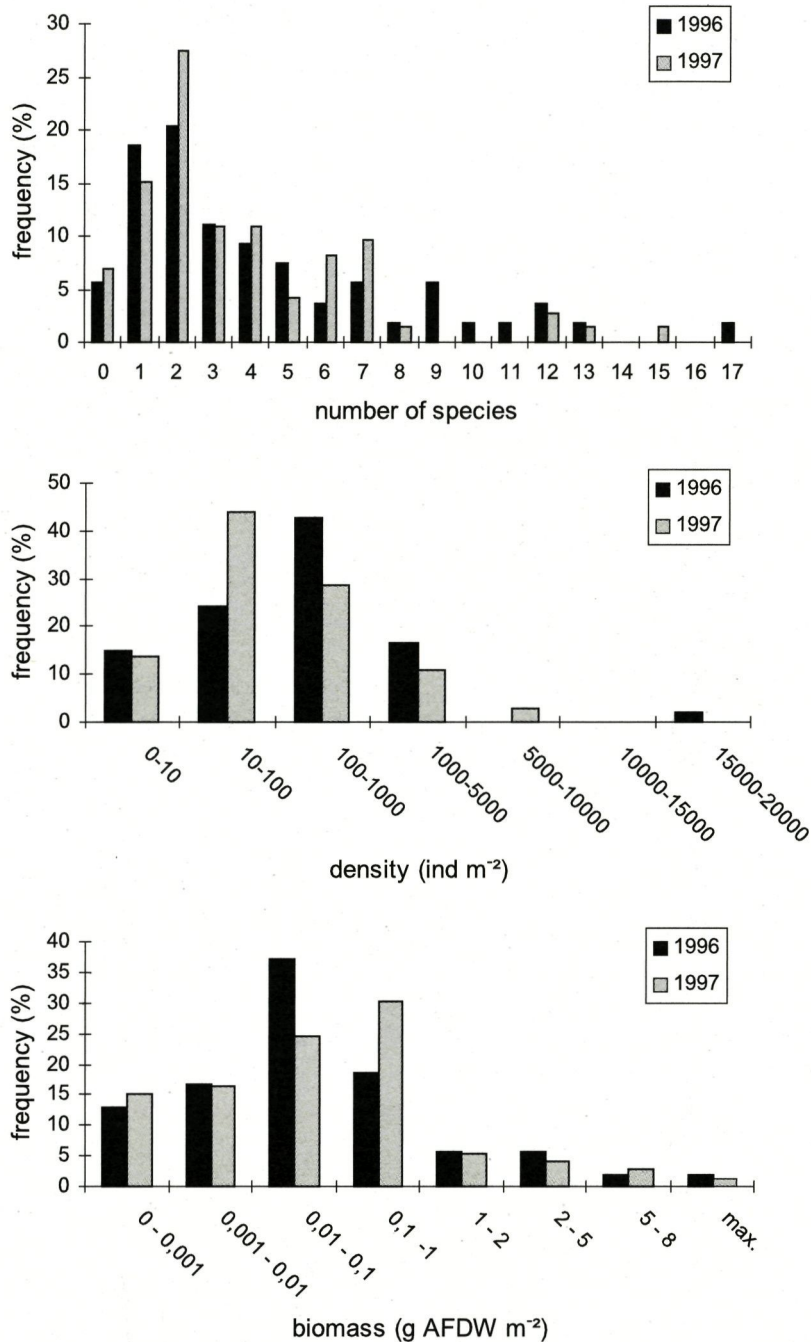


Figure 7.3. Species distribution (%), density distribution (%) and biomass distribution (%) of the 54 and 73 sampling locations in 1996 and 1997 respectively.

ters. The superimposed sediment types on the ordination (Figure 7.6B) showed a clear tendency of grouping. Cluster 1 mostly occurred on fine sand sediment (70%), cluster 2 on silt (34%) and hard substrate (34%) sediments, and cluster 3 mainly on silt (58%) - very fine sand (39%) sediments.

The ABC-curves for each cluster separately showed a similar stressed pattern as observed for all sampling locations together (see Figure 7.5). The abiotic and biotic characteristics of the three clusters and the statistical difference among the clusters are summarized in Table 7.4. Cluster

1 was characterized by a species-poor benthic fauna with a typical dominance of the amphipod *Bathyporeia pilosa* (Lindström) (Figure 7.7A, 7.8A). Cluster 2 consisted of locations with a relatively species-rich benthic fauna with a high mean density and biomass. The small polychaete *Polydora ligierica* was the indicator species (Figure 7.7B, 7.8B). Oysters occurred exclusively in this cluster, explaining the relatively high biomass. Cluster 3 was characterized by intermediate species richness, density and biomass. The indicator species of this cluster were *Heteromastus filiformis*

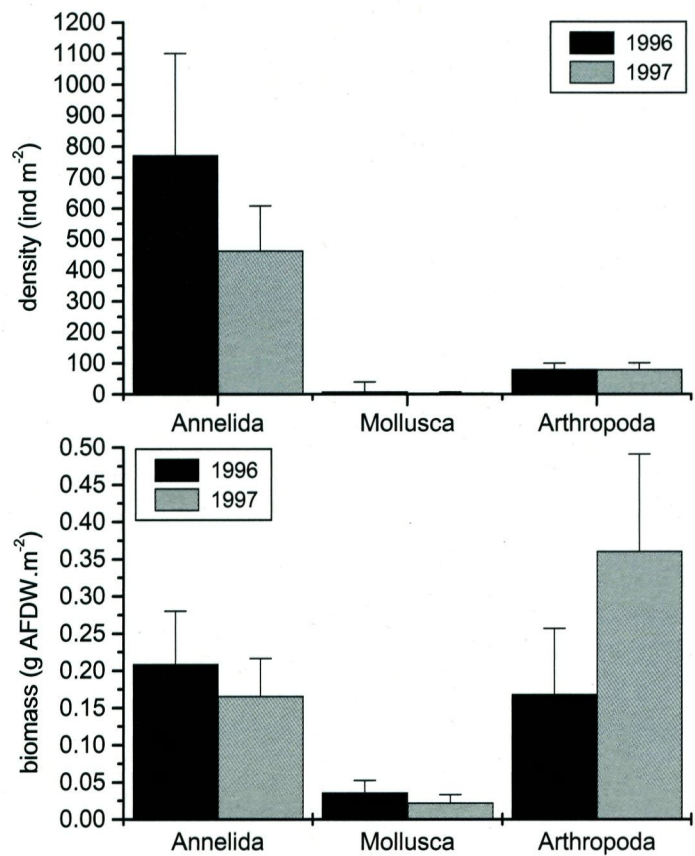


Figure 7.4. Mean density (ind m⁻²) and mean biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) of Annelida, Mollusca and Arthropoda in 1996 and 1997. The biomass of oysters is not included in the mean total biomass of the Mollusca.

and Oligochaeta (Figure 7.7C,D and 7.8C). *Macoma balthica*, only present in low densities, appeared almost exclusively in cluster 3. Sediment characteristics were significantly different among the three clusters, depth was not significantly different.

Of group 4, 37% of the locations were situated in the silt sediment type, 30% on hard substrates, and the remain-

ing locations in the other sediment types. Generally the samples contained few species in low densities. Characteristically 57% of the locations of group 4 were found in the depth stratum >7.5 m, with a mean depth of 9.5 ± 1.4 m, which was noticeably deeper than the mean depth of the three clusters.

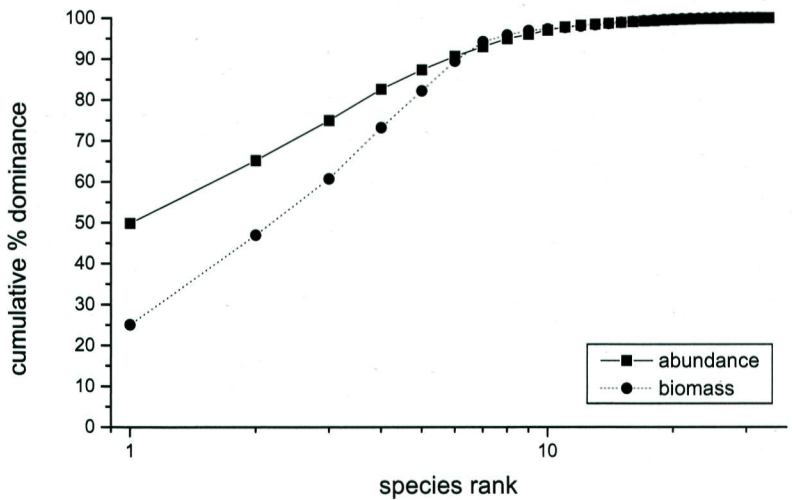


Figure 7.5. Combined *k*-dominance curves for species abundance and biomass (ABC-curve), based on all sampling locations (1996 and 1997 together).



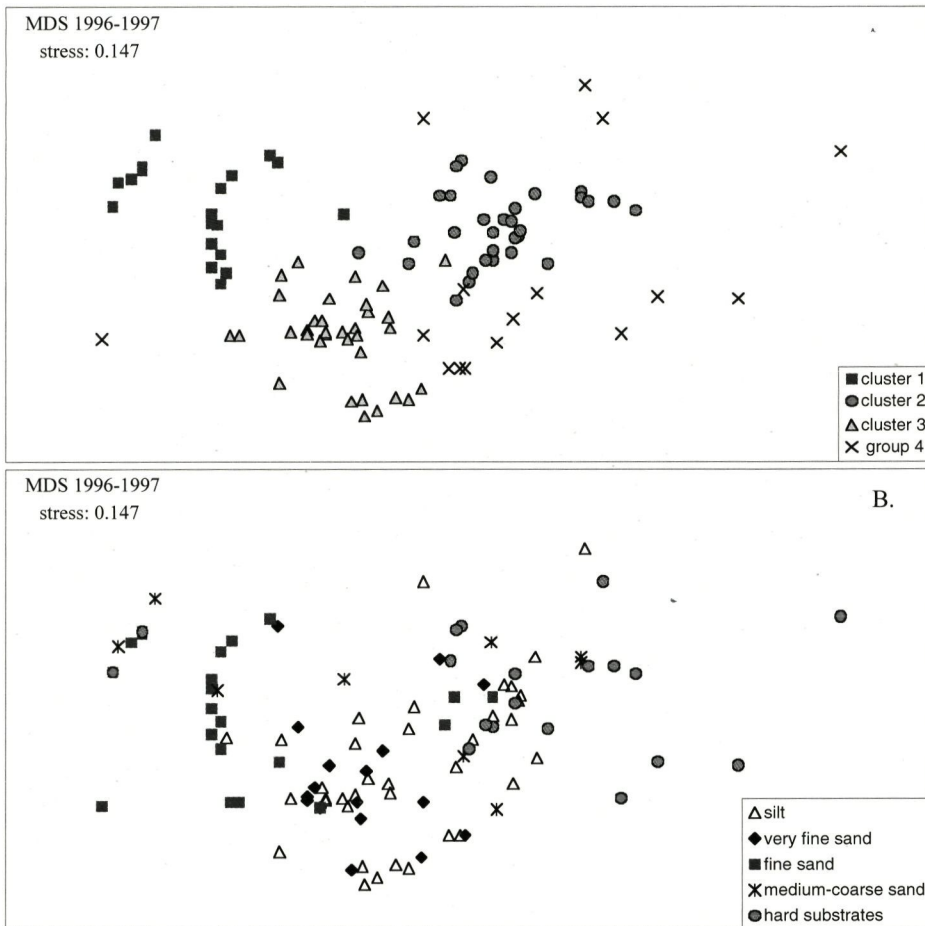


Figure 7.6. MDS ordination of species density data from 1996 and 1997 together. A. Clusters superimposed on the ordination. B. Sediment types superimposed on the ordination.

Discussion

Species diversity along the salinity gradient in the Schelde estuary

The most important variables controlling the occurrence of benthic organisms on an estuarine scale are salinity and sediment characteristics (e.g. WOLFF 1973; BOESCH 1977; HOLLAND et al. 1987; RAKOCINSKI et al. 1997; YSEBAERT et al. 1998a), which are in turn determined largely by hydrodynamic conditions (e.g. WILDISH & KRISTMANSON 1979; WARWICK & UNCLES 1980; WARWICK et al. 1991; HALL 1994). It is assumed that the environmental stress, due to salinity and hydrodynamic conditions, is greatest in the subtidal part of the middle and upper regions of estuaries, resulting in a lower diversity of benthic invertebrates predicted in these areas. The aim of this study was to investigate the macrobenthic community of the subtidal mesohaline part of the Zeeschelde estuary.

SEYS et al. (1999b) recently investigated the benthos of the Zeeschelde, but this study concentrated on Oligochaeta, and therefore was based on only one small sediment core per sampling location (diameter 3.5 cm). Only a few locations were situated within the subtidal

mesohaline part of the Zeeschelde estuary. Apart from two Oligochaeta species found (*Heterochaeta costata* (Claparède) and *Tubificoides heterochaetus* (Michaelsen)), only four macrobenthic species were determined in these locations: *Polydora ligérica*, *Heteromastus filiformis*, *Nereis succinea* (Frey & Leuckart) and *Macoma balthica*. The different sampling method and the small amount of locations may explain the large difference in species number as compared to this study.

The subtidal part of the Westerschelde was recently studied as part of a monitoring programme (e.g. BRUMMELHUIS et al. 1997; CRAEYMEERSCH 1999). For the same period (autumn 1996-1997), 55 macrobenthic species were observed. Species diversity decreased from the polyhaline zone (40 species, 30 sampling locations each year), over the poly-/mesohaline transition zone (31 species, idem) to the α -mesohaline zone (27 species, idem). In this study no further decrease in the number of species was observed in the β -mesohaline part of the estuary. Instead, species diversity slightly increased (35 species). The presence of sediments with hard substrates, often having a high macrobenthic species richness, may account for this. Also, the sampling effort in this study was larger as com-



Table 7.3. Spearman Rank Order Correlations between environmental factors (depth, mud content, median grain size) and the number of species, biomass, density, and MDS X- and Y- co-ordinates. The Spearman R and the P-value are given. Significant correlations at the level $P < 0,05$ are in bold.

	Depth (N=105)		mud fraction (N=86)		median grain size (N=86)	
	R	P	R	P	R	P
Number of species	-0,052	0,60	0,24	0,03	-0,14	0,20
Biomass	-0,108	0,27	0,05	0,63	0,001	0,99
Density	0,04	0,67	0,30	0,005	-0,20	0,05
MDS X co-ordinates	0,15	0,12	0,57	<0,0001	-0,41	<0,0001
MDS Y co-ordinates	0,10	0,31	-0,42	<0,0001	0,39	0,0002

pared to the sampling effort in the monitoring programme of the Westerschelde. When considering the available data from this study for all sampling years (1990-1997), to increase the sampling effort, about 100 taxa were found in the subtidal part of the Westerschelde. The number of species also decreased from the polyhaline (70 species) towards the mesohaline zone (50 species). Therefore, the observed species diversity was also a function of sampling effort. Many species were reported to occur irregularly and rather accidentally, with in general very few species per sampling location, and this was also observed in this study. On the other hand, species diversity 'hot spots' were sometimes observed. In this study one sampling location represented 17 macrobenthic species, half of the total number of species observed.

Species diversity was reported to be much lower in the oligohaline zone of the Zeeschelde, characterized by an impoverished benthic fauna, with a few Oligochaeta spe-

cies and very few macrobenthic species, such as *P. ligERICA* and *Corophium volutator* (Pallas) (YSEBAERT et al. 1993; SEYS et al. 1999b). In the subtidal freshwater tidal zone the community was almost completely composed of a few Oligochaeta species (SEYS et al. 1999b). This very low species diversity was explained by the heavy pollution in the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones of the Zeeschelde.

The subtidal mesohaline part of the Zeeschelde was characterized by some typical 'genuine brackish-water' species, species which according to REMANE (1969) showed a distribution strictly limited to the mixohaline zones without expansion into the marine or freshwater regions (WOLFF 1973 ; MICHAELIS et al. 1992). In our study the observed 'brackish-water' species are the polychaete *Polydora ligERICA*, the amphipods *Gammarus salinus* (Spooner), *Corophium insidiosum* (Crawford) and *Corophium lacustre* (Vanhöffen), the shrimp *Palaemon longirostris* and the crab *Rhithropanopeus harrisi* (Gould). The

Table 7.4. Biotic and abiotic characterization of the three clusters (mean \pm SE), with indication of the test statistic (H) of the Kruskal-Wallis test together with the P-level for differences among the three clusters.

	Cluster 1 (n=23)	Cluster 2 (n=35)	Cluster 3 (n=31)	H	P-level
Total number of species	9	22	12		
Mean number of species	2.3 \pm 0.25	8.8 \pm 0.56	2.9 \pm 0.22	71.245	<0.0001
Shannon-Wiener diversity H'	0.53 \pm 0.079	1.20 \pm 0.097	0.69 \pm 0.069	16.037	0.0003
Mean density (ind m ⁻²)	86 \pm 18	2298 \pm 613	248 \pm 76	40.513	<0.0001
Mean biomass (g AFDW m ⁻²)	0.02 \pm 0.004	3.07 \pm 1.343	0.25 \pm 0.087	44.397	<0.0001
Indicator species (density)					
<i>Bathyporeia pilosa</i>	65 \pm 13	0.6 \pm 0.43	2.7 \pm 1.81	68.873	<0.0001
<i>Polydora ligERICA</i>	5.2 \pm 4.36	1379 \pm 571	0	58.779	<0.0001
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>	2.4 \pm 0.86	234 \pm 143	170 \pm 70	20.876	<0.0001
Oligochaeta	6.3 \pm 4.75	168 \pm 56	54 \pm 11	22.275	<0.0001
Mud content (%)	7.5 \pm 3.38	48 \pm 5.9	48 \pm 4.1	22.509	<0.0001
Median grain size (μ m)	215 \pm 19	133 \pm 41	76 \pm 9	22.776	<0.0001
Depth	6.2 \pm 1.1	6.3 \pm 0.8	5.1 \pm 0.8	0.827	0.661

Mean biomass of cluster 2 with oysters included, without oysters mean biomass amounted to 1.40 \pm 0.372 g AFDW m⁻².



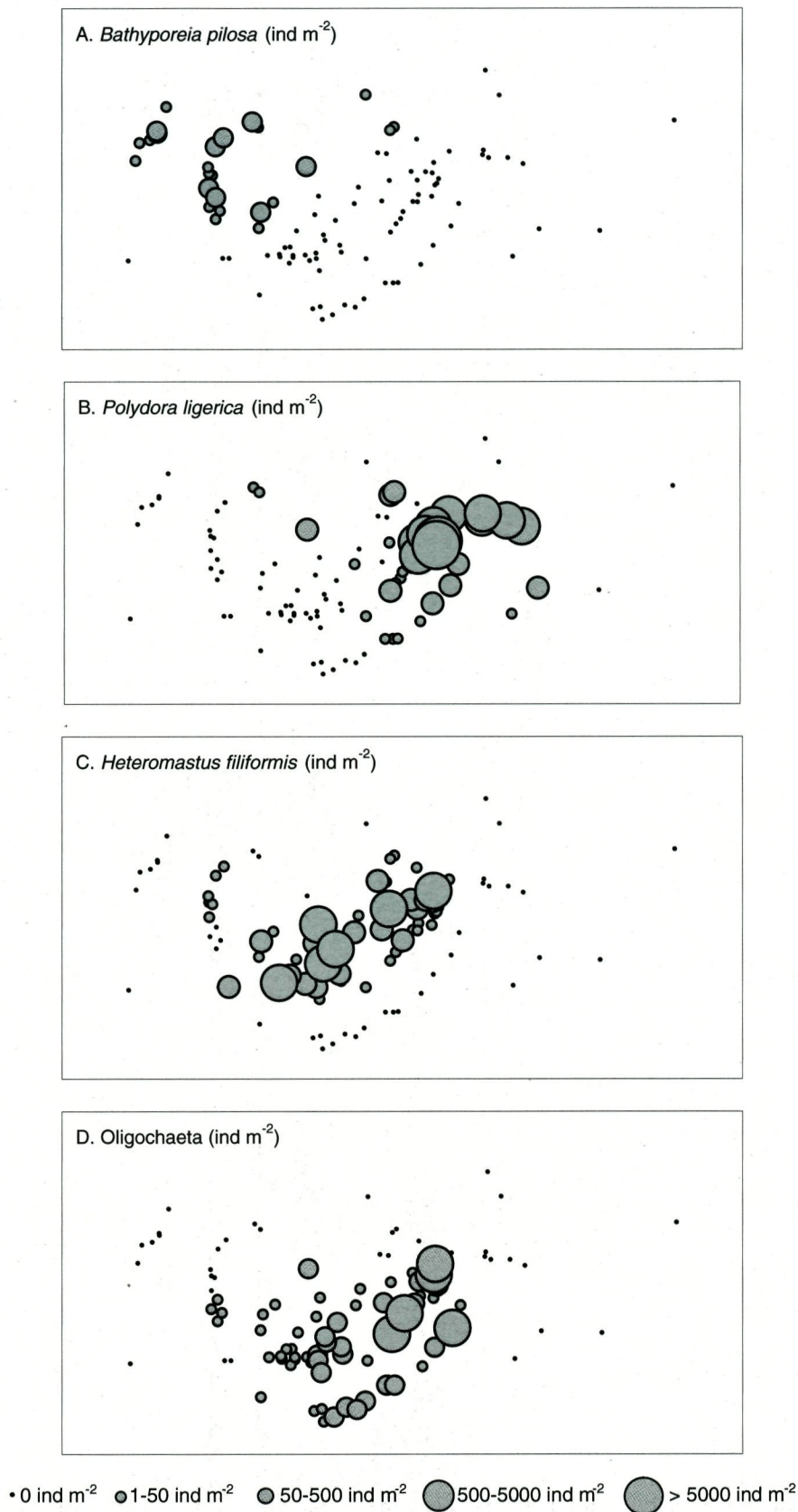


Figure 7.7. MDS configuration from Figure 6 with circles scaled in size to represent individual species density of A. *Bathyporeia pilosa*, B. *Polydora ligérica*, C. *Heteromastus filiformis* and D. *Oligochaeta*.

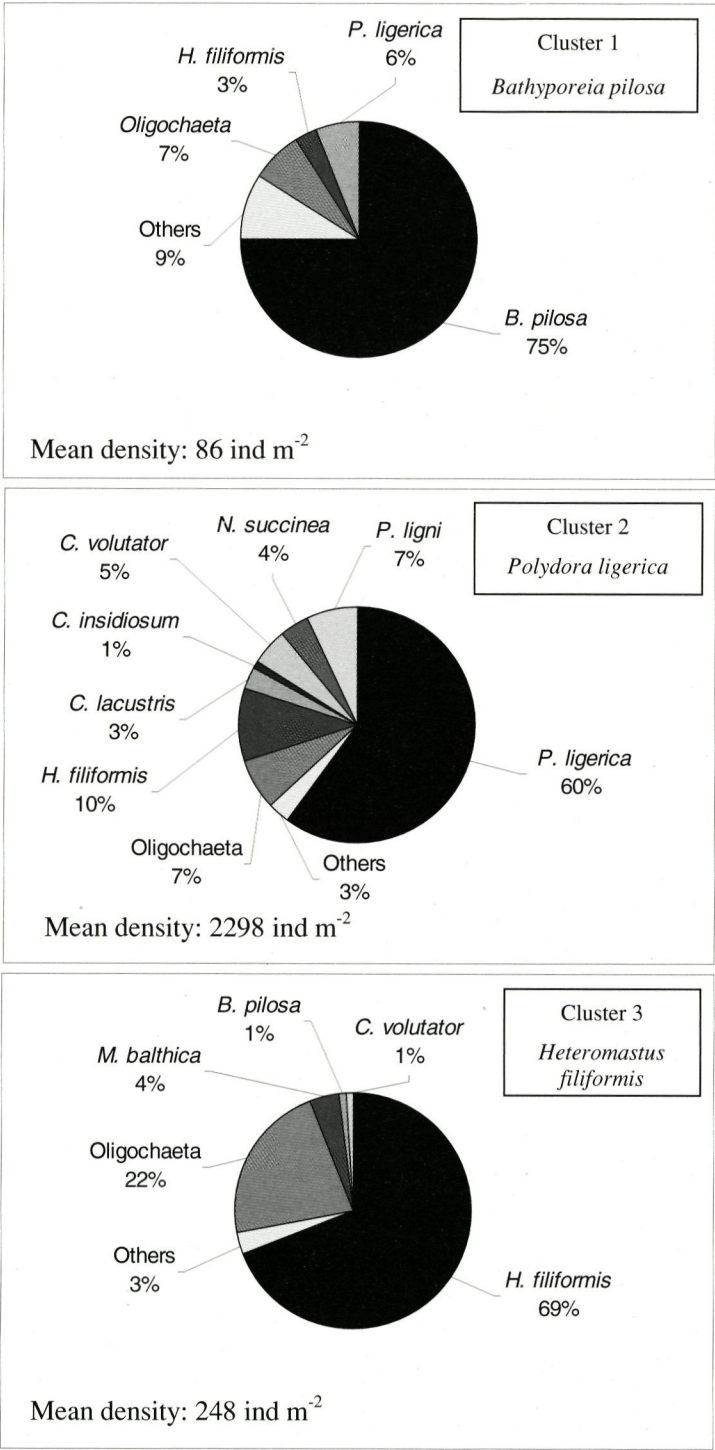


Figure 7.8. Mean species density per cluster based on density data 1996 and 1997 together. For full species names: see Table 7.2.

remaining species were euryhaline and also occurred in the whole Westerschelde. The observation of *Marenzelleria* spp., an immigrant from North-American shores (BASTROP et al. 1997; ESSINK & SCHÖTTLER 1997), and for the first time reported to occur in Europe in 1982 (MCLUSKY et al. 1993), is the most southern observation of *Marenzelleria* to date (YSEBAERT et al. 1996; ESSINK 1999).

Subtidal versus intertidal macrobenthos

The observed species richness of the subtidal zone of the Zeeschelde was higher than that of the intertidal zone, the densities and biomass however were lower. In a study from 1990-1996 on 24 intertidal locations within the study area, 24 species were found, five of which (*Corophium volu-*

tator, *Heteromastus filiformis*, *Nereis diversicolor* (Müller), *Macoma balthica* and *Oligochaeta*) contributed to 96% of mean densities and 99,3% of mean biomass (pers. observ.). The same five species were also found subtidally, but generally at much lower densities. *Polydora ligérica*, the most abundant species of the subtidal zone of the Zeeschelde, was not found intertidally. Total mean intertidal densities were 7000 ± 1060 ind m^{-2} , being dominated by *C. volutator* (37%) and total intertidal mean biomass was 4.79 ± 0.34 g AFDW m^{-2} , being dominated by *N. diversicolor* (40%).

Historical comparison with LELOUP & KONIETZKO (1956)

The macrobenthos of the β -mesohaline part of the Zeeschelde has been studied in 1952 on 21 subtidal locations in the same area of the Zeeschelde (LELOUP & KONIETZKO 1956). At that time anthropogenic pressure was lower but water quality was already bad. The number of species in 1952 (15 species) was lower as compared to this study (35 species), but sampling effort was also lower. Eleven of the taxa were found in both studies. Some recently very abundant species, like *Polydora ligérica* and *Heteromastus filiformis*, were totally absent in 1952. The subtidal macrobenthic community in 1952 resembled cluster 1 of this study, being dominated by *Bathyporeia pilosa*, and showing low mean densities (85 ± 24 ind m^{-2}). Communities of cluster 2 and 3 were nearly absent. As shown in this study, the occurrence of the community of cluster 1 is related to the presence of relatively coarse, sandy sediments. In 1952, the sediment was indeed coarser as compared with this study, as 70% of the sampling locations contained less than 5% of mud (fraction $< 50 \mu m$, determined by sieving).

Human impacts

The mesohaline subtidal zone of the Zeeschelde is by nature characterized by a high degree of 'unstability', caused by large fluctuations in salinity, high current velocities and high turbidity, making an assessment of human impacts on the benthic communities difficult. Human activities, such as the discharge of waste and dredging of sludge, are superimposed on these natural processes and, moreover, interfere with them. The combination of favourable hydrodynamic conditions, several fine suspended matter sources (including a large anthropogenic part), and the flocculation process, leads in salinity zone 2-10 psu to bottom sediments that locally contain high percentages of fine material (BAEYENS et al. 1998). Being a major sedimentary environment, the shipping channel is extensively dredged. The processes of sedimentation and resuspension, at least locally, are probably enhanced by these dredging operations, that increased from 11 million m^2 dredged and 4 million

m^2 dumped in the period 1951-1960 to 20 million m^2 dredged and 11 million m^2 dumped in 1981-1990 (CLAESSENS pers. com.).

The fact that the subtidal zone of the Zeeschelde is a highly stressed environment was in this study confirmed by the very low density and biomass of the macrobenthos, and the most common occurrence of *Heteromastus filiformis* and tubificid *Oligochaeta*, small, sub-surface deposit-feeding, opportunistic species. It was also clear from the ABC-curves that the communities considered were under stress. This provides strong evidence that the communities remain in early succession, and indicates stress or disturbance (e.g. WARWICK 1986; GASTON et al. 1998). The occurrence of three different macrobenthic communities in 1996-1997, two of which are typical for muddy sediments (clusters 2 and 3), might be explained by a difference in origin and magnitude of disturbance. A less common, typically low-diversity community (cluster 1) was found on more sandy sediments, being dominated by the amphipod *Bathyporeia pilosa*, a well adapted inhabitant of unstable, sandy sediments (KHAYRALLAH & JONES 1980). This community is characteristic for the mesohaline, subtidal part of the Schelde estuary, at places where by nature tidal current speeds and instability of the (sandy) sediment become the limiting factors (CRAEYMEERSCH 1999). It was also the only dominant community in 1952.

The dredging and dumping activities might have direct effects (being washed out, being buried) on the occurrence of macrobenthos. 70% of the samples taken at locations where intensive dredging took place (Figure 7.1) belonged to cluster 3, dominated by the capitellid *H. filiformis* and tubificid *Oligochaeta*, which are known to be very tolerant to both physical and chemical (organic enrichment, anoxia) disturbance factors (RAKOCINSKI et al. 1997; GASTON et al. 1998). Although most of the locations from cluster 2 and 3 occurred in silty sediments, species characteristic for cluster 2 (e.g. *Polydora ligérica*) were almost completely absent at dredging and dumping sites.

In the study area also several 'hard substrates' were constructed (e.g. dams, dykes, rubbles) to suppress erosion, to conduct the streamflow and for safety reasons. In many places these constructions subsided, causing the occurrence of stones and other similar hard substrates in the river, next to natural substrates like peat and shells. Most of the sediments with hard substrates were characterized by a high number of species and a relatively high density (cluster 2), although a lot of the samples taken were incomplete. Hard substrates can form a suitable habitat for several soft bottom species, as these substrates might provide shelter and prohibit species being washed out from the sediment. *Balanus* spp., often found in several layers on these hard substrates, might provide shelter for other animals, or create a multitude of habitats for other species, even for soft bottom ones, when silt is deposited in between (DITTMER 1983). The hard substrates also allowed the set-



tlement of bivalves, like oysters. These suspension feeders could be considered an indication of improving water quality.

Acknowledgements

We are grateful for the financial assistance provided by the Ministry of the Flemish Community (AWZ) and for the logistical support by Ir. Taverniers, Ir. Wouters and the crews of the Veereman. Data on the model calculations for current velocities were provided by Ir. Harm Verbeek (RWS-RIKZ) and Ir. Claessens provided data on the dredging and dumping activities in the Zeeschelde. We thank Nico De Regge and Jan Soors for their support in the field and in the laboratory.



Chapter 8

Biological and physical characteristics of intertidal, cohesive sediments in the mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary (Belgium)

T. Ysebaert, M. Fettweis, P. Meire, M. Sas and H. Mitchener

Abstract

The biological (zoobenthos and microphytobenthos) and physical characteristics of intertidal, cohesive sediments were studied in April and September 1997 on ten locations, situated on three mudflats in the mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary. The sediment at the sites was muddy ($< 63\mu\text{m}$) or consisted of very fine sand ($< 125\mu\text{m}$). Sediment characteristics of the top 0–0.5 cm layer (median grain size, mud content, organic matter and bulk density) were strongly correlated and did not differ significantly between April and September. Chlorophyll *a* and fucoxanthin contents in the top layer (0–0.5 cm) of the sediment were about 7 times higher in April than in September, but a large spatial variation was observed, especially in April, which was mainly attributed to a difference in elevation of the mudflats. The high pigment contents in April were accompanied by a relative low abundance of the zoobenthos. In April *Oligochaeta* were numerically most important in the 1000 μm and 500 μm fraction of the zoobenthos, and Nematodes in the 250 μm fraction. The critical shear stress for erosion, measured in situ with the SedErode device, varied between 0.26 and 0.43 $\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^{-2}$ in April. The critical shear stress for erosion was significantly lower in September when pigment contents were low and zoobenthos abundance was high. In September *Corophium volutator* and *Heteromastus filiformis* dominated the 1000 μm fraction, *Oligochaeta* and *C. volutator* the 500 μm fraction, and Nematodes, *Manayunkia aestuarina*, *Oligochaeta* and Copepoda the 250 μm fraction. Zoobenthos species showed a different vertical distribution pattern in the sediment, mainly reflecting their difference in feeding habits.

In general, the results from this field study indicate that physical and biological processes interact in a complex manner, and that their contribution to sedimentological processes appears to differ spatially and temporally.

Introduction

Estuaries are transitional environments between rivers and the sea and are characterized by largely varying and often unpredictable hydrological, morphological and chemical conditions (DAY et al. 1989). Knowledge of the environmental variability and related population effects on a wide range of spatio-temporal scales is fundamental to better understand the functioning, stability and resilience of these ecosystems and the antropogenic influence on them.

The physicochemical characteristics of estuaries vary strongly with season, especially in the oligo- and mesohaline parts. As a consequence, seasonal fluctuations in the occurrence of benthic invertebrates are often very large in these parts of an estuary (HOLLAND et al. 1987). For the Schelde, one of the larger NW-European estuaries with a complete salinity gradient, the intertidal macrobenthic communities along the estuarine salinity gradient are well described (e.g. MEIRE et al. 1991; YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a). These studies, based on autumn samples only, demonstrated a clear decrease in macrobenthic species diversity and biomass from the polyhaline zone towards the meso-/oligohaline zone. However, within the mesohaline zone more detailed information on the spatio-temporal variation of the zoobenthos, in relation to the abiotic environment, is lacking.

Benthos in general plays an important role in the system dynamics of estuaries (e.g. HERMAN et al. 1999). Besides its central role in the benthic and pelagic food chains, various biological factors resulting from the presence itself of benthic organisms may affect sediment transport processes by influencing the physical stability and erodability of the natural cohesive sediments in complex ways (UNDERWOOD & PATERSON 1993; GERDOL & HUGHES 1994a; GRANT & DABORN 1994; YALLOP et al. 1994; PATERSON 1997). Especially the stabilizing or destabilizing role of the macrofauna is not clear (LUCKENBACK 1986; GERDOL & HUGHES 1994a; MOURITSEN et al. 1998; DE DECKERE et al. subm.), whereas the stabilizing effects of benthic microalgae are well accepted (HOLLAND et al. 1974; PATERSON 1997).



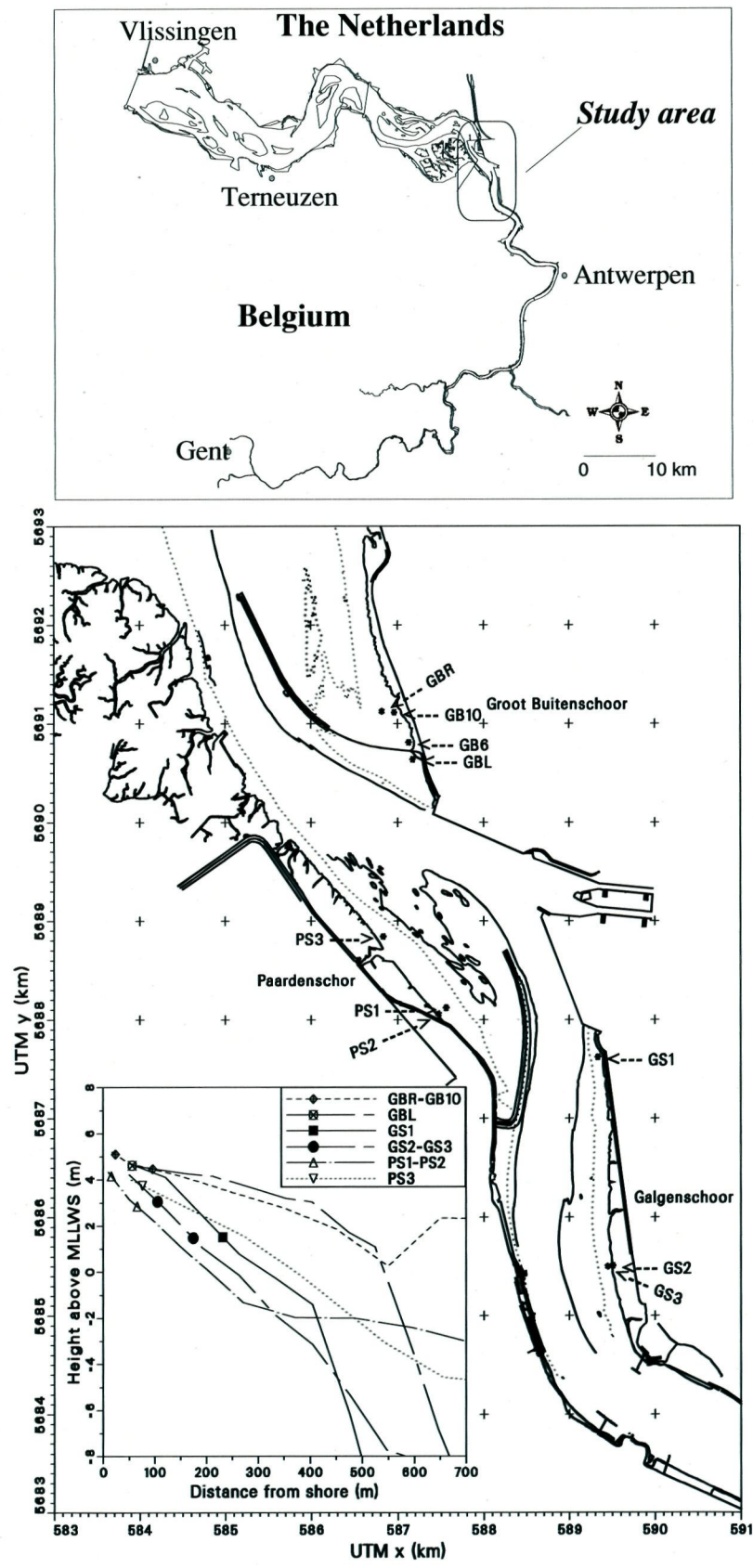


Figure 8.1. Map of the Schelde estuary with a detailed map of the mesohaline part showing the three mudflats (Buitenschoor (GB), Galgenschoor (GS) and Paardenschor (PS)) and the ten sampling locations. For each mudflat the slope and the height above Mean low low water spring (MLLWS, m) of each sampling location are given.

The aim of this study is to investigate the variations in zoobenthos and microphytobenthos (algal biomass) occurrence between spring (April) and autumn (September) in relation to environmental characteristics of cohesive sediments, based on a sampling of ten locations on three mudflats in the intertidal mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary. Not only macrobenthos (> 1000 µm), but also the smaller fraction of the zoobenthos (sieved through 500 and 250 µm mesh size), as well as the vertical distribution of the benthos in the sediment are considered.

Materials and Methods

The Schelde estuary

The Schelde estuary is situated in the NW of Belgium and the SW of The Netherlands. This macrotidal estuary is a heterotrophic ecosystem (HEIP et al. 1995; SOETAERT & HERMAN 1995a), which is under permanent stress caused by a high load of waste water and by extensive dredging activities for the maintenance of shipping traffic to the harbour of Antwerpen.

The study area, situated near the Dutch/Belgian border, about 55-60 km upstream of the mouth, experiences mesohaline salinity conditions (5-18) most of the time (BAEYENS et al. 1998; FETTWEIS et al. 1998). Surface water salinity was 9.5 in April 1997 and 15.4 in September 1997. Prior to both sampling events salinity was on average 7.25 and 10.50 during the periods January-March and June-August 1997 respectively. The mean tidal range is about 4.94 m, ranging from 5.64 m during spring tide to 4.02 m during neap tide.

The turbidity maximum is situated at about 110 km from the mouth during dry periods and at about 50 km during wet periods (WOLLAST & MARJINS 1981). Periods with high rainfall are more concentrated during winter. This explains to a major part the observed coupling of suspended mud concentration with seasons in the study area, where the high suspended mud concentrations are generally occurring during winter and the low ones during summer (FETTWEIS et al. 1998). The combination of favourable hydrodynamic conditions, several fine suspended matter sources, and the flocculation process, leads in salinity zone 2-10 to bottom sediments that contain locally high percentages of fine material (BAEYENS et al. 1998).

Table 8.1. Sediment characteristics of the ten sampling locations in April and September (average per location). Height = height of each location in +m MLLWS; D50 = median grain size; Mud = volume % < 63 µm; Org. = organic content in weight %; ρ = bulk density of the sediment; τcr = critical shear stress for erosion. (GB = Buitenschoor, GS = Galgenschoor, PS = Paardenschoor).

Sampling location	Height m	D50 μm		Mud %		Org. %	ρ kg m ⁻³	τ _{cr} N m ⁻²
Depth range (cm)		0-0.5	0-10	0-0.5	0-10	0-0.5	0-0.3	
APRIL								
GBR	4.91	27	41	74	62	12	1315	0.43 (0.42-0.43)
GB10	5.55	43	63	62	50	9	1256	0.42 (0.39-0.45)
GB6	5.61	27	61	72	51	12	1332	0.26 (0.25-0.26)
GBL	5.07	68	136	48	23	5	1493	0.33 (0.27-0.37)
GS1	1.96	43	59	63	52	7	1563	0.26 (0.25-0.29)
GS2	3.50	118	60	29	52	3	1811	0.30 (0.30-0.31)
GS3	1.92	31	34	72	66	10	1546	0.30 (0.27-0.36)
PS1	3.30	52	35	58	69	6	1507	0.35 (0.29-0.38)
PS2	4.61	30	28	76	75	8	1306	0.30 (0.26-0.35)
PS3	4.20	61	76	52	41	3	1642	0.32 (0.29-0.39)
SEPTEMBER								
GBR	4.91	33	28	73	75	7	1477	0.25 (0.22-0.27)
GB10	5.55	37	48	71	59	5	1589	0.29 (0.26-0.33)
GB6	5.61	37	37	70	67	7	1559	0.27 (0.26-0.28)
GBL	5.07	124	131	27	23	3	1783	0.29 (0.27-0.30)
GS1	1.96	41	75	63	44	5	1445	0.24 (0.23-0.26)
GS2	3.50	36	50	72	60	7	1402	0.29 (0.29-0.30)
GS3	1.92	45	34	62	68	7	1432	0.25 (0.27-0.36)
PS1	3.30	27	40	77	66	7	1464	0.23 (0.22-0.25)
PS2	4.61	35	42	71	64	6	1566	0.26 (0.26-0.27)
PS3	4.20	37	64	71	49	5	1531	0.26 (0.24-0.28)

Description of the study sites

The field measurements were carried out on ten intertidal locations (Figure 8.1). The ten locations were sampled in April (8-9-10) and September (2-3-4) 1997 under dry weather conditions. Mean temperature of the surface sediment was 14.3°C (range 8.6-18.0°C) in April and 21.3°C (range 18.7-26.3°C) in September. The locations were situated on three mudflats that differ in exposure to tidal currents (Figure 8.1). The Galgenschoor (GS) mudflat has a relatively steep slope and is directly connected to the main channel. The Paardenschoor (PS) mudflat has a less steep slope and is protected by a submerged dam near the navigation channel. The Buitenschoor (GB) mudflat has a shallow slope and is protected by a sandflat and a dam. 3D hydrodynamic model simulations (FETTWEIS & SAS 1999) showed that maximum flood currents during spring tide differ substantially in magnitude among the three mudflats, respectively 0.7-0.9 m s⁻¹ on the Galgenschoor; 0.5-0.6 m s⁻¹ on the Buitenschoor and 0.25-0.45 m s⁻¹ on the Paardenschoor. Maximum ebb currents during spring tide are substantially lower on the Galgenschoor (± 0.4 m s⁻¹) and the Paardenschoor (0.1-0.2 m s⁻¹), but have the same magnitude as the maximum flood currents on the Buitenschoor. Maximum currents during neap tides are about 15-40% lower than during spring tides.

The height of the sampling locations differed considerably, ranging from +1.92 m MLLWS to +5.61 m MLLWS (Table 8.1, Figure 8.1), resulting in a different period of flooding between approximately 9.30 h and 1.40 h during a mean tidal cycle.

The sampling locations are situated in a sedimentary environment. Mean accumulation rates based on 210Pb profiles were respectively 4.5 mm yr⁻¹ for the Buitenschoor inside the submerged dam (GBR, GB6, GB10), 2.4-3.9 mm yr⁻¹ for the Paardenschoor (PS1) and the Galgenschoor (GS1, GS3) and zero for the Buitenschoor outside the dam (GBL) (WARTEL et al. 1998).

Field sampling

At each location 15 macrobenthic samples were taken with a corer (\varnothing 4.5 cm) to a depth of 10 cm. Nine samples were sectioned into following intervals: 0-1 cm; 1-3 cm; 3-5 cm; 5-10 cm. Nine additional cores (\varnothing 2.0 cm) were sampled in September and sectioned in the same way. All samples were fixed with buffered formaline.

For pigment analysis three random sediment samples of the top 1 cm were taken at each location with a corer (\varnothing 2.0 cm) and immediately frozen. Each sample, consisting of two subsamples, was sectioned in two parts: a surface sample (0-0.5 cm) and the layer of 0.5-1.0 cm. For sediment granulometry the surface layer (0-0.5 cm) and the layer 0-10 cm were collected in the same way as for

the sampling for pigments. One sample (0-0.3 cm) was taken for determination of the sediment bulk density and related sediment characteristics.

The critical shear stress for erosion, defined as the minimum applied bed shear stress required to initiate erosion and to remove sediment from the bed surface, was measured in situ at each location using the instrument SedErode. SedErode is a portable, fully contained instrument (MITCHENER et al. 1996). The basic principle of SedErode is that known shear stresses are applied to a mud surface and the bed response (suspended sediment concentration) is monitored. From this the critical shear stress is derived. Three erosion tests were performed at each location. The accuracy of SedErode measurements depends on several factors: the basic accuracy of the applied shear stress, which is 20% based on calibration against hot film shear stress probes, the size of the shear stress increments used during the test, and the microtopography of the sediment. For the April survey, the increment was approximately 0.2 N m⁻², which corresponded to the relatively hard sediments during this time. However, the sediments were considerably softer during the September survey, and it was decided to lower the increment to 0.1 N m⁻² in order to obtain a higher accuracy at the low range of the SedErode instrument. This resulted in an error due to the chosen shear stress increment of respectively ± 0.1 N m⁻² and ± 0.05 N m⁻².

Laboratory measurements

All zoobenthic samples were sieved through a 1000 μ m mesh and sorted after staining with 0.02 % Rose Bengal. In April, three of the vertically sectioned samples were further sieved through a 500 μ m and a 250 μ m mesh, whereas in September the nine small cores were used for this. These smaller zoobenthic fractions were only analyzed to a depth of 5 cm. Organisms were counted and identified to species level, except Nemertini, Oligochaeta, Nematoda and Copepoda. For Annelids, often broken due to handling, only parts with a head structure were counted. Ash-free dry weight (AFDW) of the 1000 μ m fraction was measured by drying at 105°C for 12h and ashing at 550°C.

The occurrence of algal biomass (microphytobenthos) was based on the observed content of chlorophyll *a*. The accessory pigment fucoxanthin was used as an indicator of diatom (Bacillariophyceae) biomass (BROTAS & PLANTECUNY 1998; PATERSON et al. 1998). Pigments were analyzed by High-performance liquid chromatographic analysis (HPLC), using a modified method of MANTOURA & LLEWELLYN (1983).

Sediment granulometry was measured by laser diffraction method (Malvern Mastersizer). Total organic content was determined by ignition loss.



Table 8.2. Comparison of sediment characteristics, pigment contents (chlorophyll *a* and fucoxanthin), and zoobenthos characteristics (diversity, abundance, biomass) between spring (April) and autumn (September). Mean and Standard Deviation of the parameters in both months with the Z-value and associated probability of the Wilcoxon matched pairs signed rank test are given. NS= not significant, **p*<0.05, ***p*<0.01.

	April (n=10)	September (n=10)	Z-value	p-value
Sediment characteristics				
Density of the sediment (kg m ⁻³)	1477 ± 176	1525 ± 110	0.7645	NS
Median grain size 0-10 cm (µm)	59.3 ± 31.1	54.9 ± 30.3	0.7644	NS
Mud content 0-10 cm (%)	54.1 ± 15.1	57.4 ± 15.2	1.0783	NS
Median grain size 0-0.5 cm (µm)	49.9 ± 27.9	45.0 ± 28.0	0.2548	NS
Mud content 0-0.5 cm (%)	60.5 ± 14.7	65.9 ± 14.4	0.3567	NS
Organic matter (%)	7.4 ± 3.1	5.9 ± 1.5	1.7838	NS
Critical erosion shear stress (N m ⁻²)	0.33 ± 0.06	0.27 ± 0.02	2.6500	**
Pigment contents				
Chlorophyll <i>a</i> 0-0.5 cm (µg g ⁻¹)	34.5 ± 31.0	4.27 ± 1.34	2.5992	**
Chlorophyll <i>a</i> 0.5-1.0 cm (µg g ⁻¹)	8.13 ± 6.12	4.06 ± 1.80	1.8857	NS
Fucoxanthin 0-0.5 cm (µg g ⁻¹)	12.5 ± 10.9	1.70 ± 0.53	2.4286	**
Fucoxanthin 0.5-1.0 cm (µg g ⁻¹)	2.74 ± 2.41	1.54 ± 0.57	1.7838	NS
Zoobenthos 1000 µm				
Diversity (N ₀)	3.8 ± 2.6	6.7 ± 2.2	2.3102	*
Total abundance (ind m ⁻²)	3311 ± 3383	16675 ± 12431	2.7011	**
Total biomass (g AFDW m ⁻²)	1.307 ± 1.606	6.689 ± 5.447	2.7011	**
Zoobenthos 500 µm				
Diversity (N ₀)	3.6 ± 1.0	4.8 ± 1.8	1.6103	NS
Total abundance (ind m ⁻²)	35567 ± 25391	64405 ± 45028	1.9876	*
Zoobenthos 250 µm				
Diversity (N ₀)	4.1 ± 1.2	6.8 ± 1.8	2.5205	*
Total abundance (ind m ⁻²)	162493 ± 151782	339460 ± 228706	2.1915	*

Statistical analyses

For each location averages for both biological and environmental variables were calculated. The vertical distribution of the zoobenthos was expressed as the mean percentage of the abundance observed in each depth range at each location. Locations with less than five individuals of a certain species were omitted.

The relationships between biotic and environmental parameters were determined using Spearman rank correlation (SOKAL & ROHLF 1981). Since the same locations were sampled in each season, the general trend in seasonal variation of biotic and environmental variables was analyzed using the Wilcoxon matched-pairs Signed rank test (SOKAL & ROHLF 1981).

Multivariate ordination techniques were used to investigate the relationship between zoobenthic species composition and pigments and environmental variables respectively. A preliminary Detrended Correspondence Analysis on all 20 sampling locations yielded axes of short length (below 2 SD), so a linear ordination method, Redundancy Analysis (RDA) (JONGMAN et al. 1987; TER BRAAK 1994) was applied further; using the computer programme CANOCO 4.0 (TER BRAAK & SMILAUER 1998). Zoobenthos

densities were log(x+1) transformed prior to analysis and were represented as the sum of the three fractions (1000, 500 and 250 µm).

Results

Sediment characterization

Based on the median grain size (D50) most locations were classified as mud (< 63 µm) or very fine sand (63 - 125 µm) in April and September; only location GBL had a median grain size > 125 µm (Table 8.1). Generally a significantly higher mud content and a lower median grain size was found in the top layer (0-0.5 cm) than in the 0-10 cm layer (Wilcoxon matched-pairs Signed-rank test Z= 2.538, p=0.01 and Z=2.165, p=0.03 respectively, n=20), except for station GS2, where a more sandy top layer was observed in April.

The organic content of the sediment varied between 3 and 12 %, and was significantly correlated with the mud content of the top layer(r=0.68, p=0.001, n=20). The bulk density of the sediment varied between 1256 and 1811 kg

m^{-3} and was significantly correlated with the mud content of the top layer ($r = -0.64$, $p = 0.002$, $n = 20$) and organic content ($r = -0.71$, $p = 0.0004$, $n = 20$). None of the sediment characteristics was correlated with the height of the sampling locations.

The critical shear stress for erosion was the only sediment characteristic that significantly differed between April and September (Table 8.2). The critical shear stress for erosion per location varied between 0.26 and 0.43 N m^{-2} in April and between 0.24 and 0.29 N m^{-2} in September. Especially at Buitenschoor and Paardenschor the mean values of the critical shear stress for erosion were higher in April than in September, whereas at Galgenschoor the values were similar during both surveys.

Pigment contents

Mean chlorophyll *a* and fucoxanthin contents of the top layer (0–0.5 cm) were about seven times higher in April than in September (Table 8.2). Pigment contents were significantly higher in the surface layer (0–0.5 cm) in April (Wilcoxon matched-pairs Signed-rank test $Z = 2.8$, $p = 0.005$, $n = 10$), whereas in September contents were similar in both layers.

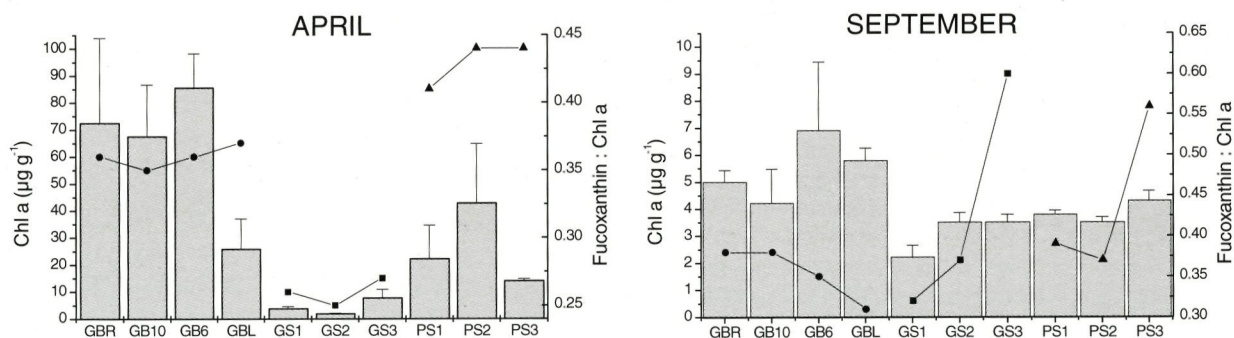


Figure 8.2. Chlorophyll *a* contents ($\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$, bars) and ratio of Fucoxanthin to Chl *a* (lines, presented for each mudflat separately) in the top sediment layer (0–0.5 cm) at the ten sampling locations in April and September, respectively. (GB = Buitenschoor, GS = Galgenschoor, PS = Paardenschor). Note the difference in scale between April and September.

The spatial variation in pigment contents among the three mudflats was similar in April. The highest contents were 3–4 times bigger than the lowest measured values. The highest pigment contents (surface layer) occurred on the Buitenschoor (26–86 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$ chlorophyll *a* and 10–31 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$ fucoxanthin), intermediate ones on the Paardenschor (14–43 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$ and 6–19 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$) and lowest ones on the Galgenschoor (1.8–7.8 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$ and 0.5–2.1 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$) (Figure 8.2). This high spatial variation in pigment contents in April could be linked to the heterogeneity in algae layers observed on the mudflats during the measurements. In September the spatial variation and the pigment contents were much lower. The total range of chlorophyll *a* and fucoxanthin contents on all mudflats was 2.2–6.9 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$ and 0.7–2.4 $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$ respectively. The highest values were found also on the Buitenschoor in September.

The ratio of fucoxanthin to chlorophyll *a* in the 0–0.5 cm layer was different among the mudflats in April, but was relatively constant within each mudflat. The highest ratios were measured on the Paardenschor, indicating the highest diatom dominance. In September the ratios were more comparable among the mudflats, with extreme values at the locations GS3 and PS3 respectively. The ratio of fucoxanthin to chlorophyll *a* in the deeper layer (0.5–1.0 cm) was similar as the one for the top layer.

Characterization of the zoobenthos

In the 1000 μm fraction of the zoobenthos a total of 13 species were found. *Eteone longa*, *Corophium lacustre*, *Mya arenaria* and *Crangon crangon* were only observed once and at very low densities. Total abundance and total biomass of the 1000 μm fraction largely varied among the ten locations in both April and September, being highest in both months on Paardenschor, and lowest on Galgenschoor (Figure 8.3a and 8.4). Oligochaeta represented 81 % of the total abundance observed in April. However, in terms of biomass Oligochaeta were less dominant (Figure 8.4). Mean total diversity (N_0) was significant-

ly higher in September. Abundance and biomass showed also a significant (5fold) increase. Species dominance then clearly differed among mudflats (Figure 8.3a and 8.4). *Corophium volutator* dominated the community at Buitenschoor (70% and 51% of total abundance and biomass, respectively). *Heteromastus filiformis* was more dominant at Paardenschor (60% and 66% of total abundance and biomass, respectively). On both mudflats, *M. balthica* and *N. diversicolor* contributed substantially to the total biomass. Lowest abundance and biomass were observed at Galgenschoor; only at GS2 values comparable to the other two mudflats were found.

Total abundance of the 500 μm fraction of the benthos was lowest for Galgenschoor (Figure 8.3b). This fraction of the benthos was mainly dominated by Oligochaeta



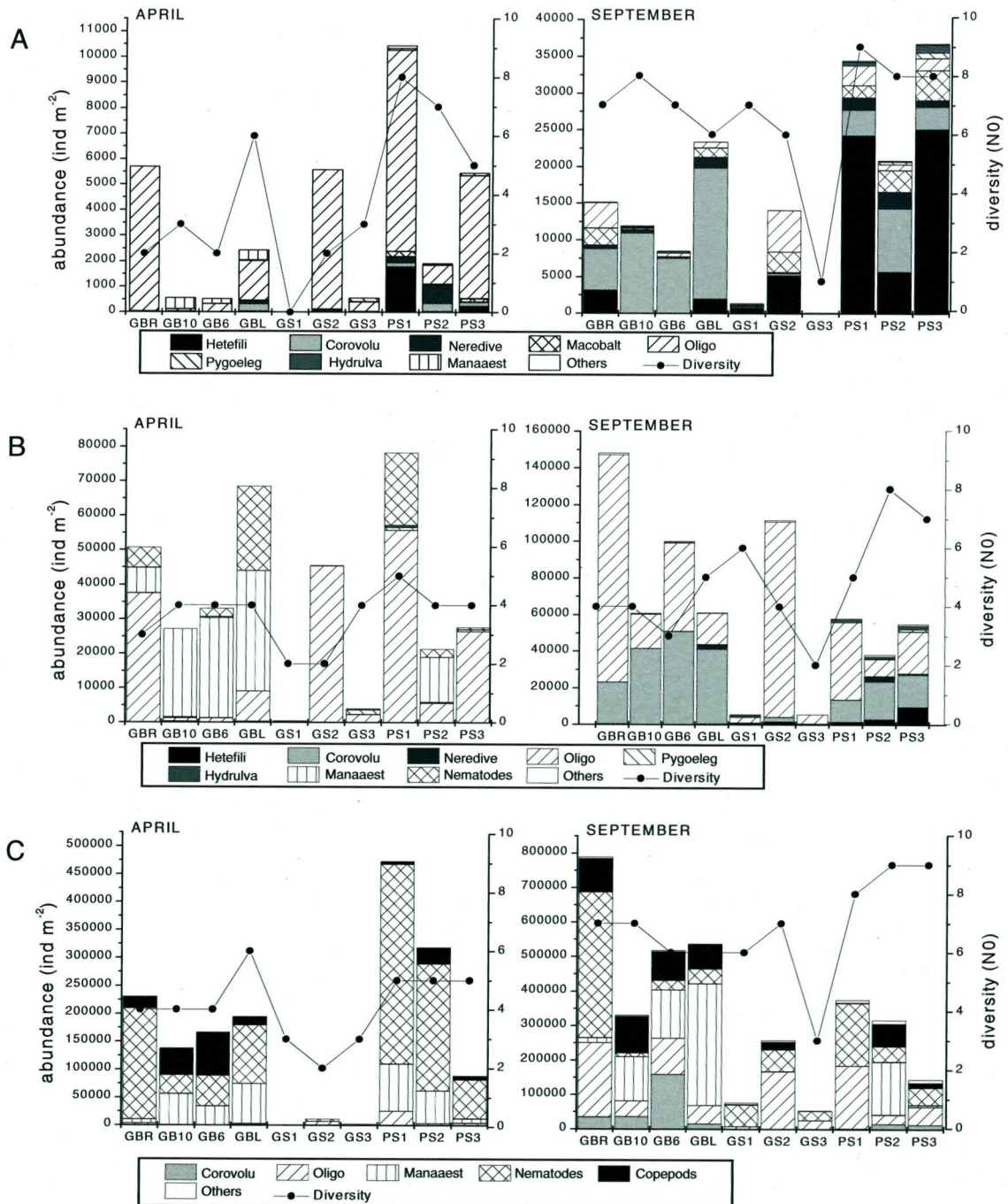


Figure 8.3. Abundance (ind m⁻², bars) and diversity (N₀, line) of the most important zoobenthic species for the 1000 µm (A), 500 µm (B) and 250 µm (C) fractions at the ten sampling locations in April and September, respectively. Note the differences in scale between April and September.

in April (52% of total abundance). *Manayunkia aestuarina* was also a dominant species of the benthic community at Buitenschoor (54% of total abundance). At some locations Nematoda appeared in this fraction of the benthos. Mean total abundance doubled significantly in September as compared to April. Oligochaeta still dominated (62% of total abundance), but also other macrobenthic species appeared more frequently, such as *C. volutator*, especially

predominantly present at Buitenschoor; *H. filiformis*, *N. diversicolor* and *Hydrobia ulvae*. Hardly any macrobenthic species were found in the 500 µm fraction at Galgenschoor. Both *M. aestuarina* and Nematoda were not found in the 500 µm fraction in September.

Total abundance of the zoobenthos was also lowest for Galgenschoor in the 250 µm fraction (Figure 8.3c). The fraction was dominated by Nematoda in April (65% of



total abundance), and to a lesser extent by Copepoda and *M. aestuarina*. At Galtenschoor, the 250 μm fraction was nearly devoid of benthos. Mean total abundance doubled significantly in September, especially at Buitenschoor. This was mainly due to an increase of *Oligochaeta* and *M. aestuarina*, and also *C. volutator* was observed in this fraction. Copepoda abundance increased in September whereas Nematoda abundance in general decreased.

Vertical distribution of the zoobenthos

The common species in both seasons mostly belonged to smaller taxa and showed a change in distribution from a higher abundance in the upper layer of the sediment in April towards a deeper distribution in September (Figure 8.5). In April, *Oligochaeta* from the 250 μm and 500 μm fractions were most abundant in the top 0-1 cm layer of the sediment (about 70%), whereas *Oligochaeta* from the 1000 μm fraction were equally present in the top 0-1 cm and the 1-3 cm layers (about 45 %). In September, the 1-3 cm layer became relatively more important for all frac-

both seasons. The macrobenthic species, that were only dominant in September, showed a different vertical distribution pattern (Figure 8.6). All fractions of *C. volutator* occurred almost exclusively in the top 0-1 cm layer of the sediment. *H. filiformis* showed a clearly different pattern with higher densities occurring in the deeper layers of the sediment. *N. diversicolor* was mainly present in the top 3 cm of the sediment, especially in the 1-3 cm layer. *H. ulvae* clearly preferred the top layer of the sediment, and was nearly absent deeper than 3 cm.

Relationships between biotic and environmental parameters

In April, both chlorophyll *a* and fucoxanthin contents were strongly positively correlated with each other and with height of the location, and negatively correlated with the bulk density of the sediment (Table 8.3). In September only chlorophyll *a* was positively correlated with height, whereas the correlation between both pigments was less significant.

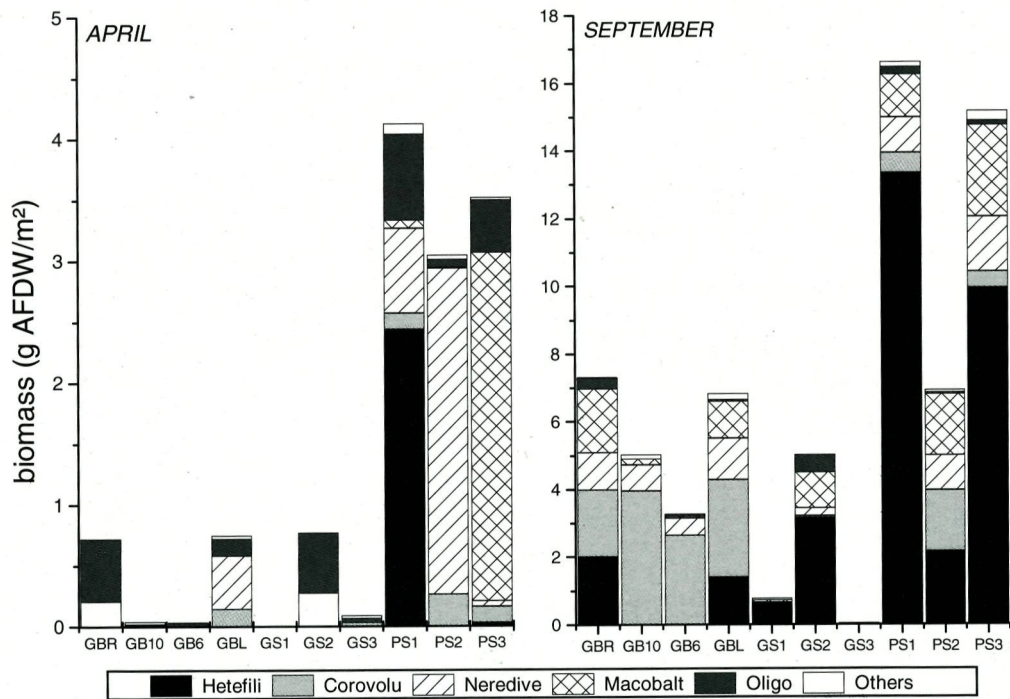


Figure 8.4. Biomass (g AFDW m⁻²) of the five most important macrobenthic species for the 1000 μm fraction at the ten sampling locations in April and September, respectively. Note the difference in scale between April and September.

tions of *Oligochaeta*. *M. aestuarina* shifted from a 85% occurrence in the top 0-1 cm layer in April towards a 60% occurrence in the 1-3 cm layer in September. Most Nematodes occurred in the top 0-1 cm layer in both months, but in September relatively more individuals also occurred in the deeper layers. Copepoda were found almost exclusively in the upper layer of the sediment in

Some typical benthic species of the top layer of the sediment (Figure 8.5, 8.6) were positively correlated with pigment contents. *C. volutator*, nearly absent in April, showed a very high correlation with height and a high correlation with chlorophyll *a* contents in September. The observed *Corophium* abundance was significantly correlated with the decrease in chlorophyll *a* contents between April and

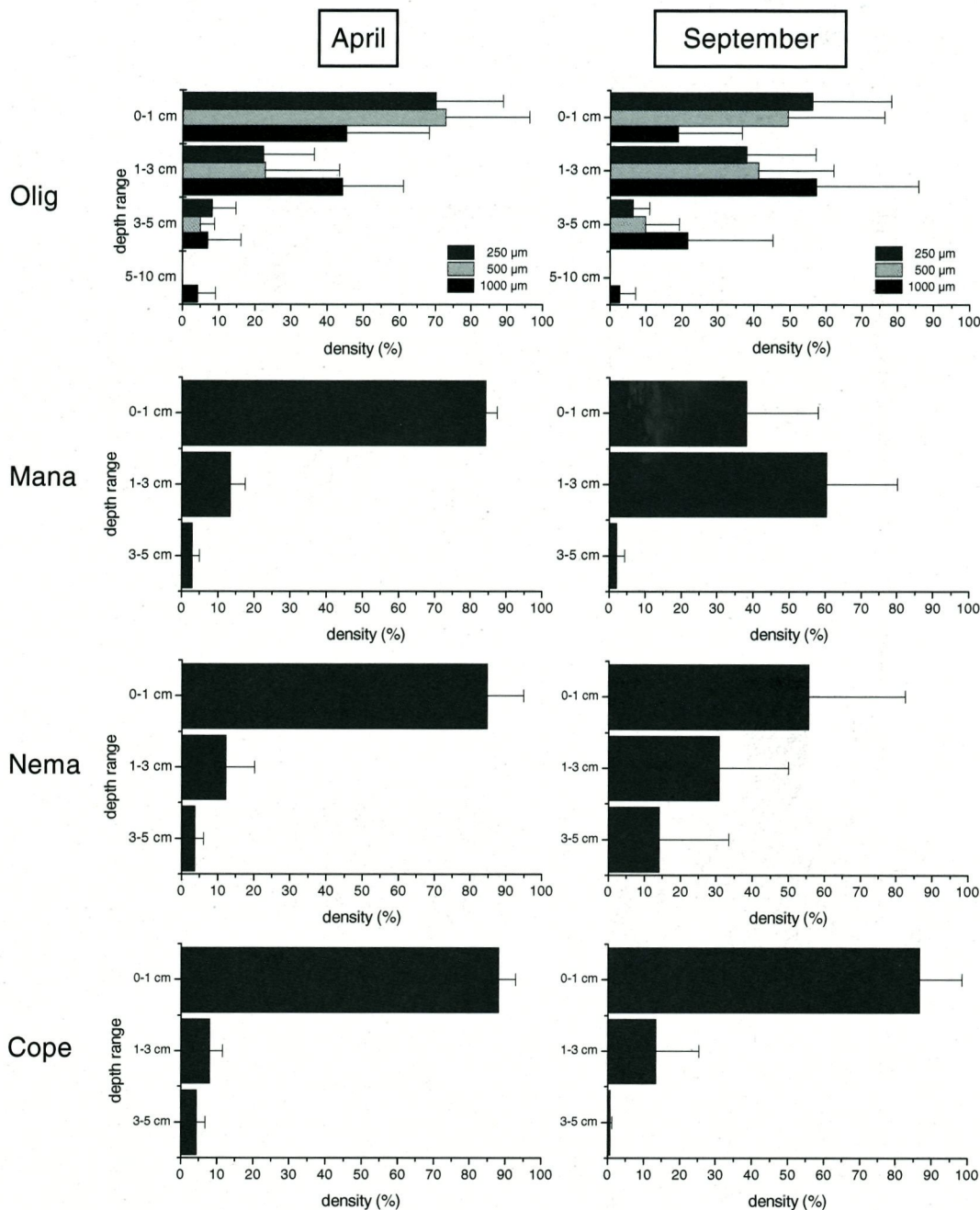


Figure 8.5. Vertical depth frequency distributions (± SD) of *Oligochaeta* (Olig), *Manayunkia aestuarina* (Mana), *Nematodes* (Nema) and *Copepoda* (Cope) in April and September. For *Oligochaeta* each fraction (250, 500 and 1000 µm) is given, other species based on the 250 µm fraction.

September ($\text{Chl } a_{\text{apr}} - \text{Chl } a_{\text{sep}}$) ($r = 0.90$, $p=0.0003$). *M. aestuarina* and Copepod abundance were positively correlated with height and pigment contents both in April and September, and also with the chlorophyll *a* decrease ($r = 0.68$, $p=0.03$ and $r = 0.77$, $p=0.01$ respectively).

The biomass of the macrobenthos was significantly correlated with mud content in September (Table 8.3). *H. filiformis*, *Oligochaeta*, and *Nematoda* were significantly more abundant in more muddy sediments in September.

Based on both months together, a significantly positive

correlation was observed between critical shear stress for erosion and chlorophyll *a* and fucoxanthin contents ($r = 0.61$, $p=0.004$ and $r = 0.53$, $p=0.017$ respectively, $n=20$). Only the GB6 location had deviating results with high pigment contents but relatively low critical shear stresses for erosion.

Our results indicated that sediments with lower bulk density, i.e. a higher mud fraction, generally had a lower critical shear stress for erosion. However, it should be emphasized that the data show considerable scatter within

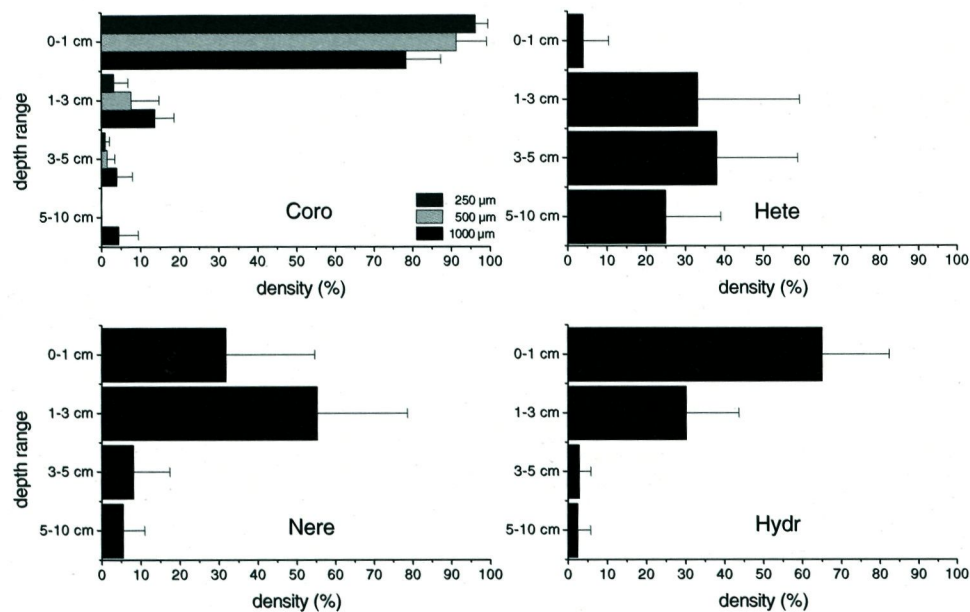


Figure 8.6. Vertical depth frequency distributions (\pm SD) of the dominant macrobenthic species in September: *Corophium volutator* (Coro), *Nereis diversicolor* (Nere), *Heteromastus filiformis* (Hete), and *Hydrobia ulvae* (Hydr). For *C. volutator* each fraction (250, 500 and 1000 μ m) is given, other species based on the 1000 μ m fraction.

each location, which is related to the measurement procedure itself, to the heterogeneity of the sediments on the mudflats and to the occurrence of organic matter of diverse origin.

Figure 8.7 displays the RDA ordination diagram (triplot) with the major variation in the twenty sampling occasions across space and time. The first two axes of the RDA had eigenvalues of 0.49 and 0.19, respectively, and explai-

ned 68% of the species variation. They were both significant by Monte Carlo statistics and represented 85% of the species-environment relation. The positions of the centroids in the diagram for April and September showed that the first axis mainly represented the change with time: all April stations, except PS2, were situated on the right-side, and all September stations, except GS3, on the left-side of the diagram. The second axis mainly represented the chan-

Table 8.3. Significant Spearman correlations between biotic and environmental parameters (top 0-0.5 cm sediment layer only) for April ($n=10$) and September ($n=10$) means. ***= $p<0.005$ **= $p<0.01$ *= $p<0.05$. Zoobenthic species abundance represents the sum of the three fractions (1000, 500 and 250 μ m). (Bulk dens = bulk density of the sediment; Median = median grain size).

	April ($n=10$)	September ($n=10$)
Chlorophyll <i>a</i>	Fucoxanthin: .99*** Height: .85*** Bulk dens: -.88***	Fucoxanthin: .73* Height: .79**
Fucoxanthin	Chl <i>a</i> : .99*** Height: .85*** Bulk dens: -.88***	Chl <i>a</i> : .73*
Zoobenthos abundance 1000 μ m	-	-
Zoobenthos biomass 1000 μ m	-	Median: -.71* Mud: .62*
Zoobenthos abundance 500 μ m	-	Height: .62*
Zoobenthos abundance 250 μ m	Chl <i>a</i> : .66*	Height: .73*
<i>Corophium volutator</i> abundance	Species nearly absent	Height: .99*** Bulk dens: .83** Chl <i>a</i> : .82**
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i> abundance	Species nearly absent (except PS1)	Median: -.62*
Oligochaeta abundance	-	Mud: .66*
<i>Manayunkia aestuarina</i> abundance	Bulk dens: -.65* Chl <i>a</i> : .64* Fucoxanthin: .64*	Height: .86*** Bulk dens: .87** Chl <i>a</i> : .71*
Copepoda abundance	Height: .94*** Bulk dens: -.79** Chl <i>a</i> : .94*** Fucoxanthin: .94***	Height: .92*** Chl <i>a</i> : .62*
Nematodes abundance		Median: -.67* Mud: .65*



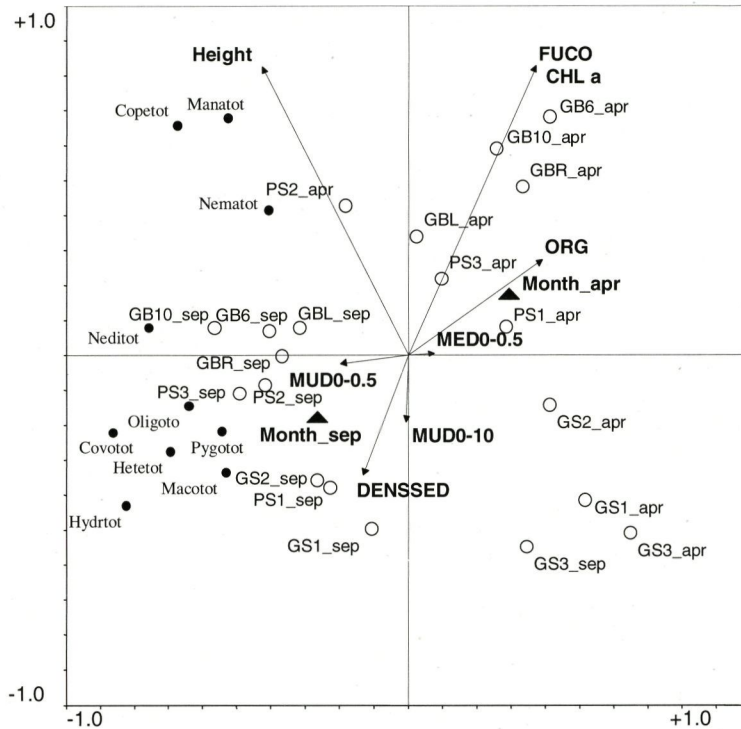


Figure 8.7. RDA ordination diagram showing the spatial and temporal variation of the 20 sampling locations. The first four eigenvalues are 0.49, 0.19, 0.06 and 0.03. Shown are centroids of month (April = Month_apr and September = Month_sep) and environmental variables as arrows. Environmental variables are: height, chlorophyll a and fucoxanthin contents of the 0-0.5 cm layer (CHL a and FUCO) mudcontent of the 0-0.5 cm and the 0-10 cm layers (MUD0-0.5 and MUD0-10), median grain size of the 0-0.5 cm layer (MED0-0.5), organic matter (ORG), and bulk density of the sediment (DENSSSED). Benthic species are represented by circles and should be interpreted as arrows. Benthic species represents the sum of abundance of the three fractions (1000, 500 and 250 μ m) together. (Copetot = Copepoda; Covotot = Corophium volutator; Hetetot = Heteromastus filiformis, Hydrtot = Hydrobia ulvae; Macotot = Macoma balthica; Manatot = Manayunkia aestuarina; Nematot = Nematoda; Neditot = Nereis diversicolor; Oligotot = Oligochaeta; Pygotot = Pygospio elegans).

ge with height and with correlated pigment contents. Since pigment contents clearly had a seasonal variation, the second axis also partly explained the difference between April and September. Benthic species situated in the upper left quadrant were species which were abundant during both months (e.g. *M. aestuarina*, Copepoda, Nematoda), whereas benthic species situated in the lower left quadrant were species which were typically abundant in September:

Discussion

The sediment characteristics (median grain size, mud content and organic matter) of the sampling locations were not significantly different between April and September. Although our observations are limited in time (2 observations), long-term monthly observations at the GBL and GBR locations confirm that no clear seasonal variation of mud content occurs (pers. observ.). This is in contrast to the observed seasonal variation of mud content and fixation of mud during summer on the sand flats in the downstream, polyhaline zone of the Schelde estuary

(HERMAN et al. 1999, pers. observ.). The processes involved in the sediment dynamics on the sandflats in the polyhaline zone and the investigated mudflats in the mesohaline zone are equal (i.e. hydrodynamics and biological processes). The clear seasonal differences in mud dynamics found on sandflats and mudflats is thought to be mainly the result of differences in the relative importance of the involved processes. The observation that the mud content is not declining on the investigated mudflats during winter can be explained by the facts that (1) these areas are closer situated to the turbidity maximum zone during winter and thus are flooded by water with a higher averaged suspended sediment concentration, (2) that the suspended sediment concentration is always higher in the mesohaline zone of the Schelde estuary, and (3) that the hydrodynamic conditions are favourable for deposition and formation of mudflats. Another important difference between both intertidal areas is that sand flats are more exposed as they form the transition between ebb- and flood-channels, whereas mudflats are situated along the banks of the estuary and are thus more sheltered. Although no difference in mud content was observed between the two sampling months, sedimentation or erosion could have appeared, as was also



demonstrated on another intertidal mudflat (DE BROUWER et al. 2000).

Despite the fact that the sediment characteristics were spatially and temporally relatively homogenous among the ten sampling locations, the biological variables (microphytobenthos and zoobenthos) showed substantial spatial and temporal (seasonal) variability.

In April, much higher chlorophyll *a* and fucoxanthin contents were observed as compared to September; which can be attributed to the spring bloom of diatoms on the intertidal mudflats, resulting in a visible microalgal mat, as also observed in the polyhaline zone of the Schelde estuary (DE JONG & DE JONGE 1995; BARRENGUET et al. 1997). The lower pigment contents in September may be ascribed to grazing by benthic invertebrates, as indicated by the relation between the abundance of some typically surface feeding species (e.g. *C. volutator*) and a decrease in microphytobenthos biomass. Increased grazing by zoobenthos might indeed decrease microalgae populations (MORRISEY 1988; GERDOL & HUGHES 1994a). Chlorophyll levels in intertidal sediments at the Bay of Fundy declined as population size of *C. volutator* increased through summer (HARGRAVE et al. 1983). Besides grazing by macro- and meiofauna, other factors might have caused the lower pigment contents in September, being nutrient limitation, desiccation, or resuspension in the water column (DE BROUWER et al. 2000).

A clear relation with height (exposure time) was observed with highest pigment contents in the upper shore sediments (Buitenschoor mudflat), intermediate contents in the middle shore sediments (Paardenschor mudflat) and lowest contents at the lower shore sediments (Galgenschoor mudflat). This is in accordance with several other observations on intertidal mudflats (e.g. UNDERWOOD & PATERSON 1993; DE JONG & DE JONGE 1995; BARRANGUET et al. 1997). The locations on the Galgenschoor were situated very low in the intertidal zone and therefore flooded most of the time. These sites will experience the stress of light limitation, especially being situated in a high turbidity zone of the estuary (MACINTYRE & CULLEN 1996).

Normally siltier and finer sediments contain more microphytobenthos than sandy sediments (DE JONG & DE JONGE 1995; LUCAS & HOLLIGAN 1999). The more sandy GBL location in April had indeed lower pigment contents as compared to the more muddy locations on the Buitenschoor mudflat (same height). This positive correlation between mud and chlorophyll *a* content is however not necessarily the result of a negative correlation between hydrodynamic energy and chlorophyll *a* as suggested by DE JONG & DE JONGE (1995). The occurrence of certain morphological features like mudflats or sand flats is related to the domination of a group of processes (tidal asymmetry between ebb and flood currents, cohesive sediment transport and characteristics, availability of mud).

The zoobenthos clearly undergoes seasonal variations with low diversity, abundance and biomass in April (spring) and a significantly higher abundance and biomass in September (autumn). In April the macrobenthic community is mainly dominated by Oligochaeta, whereas in September *C. volutator* and *H. filiformis* dominate. Also in September *N. diversicolor* and *M. balthica* are observed at most locations. The lack of or the very low abundance of several macrobenthic species in April can be attributed to the lower salinity conditions in winter and spring in this zone of the estuary, as was also demonstrated by long-term monthly observations at the GBL location (1990-1999, pers. observ.). In estuarine systems with high seasonal variability in river flow rate, the upper estuarine fauna may switch each year between an oligohaline and a mesohaline fauna, with high mortalities in between (e.g. MARCHAND & GASCUEL 1988), which result in communities that seldom progress beyond early benthic-community succession.

In this study sediment characteristics, being similar for most locations, do not explain for the large difference observed in zoobenthic species occurrence. It is argued that the hydrodynamical conditions and the elevation of the sample location can give an explanation for the macrobenthic species occurrence. The higher tidal currents observed at the Galgenschoor sampling locations can result in a higher mud dynamic and thus a less favourable environment for benthos. On the other hand, the elevation of the sampling locations was the main factor controlling the occurrence of microphytobenthos, which is a high-quality food source for several zoobenthic species. Indeed, the presence and quality of food, together with the feeding habits of a benthic species, seems to be a very important factor which determines the occurrence of a benthic species (DAUWE et al. 1998; HERMAN et al. 1999).

Several taxa, common in April and September (mainly smaller species like Oligochaeta, Nematodes and *Manayunkia aestuarina*), showed a shift from a dominant position in the upper layer of the sediment in April towards a more dominant distribution deeper in the sediment in September. This shift could possibly be explained by a shift in feeding habits of these taxa, as is supported by a population study on Oligochaeta at the GBR station in the same period (SEYS et al. 1999a). The latter observed a shift in species composition from a dominance of the Naididae *Paranais litoralis* and *Amphichaeta sannio*, two small, typically surface diatom feeding oligochaete species, in April, to a dominance of the larger tubificids *Heterochaeta costata* and *Tubificoides heterochaetus*, two typically sub-surface 'head-down' deposit feeders in September. Besides feeding habits other factors may have influenced the deeper distribution in September, e.g. the higher surface sediment temperatures in September.

In September the difference in occurrence and vertical distribution of the macrobenthic species reflected the dif-



ferent feeding guilds of the species. *C. volutator* is a typical surface deposit feeder that consumes large numbers of diatoms and bacteria, together with organic material and sediment particles (NIELSEN & KOFOED 1982; MURDOCH et al. 1986; GERDOL & HUGHES 1994b). *C. volutator* almost exclusively occurred in this study in the upper layer of the sediment, where highest chlorophyll *a* contents were present. On the other hand, the polychaete *H. filiformis* occurred deeper in the sediment. *H. filiformis* is known as a typical sub-surface deposit feeder, deriving all its food from sediment ingested in the anaerobic layer below the surface, depositing its faecal pellets at the surface (CADÉE 1979). *M. balthica*, mainly juveniles having a mean length of 3.45 mm ($n=367$), was situated in the top layer of the sediment. This is in accordance with several studies in which it was demonstrated that small *Macoma* lives at the top layer of the sediment with an increasing depth occurrence with size of the animal (ZWARTS & WANINK 1989; DAVEY & PARTRIDGE 1998). The gastropod *H. ulvae* is a typical grazer, feeding mainly on benthic diatoms (JENSEN & SIEGISMUND 1980) and therefore found in the top layer of the sediment, as also demonstrated by this study. Like *C. volutator*, this species was significantly correlated with chlorophyll *a* contents.

Most studies on macrobenthic communities do not include the fractions smaller than 1000 μm . This study indicated that both 500 and 250 μm fractions were characterized by a high abundance of both meiobenthic and macrobenthic (mainly in September) species. Especially in this zone of the estuary, characterized by meso-/oligohaline salinity conditions, it is important to include these smaller fractions, as the benthic community is often populated here by very small species (e.g. *M. aestuarina*) or immature stages of larger species (e.g. *C. volutator*). It has been shown that for the study of estuarine Oligochaeta, these fractions are essential, since only a small part of the Oligochaeta occur in the 1000 μm fraction (SEYS et al. 1999b).

The critical shear stress for erosion of the upper layer of the sediments in this study showed a difference between both surveys and a positive correlation with pigment contents. This is in accordance with a number of field and laboratory studies demonstrating that sediment-inhabiting algae, particularly epipellic diatoms and cyanobacteria, can protect sediment from erosion and stabilize cohesive sediments (HOLLAND et al. 1974; YALLOP et al. 1994) through production of extracellular polymeric substances (GRANT et al. 1986; UNDERWOOD et al. 1995; SMITH & UNDERWOOD 1998). The lower values for critical shear stress for erosion in September might be the result of lower pigment contents (no algal mat present) or of a higher macrofauna activity (LUCKENBACK 1986; DE DECKERE et al. subm.) at that time. In the literature both stabilizing as well as destabilizing forces are ascribed to macrofauna, in some cases by a single species. For instance, *Corophium volutator* may increase directly sediment stability by binding particles with the secretions used to construct their tubes or burrow

walls (MEADOWS & TAIT 1989; MEADOWS et al. 1990; MOURITSEN et al. 1998). In contrast, GERDOL & HUGHES (1994a) found that *C. volutator* caused destabilization of the sediment bed due to grazing on microphytobenthos and reworking of the sediment by burrowing and tube formation.

However, in our study the data on the critical shear stress for erosion showed considerable variability within each sampling location, and the relatively low resolution of the SedErode instrument call for a careful interpretation of the results.

Acknowledgements

This study is part of the hydraulic and morphological study of the Deurganck tidal dock, which has been carried out for the Ministry of the Flemish Community, Waterways and Marine Administration. We are grateful for the logistic assistance provided by the Maritime Scheldt division and for the bulk density analyses, which were carried out at Flanders Hydraulics. Thanks to Nico De Regge and Jan Soors for their assistance in the field and the laboratory. We are also grateful to Prof. Dr. M. Vincx and Dirk Van Gansbeke of the University of Ghent, Zoology Institute, Marine Biology Section for the analysis of the pigment contents. We thank Eric de Deckere and Greet De Gueldre for their comments on the manuscript. This study was partly supported by the FWO project G.0104.99.



Chapter 9

Macrobenthic species response surfaces along estuarine gradients: prediction by logistic regression

T. Ysebaert, P. Meire, P.M.J. Herman and H. Verbeek

Abstract

The aim of this study is to contribute to the development of statistical models to predict macrobenthic species response to (changes in) environmental conditions in estuarine ecosystems. Ecological response surfaces are derived for ten estuarine macrobenthic species. Logistic regression is applied on a large data set, predicting the probability of occurrence of macrobenthic species in the Schelde estuary as a response to the predictor variables salinity, depth, current velocity and sediment characteristics. Single logistic regression provides good descriptions of the occurrence along one environmental variable. The response surfaces obtained by multiple logistic regression provide estimates of the probability of species occurrence across the spatial extent of the Schelde estuary with a relatively high degree of success. Results from subsampling 50% of the original data ten times indicate final models were stable. A visual, geographical comparison is presented between the mapped probability surfaces to the species occurrence maps.

We conclude that where patterns of distribution are strongly and directly coupled to physicochemical processes, as is the case at the estuarine macro- and meso-scale, our modeling approach was capable of predicting macrobenthic species distributions with a relatively high degree of success, although processes controlling estuarine macrobenthic distribution cannot be determined using this method. The models and predictions might be used for evaluation of the effects of different management schemes within the Schelde estuary.

Introduction

Estuaries are transitional environments between rivers and the sea and are characterized by widely varying and often unpredictable hydrological, morphological and chemical conditions (DAY et al. 1989). For benthic animals with limited mobility (after settlement) this variability represents a pro-

blem with which they have to cope. During their lifetime and at different temporal scales varying from hours (tidal influence) to years, they have to cope with very different conditions of salinity, currents, drying and flooding, temperature, food availability, suspended sediment etc. As a consequence, estuarine benthos can be expected to be composed of eurytopic species, for which it is not easy to establish how their occurrence, density or biomass relates to the features of their environment.

A quantitative prediction of the patterns of occurrence of macrobenthic animals in estuaries is a desirable goal for several reasons. Benthic-pelagic links in estuaries are in general very important (HERMAN et al. 1999). Understanding the dynamics of the system requires a quantitative insight in benthic processes, which may be responsible for up to half of the total system mineralization. Macrobenthos is important in benthic remineralization processes, both directly as an important component of the system, and indirectly through its structuring effect on the sediment community. Macrofauna is also an important food resource for epibenthic crustaceans, fish and birds. Humans harvest many species of shellfish and crustaceans. Rational management of these resources requires predictive capabilities of the dynamics of the populations.

Evaluation of the consequences of human induced impacts or changes in an estuarine system will likely include the possible responses of the benthos. Nowadays, macrobenthos is often used in monitoring programmes as bioindicator for possible changes in the system. Within this ecological indicator system approach, a lot of studies have investigated the structure of macrobenthic communities in relation to the abiotic environment, coupling the dominance patterns (e.g. ABC method, WARWICK 1986) or functional life-history characteristics (trophic structure) (PEARSON & ROSENBERG 1978; BOESCH & ROSENBERG 1981; GASTON et al. 1998) of the macrobenthos to human impacts. But within coastal marine and estuarine ecosystems little attempts have been made to statistically model the responses of individual macrobenthic species to environmental variables on a large, e.g. estuarine scale and use these models to predict the distribution and occurrence of macrobenthos (CONSTABLE 1999). However, there are increasing demands for reliable and quantitative predictive tools. On the one

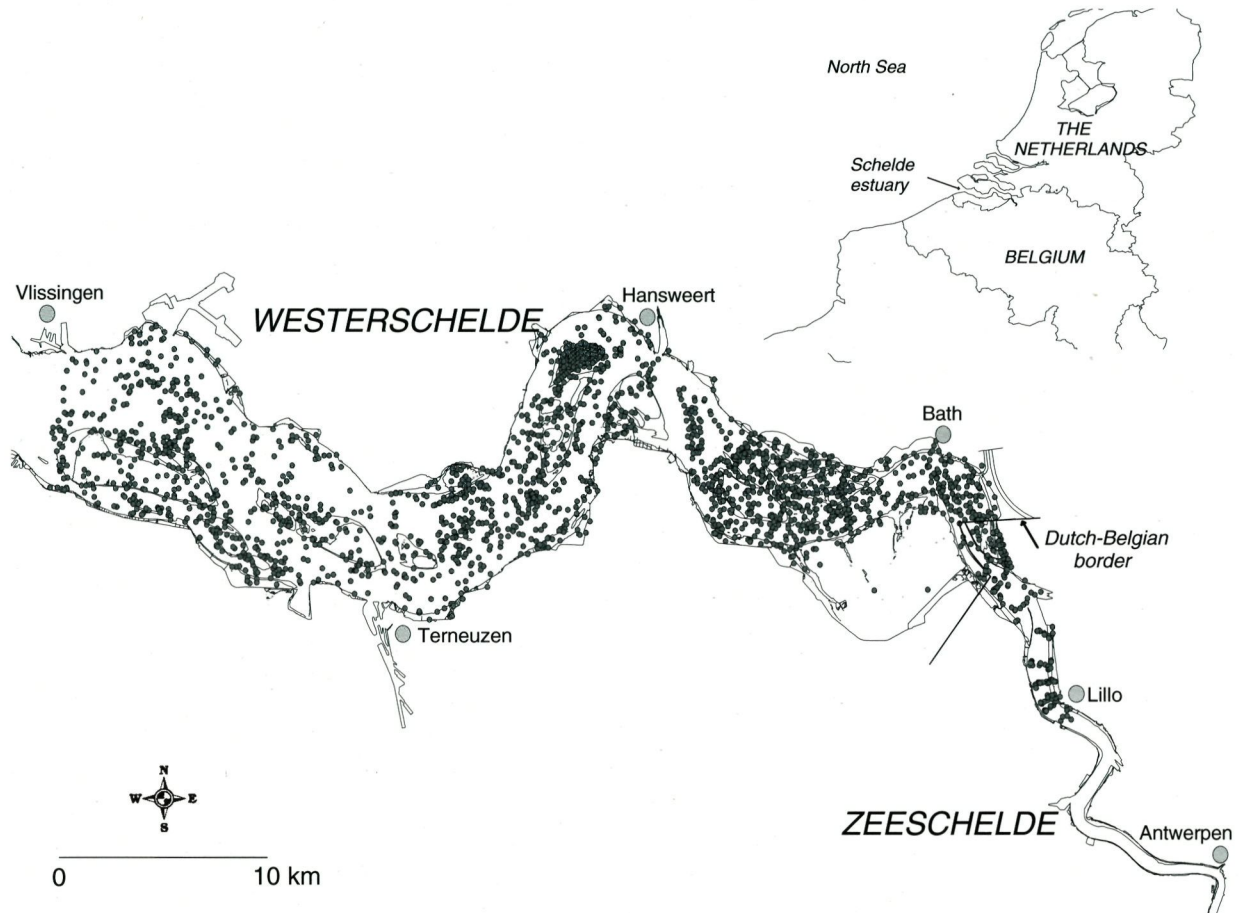


Figure 9.1. Map of the Schelde estuary with sampling locations.

hand, these are required to interpret *post-hoc* any changes that have been observed in the benthic community. A quantification of species preferences and tolerances to environmental conditions may help to understand and establish system properties. On the other hand, they are needed to predict future species response to anticipated changes in environmental conditions.

The aim of this study is to contribute to the development of statistical models to predict macrobenthic species response to (changes in) environmental conditions in estuarine ecosystems. In this paper so-called response curves and surfaces are fitted through mathematical relations (SWAN 1970; AUSTIN 1987) obtained by logistic regression. The advantage of logistic regression is that the probability of occurrence of an event can be predicted as a function of one or more independent variables (HOSMER & LEMESHOW 1989; TREXLER & TRAVIS 1993). Logistic regression has been applied in many ecological studies, e.g. in vegetation analysis (HUISMAN et al. 1993; LENIHAN 1993; VAN DE RIJT et al. 1996) and bird and wildlife species distributions (OSBORNE & TIGAR 1992; BUCKLAND & ELSTON 1993; VENIER et al. 1999). In the field of marine and estuarine animal ecology this technique has hardly been used.

In our approach physicochemical factors, acting at different spatial scales, are used as predictors for the occur-

rence of several macrobenthic species. The realized environmental niches of estuarine macrobenthic species are thus defined and validated. The next step will be to investigate the possibility of using the models for evaluation of the effects of different management schemes and to investigate the applicability of the models in other estuarine systems.

Materials and methods

Study area

The Schelde estuary, a turbid, nutrient-rich, heterotrophic system, measures 160 km from the mouth near Vlissingen (The Netherlands) to Gent (Belgium) and is one of the longest estuaries in NW-Europe with still a complete salinity gradient. The study area is limited to the Westerschelde (Dutch part) and a small part of the Zeeschelde (Belgian part) near the Dutch-Belgian border (Figure 9.1), comprising the complete polyhaline and mesohaline zone of the estuary. The mean tidal range increases from 3.8 m at Vlissingen to 5.0 m near the border. The river discharge varies from $20 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ during summer to 600 m^3



s^{-1} during winter, with a mean yearly average of $105 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ (BAEYENS et al. 1998). The residence time of the water in the estuary is rather high, ranging from one to three months, depending on the river discharge (SOETAERT & HERMAN 1995b). The most seaward region has a residence time of about 10–15 days.

The lower and middle estuary, called the Westerschelde (55 km), is a well mixed region characterized by a complex morphology with flood and ebb channels surrounding several large intertidal flats and salt marshes. The surface of the Westerschelde amounts to 310 km^2 , with the intertidal area covering 35%. The average channel depth is approximately 15–20 m. In the lower and middle estuary a multiple channel equilibrium exist and upstream of the Dutch/Belgian border, the estuary is characterized by a single channel. The turbidity maximum is situated in this region of the estuary but moves over a quite large distance, depending among others on the tidal action and river run off (BAEYENS et al. 1998). Nowadays, dredging activities for shipping and pollution are the major antropogenic stressors. About 8–12 million m^3 of sediment is dredged yearly to keep the port of Antwerpen accessible. For more details on the ecological and physicochemical properties of the estuary see MEIRE & VINCX (1993), HEIP & HERMAN (1995), BAEYENS et al. (1998), HERMAN & HEIP (1999) and VAN DAMME et al. (subm.).

Macrobenthos data

An extensive data set on macrobenthos is available for the Schelde estuary. A total of 3112 macrobenthos samples, mainly within the framework of monitoring programmes, were collected in the study area by different institutes in the period 1978–1997. By far most data were collected and analyzed by two institutes, namely the Centre for Estuarine and Coastal Ecology NIOO-CEMO (e.g. CRAEYMEERSCH et al. 1996; BRUMMELHUIS et al. 1997; CRAEYMEERSCH 1999) and the Institute of Nature Conservation (before that at the University of Gent) (e.g. YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1991, 1998; DE NEVE et al. 1998), mainly in co-operation with the National Institute for Marine and Coastal Management (RWVS-RIKZ). 90% of the samples were collected from 1990 onwards. 54% were taken in autumn (September–October), 32% in spring (March–April–May). Most sampling locations (68%) were sampled only once, but several locations were sampled two to five times in the sampling period considered, and a few were sampled more frequently within a long term programme.

In general multiple sediment cores were used for sampling the intertidal zone, and either a Van Veen grab or a Reineck box corer for the subtidal zone. All samples were sieved on a 1 mm mesh. For more details on the sampling methods and the design of the monitoring programmes we refer to MEIRE et al. (1991), YSEBAERT et al. (1993) and CRAEYMEERSCH (1999).

Abiotic variables

For each sample the following abiotic environmental variables were added to the macrobenthos database: depth/elevation, salinity, current velocities (maximum ebb and flood current velocities), sediment characteristics (median grain size and mud content). At subtidal stations depth was recorded at the time of sampling. The elevation of the intertidal stations was measured directly in the field or from a Geographical Information System, storing all bathymetric data in the area. For 2874 samples (92%) depth was added in the database. Depth is expressed in m NAP (NAP, Dutch Ordnance level, similar to Mean Sea Level).

Salinity was estimated for each sampling location using a 2Dh-hydrodynamic model SCALDIS400 (LIEVENSE 1994) with a spatial resolution of 400 meter. The model calculations are based on values for mean tidal conditions with a yearly averaged discharge, giving an average salinity value. The advantage of using the SCALDIS400 model is that a high spatial resolution is obtained but the estimates are not seasonally defined. Therefore also monthly to fortnightly measurements at nine stations along the Westerschelde were used to represent the temporal variation in salinity, but at a much coarser spatial resolution than model salinity. For each sample the temporal salinity was determined as the average salinity of the three months previous to the date of sampling. Estimates obtained from model simulations are called 'model salinities', whereas the values derived from field observations are called 'temporal salinities'.

Current velocities (maximum ebb and flood current velocities in m s^{-1}) for each sampling location were estimated with the SCALDIS100 model (DEKKER et al. 1994) for mean tidal conditions, with a spatial resolution of 100 meter. For 3037 samples (98 %) current velocity estimates were added to the database.

Samples for sediment grain size analysis (by laser diffraction technique) were collected during several campaigns. For 1502 and 1386 samples (48 % and 45%) median grain size and mud content (volume % < $63 \mu\text{m}$) values were added to the database respectively.

Statistical analysis

Logistic regression (COX 1970; HOSMER & LEMESHOW 1989; TREXLER & TRAVIS 1993; JONGMAN et al. 1995) falls within the general framework of Generalized Linear Models (GLM) (NELDER & WEDDERBURN 1972; McCULLAGH & NELDER 1989) and can be used to analyze the relationship between a binary response variable and one or more explanatory variables. Logistic regression is used here to model the response of macrobenthic species occurrence to the abiotic environmental predictors. The choice of using binary (presence/absence) data was inspired by the fact that the data could not be considered as homogeneously collected. Different sampling methods, different sampling



months (seasonality) and years (long-term fluctuations) certainly affected the observed variation in density and biomass data. To minimize this variation presence-absence data were used. Indeed, the presence-absence of most macrobenthic species appeared to be much less seasonally differentiated as compared to density and biomass (YSEBAERT et al. in prep.). As many species were often found accidentally, we decided to treat densities $< 50 \text{ N.m}^{-2}$ as absences (0) for most species (except for *Arenicola marina* and *Nephtys cirrosa*).

In the logistic regression model, a binary response variable is related to one or more predictor variables through the logistic link function:

$$\text{logit} \{p(x)\} = \log \{p(x) / 1-p(x)\} = b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 \quad (1)$$

where $p(x)$ is the probability that the species occurs as a function of an environmental variable x and b_0, b_1, b_2 are the regression parameters. Equation (1) can be rewritten to define the estimated probability $p(x)$ as

$$p(x) = \{e^{(b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2)}\} / \{1 + e^{(b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2)}\} \quad (2)$$

which is bound between 0 and 1.

The logistic link means that the probability of a species occurring is a logistic, s-shaped function when the linear predictor is a first-order polynomial, but for higher polynomials the predicted probability function will be more complex. For second-order polynomials it will approximate a bell-shaped function (Gaussian logit curve), which is an ecologically realistic response (TER BRAAK & LOONMAN 1986). Although skewed and more complex response curves can theoretically occur, they cannot be fitted with the GLM approach. Generalized additive models were developed for this purpose but were not used in this study (e.g. BIO et al. 1998). In this study, a response surface for each macrobenthic species on each of the independent variables was generated by logistic regression with the statistical package SAS (SAS Inst. Inc. 1985). The regression parameters were estimated using the maximum likelihood method, assuming binomially distributed errors. The global model significance, as well as the significance of the different regression parameters, was tested using the $-2\ln L$ statistic based on the χ^2 -test ($p < 0.05$), where L is the maximized likelihood. Besides response curves for each single abiotic variable separately, also all variables were simultaneously used in a stepwise multiple logistic regression analysis to derive a multivariate model that would predict the presence or absence of macrobenthic species. Negative depth values, ranging from -56.4 to $+2.2$ m, were replaced by positive values by changing sign (value $\times -1$) and adding 2.5 m. Since sediment characteristics were only available for a limited set of data, the analyses were run separately without ($n=2827$) and with ($n=1423$) sediment data, hereafter called data set A and data set B respectively. The significance of the independent variables was tested

using the χ^2 -test ($p < 0.05$) on the Wald statistic.

The resulting set of regression equations was validated internally. As a measure of classification accuracy the percentage of concordant pairs was used (a pair is concordant if the observation with larger ordered value of the response has a higher predicted event probability than does the observation with the smaller ordered value of the response). The predictive success of the response surfaces was further evaluated by cross tabulating observed and predicted responses (2x2 contingency table). The threshold at which this evaluation was made was determined by choosing that p -level which corresponded with the actually observed ratio between absences and presences. At p -values below that threshold the species was predicted to be absent, whereas at p -values above that threshold the species was predicted to be present. Besides the overall percentage correctly predicted, we examined also the *sensitivity* (the proportion of presences that were predicted to be presences) and *specificity* (the proportion of absences that were predicted to be absences). The probability of the observed contingency table occurring by random chance, given the row and column totals, was calculated with the Fisher's Exact Test. The Fisher's exact test consists of calculating the actual probability of the observed 2x2 contingency table with respect to all other possible 2x2 contingency tables with the same column and row totals. The hypothesis was tested if the proportion of presences predicted as present was greater than the proportion of absences predicted as present.

The ability of the final models to predict the probability of occurrence was evaluated by randomly splitting the data (from data set A) into two equal groups, building the model with the chosen variables using half of the data. We conducted ten such runs with ten different splits of the data on each species. Firstly, we tested these ten model runs, based on the random selections of 50 % of the data, for consistency of their prediction. For each species model we generated random sets of abiotic conditions, by generating 1000 uniformly distributed random numbers. For each species, ranges for the environmental variables were chosen relative to their observed distribution. For example, for the cockle *Cerastoderma edule* numbers varied in the ranges 10-30, 7-33, 0-20, 0-1 and 0-1.1 for model salinity, temporal salinity, depth, maximum ebb and maximum flood current velocity respectively. Temporal salinity was forced to be in a range of ± 3 of model salinity, and maximum flood current velocity likewise was selected in the range of $\pm 0.1 \text{ m.s}^{-1}$ of maximum ebb current velocity. We then generated predicted p -values for the 10 models, which were compared mutually. Secondly, we tested the predictions with the other half of the data sets by examining the overall percentage correctly predicted, the sensitivity and specificity for each of the ten data sets. This procedure examines the ability of the model to predict the occurrence of the species for locations that are not included in the model and is therefore a more rigorous test of classification accuracy.



Table 9.1. Environmental variables with numbers of observations, median, minimum and maximum values.

Variable		Observations	Median	Minimum	Maximum
Model salinity	psu	3112	22.3	5.69	31.61
Temporal salinity	psu	3112	19.1	1.15	32.39
Depth	NAP	2874	-2.9	-56.4	+2.2
Maximum ebb current velocity	m s ⁻¹	3037	0.60	0.01	1.64
Maximum flood current velocity	m s ⁻¹	3037	0.64	0.01	1.61
Median grain size	µm	1502	162	16	664
Mud content (< 63 µm)	%	1386	7.0	0	95.45

For ten contrasting macrobenthic species results are presented in detail: the polychaetes *Heteromastus filiformis*, *Pygospio elegans*, *Nereis diversicolor*, *Nephtys cirrosa*, *Spio* spp. and *Arenicola marina*, the molluscs (bivalves) *Macoma balthica* and *Cerastoderma edule*, and the crustaceans (amphipods) *Bathyporeia* spp. and *Corophium volutator*. These species represent different types of distribution and are indicator species for the macrobenthic assemblages found in the Schelde estuary, contributing substantially to the total abundance and biomass observed (YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1999; YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a, in prep.).

For *M. balthica*, *C. edule*, *C. volutator* and *N. cirrosa* also a visual, geographical comparison is presented between the mapped probability surfaces to the species occurrence maps.

Results

Characterization of the abiotic environment

Average model salinity, based on model calculations, varied between 5.7 and 31.6 for the whole study area (Table 9.1). Most samples (60%) were situated in the polyhaline zone (salinity >18), 31% in the α -mesohaline zone (salinity 10-18) and 15% in the β -mesohaline zone (salinity 5-10). The depth ranged between -56.4 m NAP and +2.2 m NAP. About 50% of the sampling occasions were situated in the intertidal zone (> -2 m NAP). Most of the subtidal samples (68%) were situated above -10 m NAP. Maximum ebb and flood current velocities varied between 0.01 and 1.64 m s⁻¹, with a mean of 0.64 m s⁻¹. 11 % of the samples had current velocities <0.25 m s⁻¹, 27 % between 0.25-0.5 m s⁻¹, 24 % between 0.50-0.75 m s⁻¹, 22 % between 0.75-1.00 m s⁻¹ and 16 % >1.00 m s⁻¹. Median grain size varied between 16 and 664 µm, with a mean of 165 µm. Mud content varied between 0 and 95 %, with a mean of 19%. 13 % of the samples were characterized as muddy (median grain size in range 2 - 63 µm), 19 % as very fine sand (63-125 µm), 54% as fine sand (125-250 µm) and 15% as medium sand (250-500 µm). More details on the abiotic environment of the same data set as used in this paper can be found in YSEBAERT & MEIRE (1999) and YSEBAERT et al. (in prep.).

Observed distributions of macrobenthic species along environmental variables

In Figure 9.2 the observed distribution of ten macrobenthic species along the environmental variables salinity, depth, maximum ebb current velocity and median grain size is presented by means of box and whisker plots. Characteristic polyhaline species, such as *A. marina*, *C. edule*, *N. cirrosa* and *Spio* spec. clearly distinguished from mesohaline species such as *C. volutator* and *N. diversicolor*, although the latter had a very wide range of occurrence. Species like *Bathyporeia* spp., *H. filiformis*, *M. balthica* and *P. elegans* take intermediate positions. With respect to depth, most species were observed mainly in the intertidal zone. Only *N. cirrosa* and *Spio* spp. were typically subtidal species, and *Bathyporeia* spec. and *H. filiformis* appeared to be present both in the intertidal and the subtidal zone.

Most species had a median occurrence between 0.3 and 0.5 m s⁻¹ for maximum ebb current velocity, with lowest values observed for *C. volutator* and *N. diversicolor*. Only *N. cirrosa* and *Spio* spp. had a median occurrence at much higher current velocities. For maximum flood current velocity similar results were obtained. *C. volutator* and *N. diversicolor* were observed mainly in very fine sand sediments, whereas *Spio* spp. and especially *N. cirrosa* were observed in coarser sediments.

Response curves for a single environmental (explanatory) variable

As an example of the obtained response curves for a single abiotic variable, Figures 9.3-9.6 show the fitted Gaussian logit curves for the ten macrobenthic species in relation to model salinity, depth, maximum ebb current velocity and median grain size. For all species at least one regression parameter was significantly entered in the different models by forward selection. The obtained response curves were in general agreement with the observed distributions from Figure 9.2.

Species like *C. volutator* and to a lesser extent also *N. diversicolor* showed a high probability of occurrence at low salinity (Figure 9.3). For *C. volutator* a steep decrease of the curve was observed with increasing salinity, whereas for



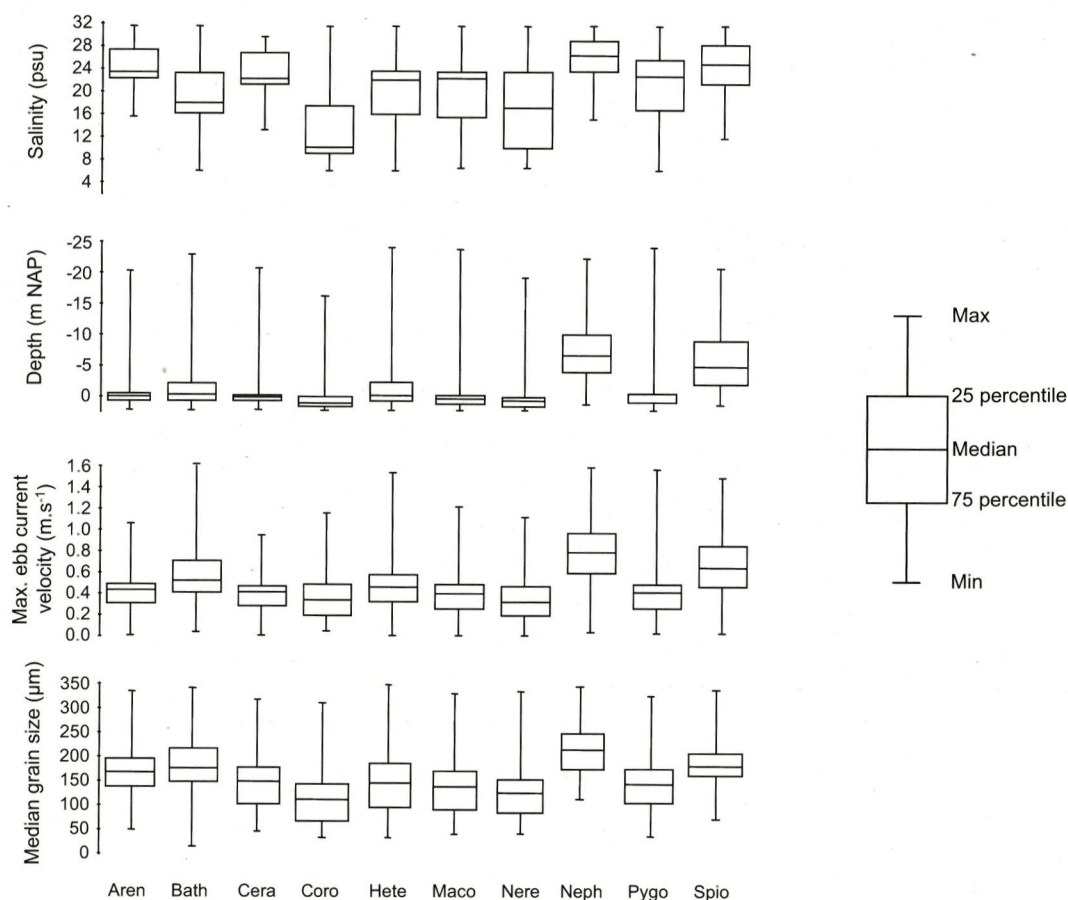


Figure 9.2. Boxes and Whisker plots for ten macrobenthic species with respect to (model) salinity, depth, maximum ebb current velocity and median grain size in the Schelde estuary. Species are ordered alphabetically: Aren = *Arenicola marina*, Bath = *Bathyporeia* spp., Cera = *Cerastoderma edule*, Coro = *Corophium volutator*, Hete = *Heteromastus filiformis*, Maco = *Macoma balthica*, Nere = *Nereis diversicolor*, Neph = *Nephtys cirrosa*, Pygo = *Pygospio elegans*, Spio = *Spio* spp.

N. diversicolor the decrease in the curve was much smoother, indicating that the species could also be observed at higher salinity. *Bathyporeia* spp. showed a bell-shaped curve with an optimum at intermediate salinities. Both at the lower end and at the upper end of the salinity range the probability of occurrence of this species decreased. Several species, like e.g. *C. edule*, *Arenicola marina*, *Spio* spp. and *N. cirrosa*, showed a clear optimum towards the higher end of the salinity range. These species differed in the position of their optimum, and in their tolerance towards the lower end of the salinity range. *M. balthica* showed an almost horizontal curve, indicating a very broad tolerance for salinity. Another species showing a broad tolerance for salinity was *H. filiformis*. In general 'temporal salinity' gave similar results as 'spatial salinity'.

The response curves in relation to depth showed for most macrobenthic species (e.g. *N. diversicolor*, *C. volutator*, *P. elegans*, *C. edule*) similar curves, with high probabilities of occurrence above NAP, and decreasing probabilities of occurrence with increasing depth (Figure 9.4). These species differed in their tolerance towards the deeper end of the depth range. *H. filiformis*, for instance, showed a relatively high tolerance with still a relatively high probability of occurrence in the subtidal zone. *Bathyporeia* spp. showed

only a slightly higher probability of occurrence in the intertidal zone, indicating a very broad depth tolerance. Species showing an optimum in the subtidal zone of the estuary were *N. cirrosa* and *Spio* spp.

Species like *C. volutator* and *N. diversicolor* showed the highest probability of occurrence at the lowest ebb current velocities (Figure 9.5). Other species like *M. balthica* and *P. elegans* showed a broad tolerance in the range 0-0.5 m.s⁻¹, after which a steep decline was observed in the probability of occurrence with increasing current velocities. This broad tolerance was even more pronounced for *H. filiformis*, which only showed a decrease of the probability of occurrence at the highest current velocities. *Bathyporeia* spp. on the other hand showed an almost horizontal curve, indicating that current velocity did not discriminate well for this species. Several species showed a unimodal, bell-shaped curve with a clear optimum (e.g. *C. edule*, *A. marina*). *N. cirrosa* was the only species showing an optimum towards the higher end of the current velocity range. Similar results were obtained for maximum flood current velocity.

The response curves in relation to median grain size clearly showed different responses for the different macrobenthic species (Figure 9.6). *N. diversicolor* showed the high-

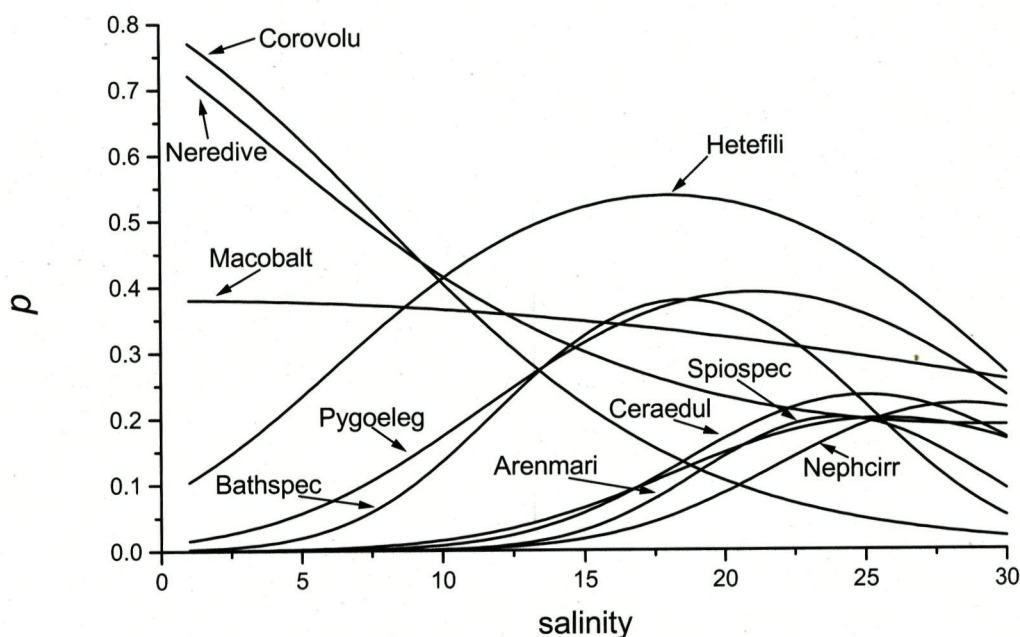


Figure 9.3. Probability of occurrence of ten macrobenthic species in relation to (model) salinity (psu) in the Schelde estuary, as fitted with logistic regression (p = species probability of occurrence). Species abbreviations are: Hete fili = *Heteromastus filiformis*; Maco balt = *Macoma balthica*; Pygo eleg = *Pygospio elegans*; Bath spec = *Bathyporeia* spp.; Cera edul = *Cerastoderma edule*; Neph cirr = *Nephtys cirrosa*; Nere dive = *Nereis diversicolor*; Coro volu = *Corophium volutator*; Spio spec = *Spio* spp.; Aren mari = *Arenicola marina*.

est probability of occurrence in very muddy sediments with a low median grain size, with a steep decrease in the probability of occurrence with increasing median grain size. The same pattern was observed for *C. volutator*, but showing a broader tolerance. This tolerance was even more pronounced for *M. balthica* and *H. filiformis*. *C. edule*

and *P. elegans* showed a bell-shaped curve with an optimum between 100-150 μm . This optimum shifted more towards a higher median grain size for *A. marina* (approx. 155 μm), *Spio* spp. (approx. 200 μm) and *Bathyporeia* spp. (approx. 225 μm). *N. cirrosa* showed an optimum towards the higher end of the median grain size range.

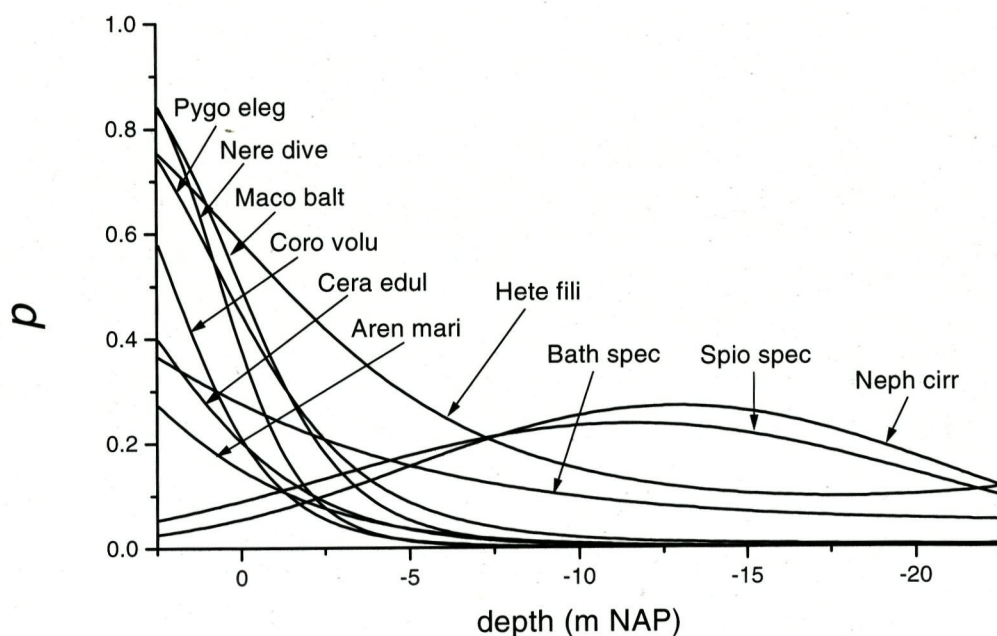


Figure 9.4. Probability of occurrence of ten macrobenthic species in relation to depth (m NAP) in the Schelde estuary, as fitted with logistic regression (p = species probability of occurrence). For species abbreviations: see Figure 9.3.

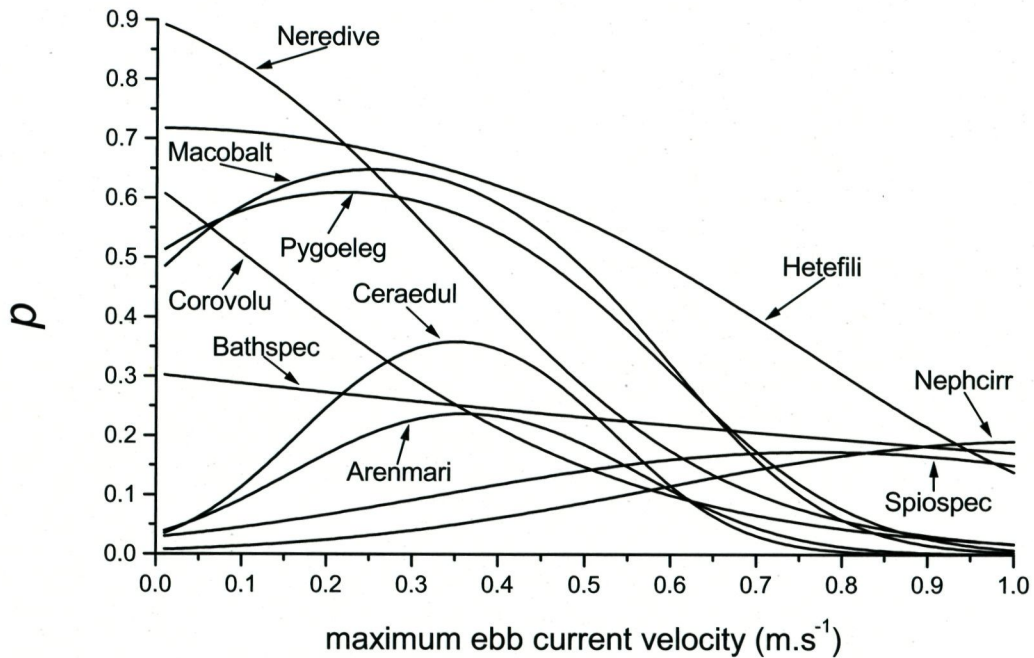


Figure 9.5. Probability of occurrence of ten macrobenthic species in relation to maximum ebb current velocity (m.s^{-1}) in the Schelde estuary, as fitted with logistic regression (p = species probability of occurrence). For species abbreviations: see Figure 9.3.

Multiple logistic regression

For each macrobenthic species a multiple stepwise logistic regression was run with all abiotic variables together. Since sediment characteristics were only available for a limited set of data, the analysis was run separately with and without sediment data.

Appendix 9.1 indicates the order in which the environmental variables were entered into the stepwise selection models. In all models, salinity (either model salinity, temporal salinity or both), depth, current velocity and sediment characteristics (for the models based on data set B) were entered into the models. Only for *M. balthica* salinity was not entered in the model based on data set A, which corresponds with the univariate model for salinity in which *M. balthica* showed a large tolerance.

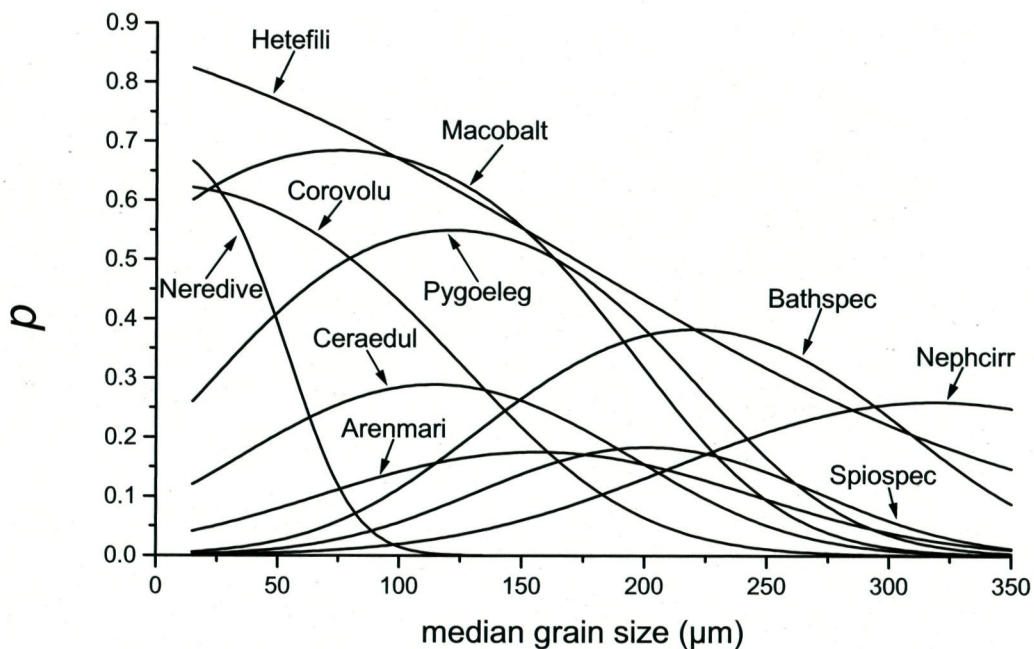


Figure 9.6. Probability of occurrence of ten macrobenthic species in relation to median grain size (μm) in the Schelde estuary, as fitted with logistic regression (p = species probability of occurrence). For species abbreviations: see Figure 9.3.

Table 9.2. Diagnostics for final multiple logistic regression models for each of ten macrobenthic species for the data set without sediment data set A) and the data set with sediment data (data set B). See Appendix 9.1 for the variables included in each model. Species abbreviations are: *Hete fili* = *Heteromastus filiformis*; *Maco balt* = *Macoma balthica*; *Pygo eleg* = *Pygospio elegans*; *Bath spp.* = *Bathyporeia spp.*; *Cera edul* = *Cerastoderma edule*; *Neph cirr* = *Nephtys cirrosa*; *Nere dive* = *Nereis diversicolor*; *Coro volu* = *Corophium volutator*; *Spio spp.*; *Aren mari* = *Arenicola marina*.

Diagnostics										
Data set A	<i>Hete fili</i>	<i>Maco balt</i>	<i>Pygo eleg</i>	<i>Bath spp.</i>	<i>Cera edul</i>	<i>Neph cirr</i>	<i>Nere dive</i>	<i>Coro volu</i>	<i>Spio spp.</i>	<i>Aren mari</i>
# Present	1164	820	773	583	352	339	660	394	304	269
# Absent	1663	2007	2054	2244	2475	2488	2167	2433	2523	2558
Intercept only (-2 Log L)	3831	3405	3317	2877	2125	2074	3072	2283	1930	1777
Intercept + covariates (-2 Log L)	2897	1915	1965	2356	1176	1623	1581	1210	1485	1214
Chi-square	952	1490	1352	521	949	451	1491	1074	445	563
DF	8	6	7	7	9	6	6	5	6	8
Probability	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001
Concordant pairs	92.9%	91.1%	90.3%	79.1%	93.0%	82.2%	82.3%	92.5%	83.6%	88.8%
p-threshold	0.51	0.61	0.50	0.38	0.42	0.32	0.47	0.33	0.29	0.35
% correctly predicted	75.2%	85.5%	85.6%	78.1%	90.0%	84.0%	88.3%	90.2%	87.8%	89.5%
Sensitivity	69.9%	75.0%	75.7%	46.8%	59.9%	33.3%	75.0%	64.7%	43.1%	44.6%
Specificity	80.0%	89.8%	90.8%	86.2%	94.3%	90.9%	92.4%	94.3%	93.1%	94.2%
Fisher exact-test: 1-tailed p	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001
Diagnostics										
Data set B	<i>Hete fili</i>	<i>Maco balt</i>	<i>Pygo eleg</i>	<i>Bath spp.</i>	<i>Cera edul</i>	<i>Neph cirr</i>	<i>Nere dive</i>	<i>Coro volu</i>	<i>Spio spp.</i>	<i>Aren mari</i>
# Present	686	562	492	331	232	102	454	313	169	172
# Absent	607	731	910	962	1061	1191	839	1089	1124	1121
Intercept only (-2 Log L)	1788	1770	1817	1471	1217	714	1676	1489	1003	1014
Intercept + covariates (-2 Log L)	1091	770	990	1044	679	449	896	750	604	620
Chi-square	696	1000	827	427	538	264	780	739	399	394
DF	12	8	7	7	7	6	8	5	8	8
Probability	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001
Concordant pairs	89.2%	91.7%	91.5%	85.3%	92.0%	91.1%	94.0%	92.7%	91.0%	90.8%
p-threshold	0.56	0.61	0.35	0.46	0.42	0.19	0.50	0.36	0.42	0.36
% correctly predicted	81.4%	87.3%	79.7%	80.8%	87.5%	91.8%	75.9%	88.9%	89.8%	86.9%
Sensitivity	82.5%	85.4%	71.1%	62.5%	65.1%	48.0%	65.6%	75.1%	60.9%	50.6%
Specificity	80.2%	88.8%	84.4%	87.1%	92.4%	95.6%	81.4%	92.8%	94.1%	92.4%
Fisher exact-test: 1-tailed p	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001	0.0001



Table 9.3. Summary of classification diagnostics for 50% of data (based on data set A, n=2827) used to build models. 50% of data was resampled ten times to create ten sets of data to build models (a) and ten sets of data to test models (b). Standard deviation is in brackets. Consistency of the ten model runs (a) for each species was tested on random sets of abiotic conditions, by generating 1000 uniformly distributed random numbers. The generated predicted p-values for the ten model runs were compared mutually and the range of the linear correlation coefficients between all pairs is presented.

Species	Correlation between 10 model runs	Mean concordance	Threshold p	% correctly predicted	Sensitivity	Specificity
(a) Model fitting data						
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>	0.976-0.999	82.4 (0.75)	0.50 (0.015)	75.5 (0.69)	70.0 (1.28)	79.3 (0.68)
<i>Macoma balthica</i>	0.968-0.998	91.2 (0.56)	0.59 (0.014)	85.9 (0.54)	75.4 (1.55)	90.1 (0.42)
<i>Pygospio elegans</i>	0.889-0.998	90.5 (0.78)	0.50 (0.010)	86.3 (0.76)	74.9 (1.77)	90.6 (0.56)
<i>Bathyporeia</i> spp.	0.979-0.999	79.2 (0.91)	0.38 (0.011)	77.7 (0.97)	47.2 (2.53)	85.9 (0.66)
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i>	0.895-0.991	92.8 (0.41)	0.41 (0.020)	89.9 (0.90)	59.1 (2.73)	94.2 (0.54)
<i>Nephtys cirrosa</i>	0.889-0.996	82.4 (0.70)	0.32 (0.018)	84.1 (0.80)	34.3 (2.11)	91.0 (0.51)
<i>Nereis diversicolor</i>	0.958-0.998	93.0 (0.43)	0.43 (0.012)	87.7 (0.88)	66.0 (4.63)	92.7 (0.49)
<i>Corophium volutator</i>	0.963-0.999	92.3 (0.76)	0.33 (0.012)	90.3 (1.18)	64.5 (2.08)	94.2 (1.32)
<i>Spio</i> spp.	0.973-0.999	83.5 (1.08)	0.29 (0.015)	87.4 (0.90)	42.1 (3.10)	93.0 (0.53)
<i>Arenicola marina</i>	0.889-0.994	88.6 (0.35)	0.35 (0.017)	89.2 (0.77)	43.1 (3.91)	94.1 (0.49)
(b) Model testing data						
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>			0.50 (0.022)	75.3 (1.48)	70.2 (1.86)	78.9 (1.38)
<i>Macoma balthica</i>			0.61 (0.022)	95.0 (0.41)	74.4 (1.15)	89.4 (0.42)
<i>Pygospio elegans</i>			0.52 (0.024)	86.4 (0.64)	74.9 (1.69)	90.6 (0.45)
<i>Bathyporeia</i> spp.			0.39 (0.020)	78.6 (0.83)	46.8 (2.58)	86.6 (0.56)
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i>			0.41 (0.020)	89.9 (0.87)	59.7 (2.74)	94.3 (0.53)
<i>Nephtys cirrosa</i>			0.33 (0.026)	85.1 (0.73)	30.2 (2.02)	91.6 (0.46)
<i>Nereis diversicolor</i>			0.42 (0.024)	87.9 (0.86)	69.6 (2.01)	92.5 (0.72)
<i>Corophium volutator</i>			0.34 (0.032)	90.4 (0.57)	67.2 (2.43)	94.4 (0.34)
<i>Spio</i> spp.			0.29 (0.024)	88.7 (0.69)	42.3 (2.44)	93.7 (0.41)
<i>Arenicola marina</i>			0.35 (0.030)	89.1 (0.78)	42.4 (4.84)	94.0 (0.45)

The final model for each species contained between five and nine variables with concordant pairs of 79.1% to 93% for data set A, and between five and twelve variables with concordant pairs of 85.3% to 94.0% for data set B (Table 9.2). The explained deviance between the intercept only model and the intercept+covariates model varied between 18.2 and 48.5 % and between 29.0 and 52.5 % for data set A and B respectively. All final models were highly significant with P-values at 0.0001 for both data sets. The sensitivity and specificity were moderate to high for most species, the sensitivity being higher in most cases for the data set with sediment characteristics.

Final models for each species appeared quite stable, as ten model runs (based on the random selections of 50 % of the data) on randomly generated sets of abiotic conditions generated highly correlated predictions (Table 9.3). All linear correlation coefficients between pairs of models were in the range of 0.89 to 0.99 for each species. Also the % of concordant pairs, % correctly predicted, sensitivity and specificity did not change much as a function of which random set of 50% of the data is used to build the model (Table 9.3a) and test the model (Table 9.3b). The standard deviations of these diagnostics were low which suggested

that the models were not very dependent on any particular set of observations.

Maps of the probability of occurrence of the macrobenthic species appeared to be fairly consistent with the observations of presence and absence in the Schelde estuary, as shown in Figures 9.7 to 9.10 for *M. balthica*, *C. edule*, *C. volutator* and *N. cirrosa* respectively. *M. balthica* was observed along the complete salinity gradient, mainly in the intertidal zone, and the highest probabilities of occurrence coincided with this distribution. This was also observed for *C. edule* and *C. volutator*, two species with respectively a mainly polyhaline, intertidal distribution and a mainly mesohaline, intertidal distribution. *C. edule* showed a low probability of occurrence in the α -mesohaline zone, whereas *C. volutator* showed a low probability of occurrence in the polyhaline zone of the estuary. *N. cirrosa* was a relatively common species in the subtidal, polyhaline zone of the Schelde estuary, penetrating the estuary up to the α -mesohaline zone. The model predicted a much broader distribution for this species, as was observed from the high probabilities of occurrence at almost all sampling locations in the subtidal, polyhaline zone. Upstream of the polyhaline zone the model showed a decreasing probability of occurrence.

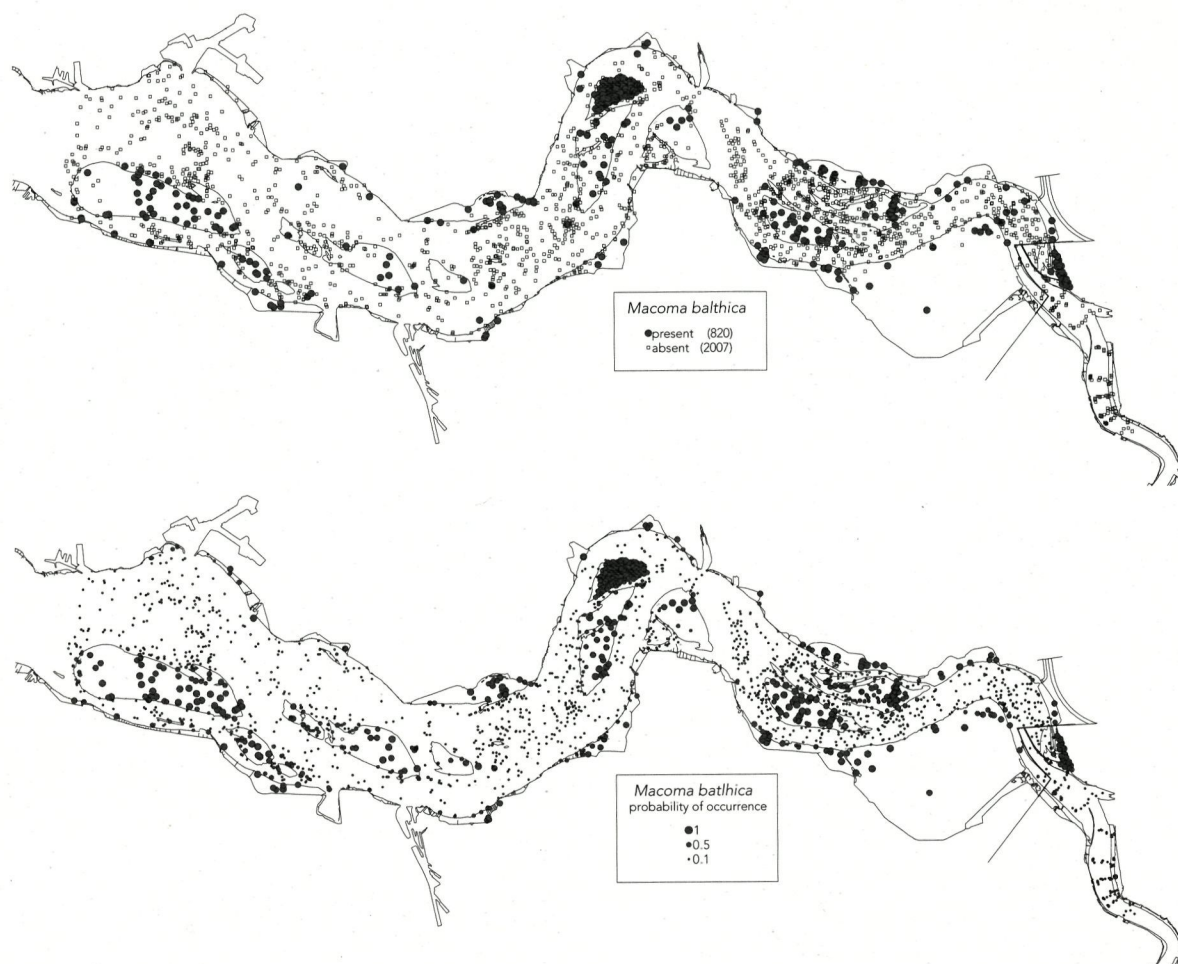


Figure 9.7. The observed distribution (presence/absence) of *Macoma balthica* (top panel) and the distribution of the determined probabilities of species occurrence based on the multiple logistic regression model without sediment data (bottom panel). Probabilities of occurrence (p) are shown on a graduated scale.

Discussion

In his review on 'ecology of benthic macro-invertebrates in soft-sediment environment: progress towards quantitative models and predictions', CONSTABLE (1999) stated that the established need for developing statistical models and rigorous experimental designs has not penetrated far into the soft-substratum ecological literature. In this study we statistically modeled and predicted the distribution (presence/absence) of individual macrobenthic species at scales relevant to management, based on small-scale core-sample information and environmental habitat variables including salinity, depth, currents (flow) and sediment composition.

Our model approach gave environmental response surfaces for individual macrobenthic species based on several known deterministic abiotic environmental variables, being salinity, depth/elevation, tidal currents and sediment characteristics, which act at different spatial scales. Salinity obviously is a major determining factor for species distributions in estuaries (BOESCH 1977; WOLFF 1983; DITTMER

1983; MICHAELIS 1983; MANNINO & MONTAGNA 1997; YSEBAERT et al. 1998a) and will determine the large-scale, longitudinal distributions. By including 'temporal salinity', we also built in the possible role of seasonal variation in salinity in explaining species distribution (e.g. HOLLAND et al. 1987). Depth/elevation, especially when considering the full range from the deep subtidal zone to the high intertidal zone, has a pronounced effect on the macrofauna species distribution along the vertical gradient within estuaries (CRAEYMEERSCH 1999; YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1999). Related to depth are the tidal currents, which are generally stronger in the subtidal than in the intertidal zone. WARWICK & UNCLES (1980) related the subtidal distribution of macrobenthic species to the tidal stress which is most pronounced in the channels. Interactions of macrobenthic communities with their environment have traditionally been considered in the context of "static" physical factors such as sediment characteristics and tidal inundation or exposure time, which are in turn determined largely by hydrodynamic processes (NOWELL & JUMARS 1984; WARWICK et al. 1991; HALL 1994).



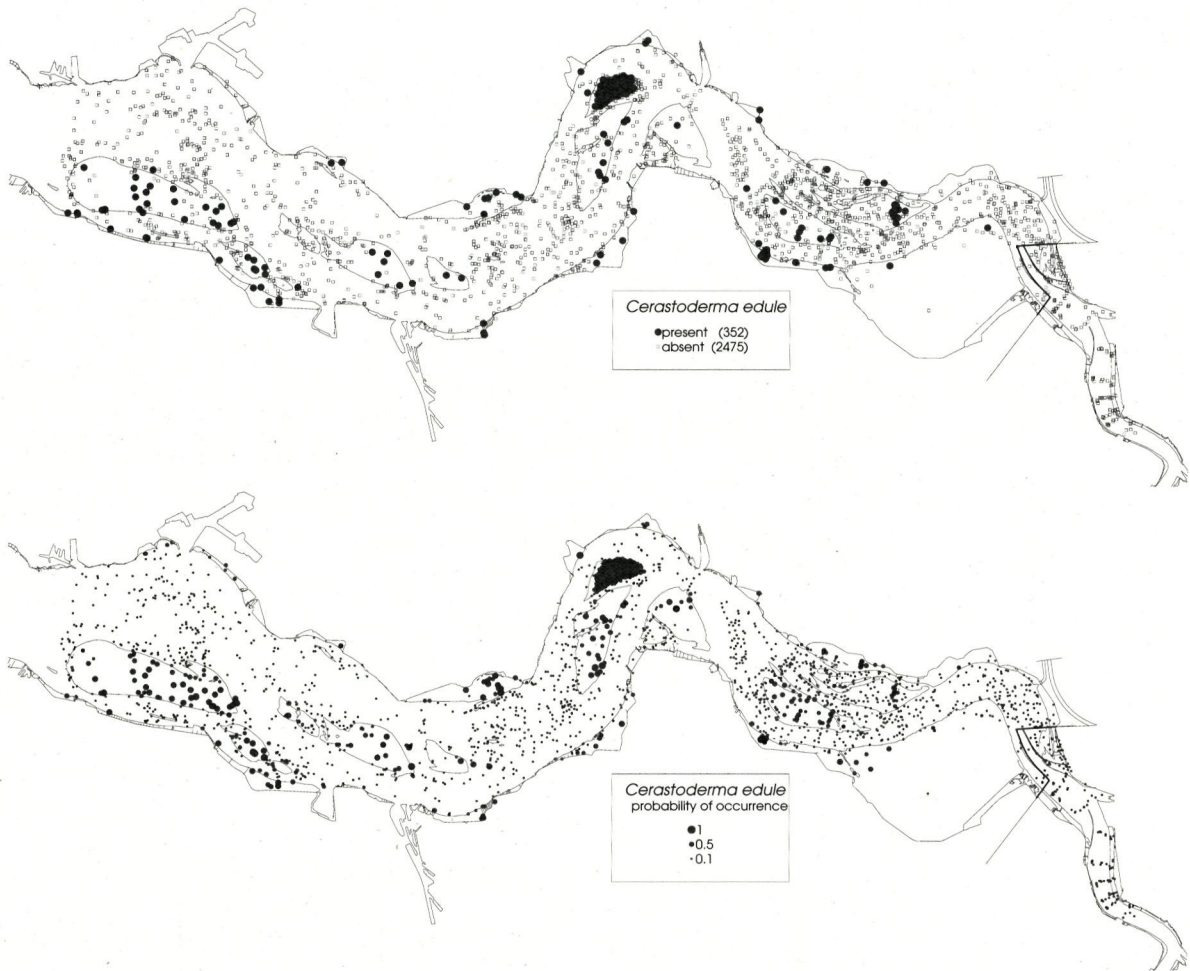


Figure 9.8. The observed distribution (presence/absence) of *Cerastoderma edule* (top panel) and the distribution of the determined probabilities of species occurrence based on the multiple logistic regression model without sediment data (bottom panel). Probabilities of occurrence (p) are shown on a graduated scale.

The importance of hydrodynamic variables such as current velocity, bed shear stress and wind-wave activity have also been recognized as influencing larval settlement and post-settlement transport (GRANT 1983; BUTMAN 1987; COMMITO et al. 1995), availability of particulate food resources (MILLER et al. 1992; WILDISH & KRISTMANSON 1997) and the stability of the substratum (WARWICK et al. 1991; BELL et al. 1997; GRANT et al. 1997). At the local (smaller) spatial scale sediment composition has been shown to influence estuarine benthic assemblage structure and species distribution (GRAY 1974; BEUKEMA 1976; JUNOY & VIÉTEZ 1990; WARWICK et al. 1991; MEIRE et al. 1994).

These abiotic environmental variables (salinity, depth, maximum ebb and flood current velocities, median grain size and mud content) were used to statistically model and predict, through logistic regression, the distribution (presence/absence) of individual estuarine macrobenthic species at the estuarine macro- and meso-scale. Logistic regression has been applied in many ecological studies but in the field of marine and estuarine animal ecology this technique has hardly been used. On a univariate level, the obtained

response curves in function of the different abiotic environmental variables were in general agreement with the descriptive statistics on the occurrence of the different species along these gradients and are in general agreement with findings of the literature (see also YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1999).

In most of our multivariate models, one or more estimates of salinity, depth, current velocity and sediment characteristics (for the models with sediment data) are entered into the models. This multivariate modeling approach allowed incorporation of heterogeneity both within and across scales. Several of the environmental variables included in this analysis are correlated (see also YSEBAERT et al. in prep.). As an example, depth is highly correlated with current velocities and to a lesser extent with sediment characteristics. Many pairs of mutually correlated variables were nevertheless included in the stepwise procedure in the same model. This is likely caused by the fact that these correlations were not spatially consistent. When examined at different scales, the correlation between two variables may change. Therefore, when one variable is entered into the model, a second variable that is on average correlated

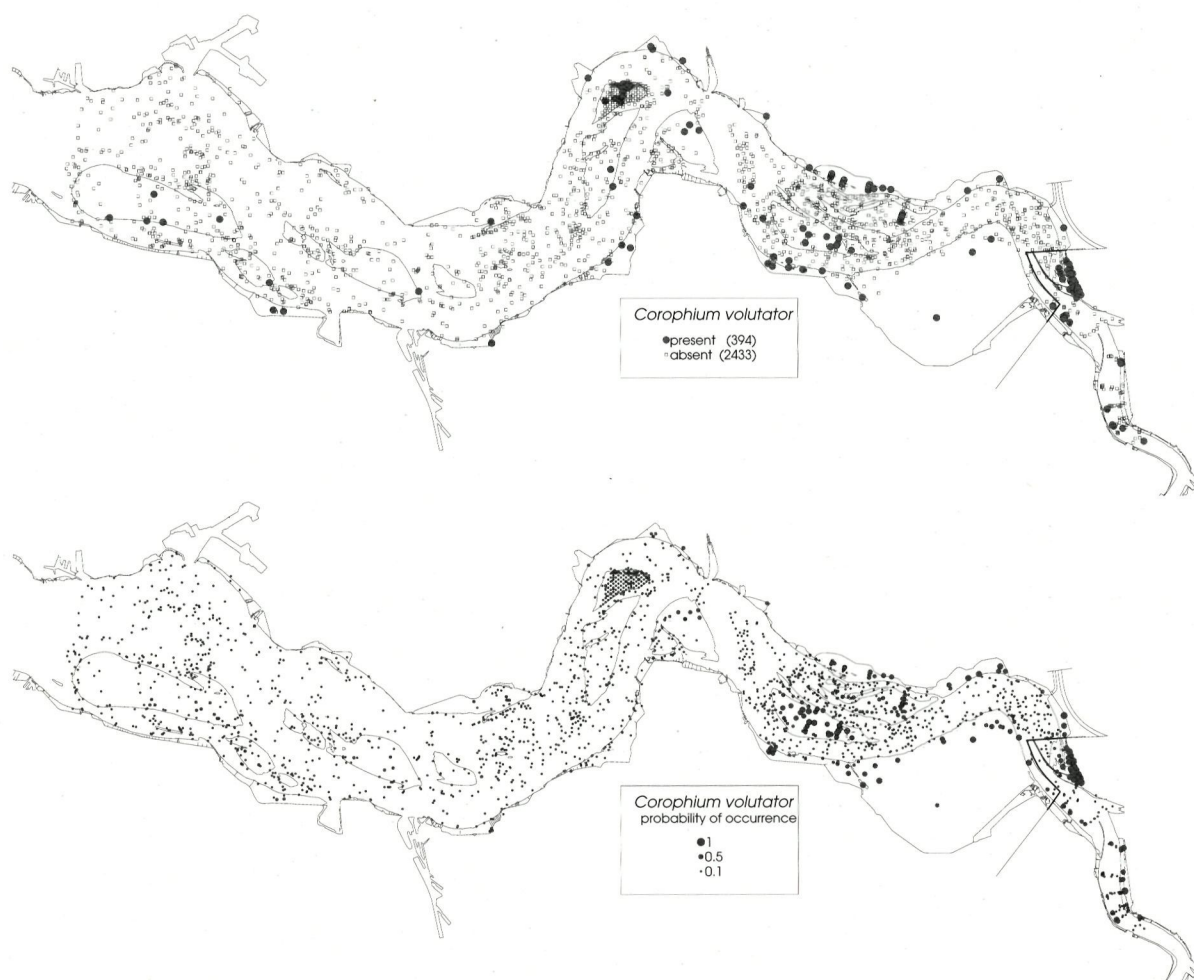


Figure 9.9. The observed distribution (presence/absence) of *Corophium volutator* (top panel) and the distribution of the determined probabilities of species occurrence based on the multiple logistic regression model without sediment data (bottom panel). Probabilities of occurrence (p) are shown on a graduated scale.

with the first may still explain variation in the probability of occurrence.

In our model approach we used environmental variables as predictors for the distribution of macrobenthic species. An alternative, but not mutually exclusive viewpoint is that distributions are controlled more directly by biotic interactions, such as predation and inter- and intraspecific competition (WILSON 1991; OLAFSSON et al. 1994). The relative importance of processes determining the spatial distribution of macrofaunal species may depend on the scale considered. Biologically generated patterns tend to be more important at micro-scale ($< 1\text{m}$) but are less likely to appear at a macro- or meso-scale (LEGENDRE et al. 1997; THRUSH et al. 1997). However, relatively large-scale patterns generated by biological interactions have also been described. The lugworm *Arenicola marina* influences the distribution of many other species by its bioturbating activities, e.g. the polychaete *Pygospio elegans* (REISE 1985), the amphipod *Corophium volutator* (FLACH 1992), the seagrass *Zoltera noltii* (PHILIPPART 1994). It is likely, in such cases, that the environ-

mental factors determining the distribution of the superior competitor will be indirectly reflected in the response functions for the expelled species, falsely suggesting a direct dependence on abiotic factors where in fact a biologically mediated dependence may be the case. Similar arguments may be valid with respect to the possibilities for settlement of some species. If the abiotic conditions at a particular place are within the tolerance limits of the adults, but conditions are adverse for settlement of juveniles, this may lead to absence of the species. In summary, therefore, the patterns described by the response curves should not be interpreted as descriptions of the physiological limits of the species or of the adults in the species, but as descriptions of actual distribution patterns as a function of abiotic variables, whatever the direct or indirect dependence on these variables may be.

Quantifying the associations between the probability of occurrence of estuarine macrobenthic species and abiotic environmental variables allows us to generate predictions of distribution, which may be robust even if the mecha-



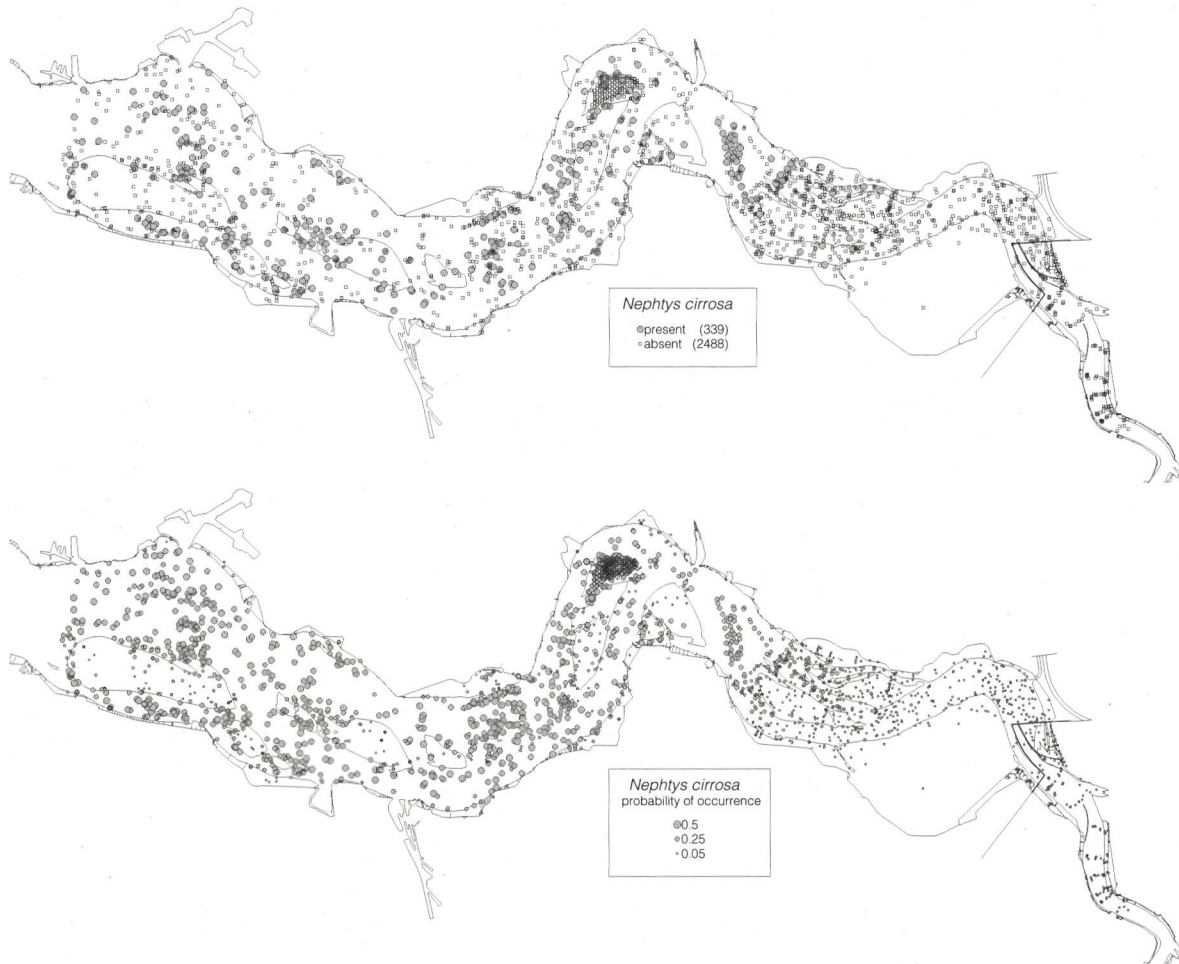


Figure 9.10. The observed distribution (presence/absence) of *Nephtys cirrosa* (top panel) and the distribution of the determined probabilities of species occurrence based on the multiple logistic regression model without sediment data (bottom panel). Probabilities of occurrence (p) are shown on a graduated scale.

nisms or processes are not known. Indeed, the type of pattern analysis conducted in this study does not allow to draw any direct conclusions on the processes that determine macrobenthic species distribution. Nevertheless, pattern analysis and modeling are critical steps in ecological research and resource management (THRUSH et al. 1999). Where patterns of distribution are strongly and directly coupled to physicochemical processes, as is the case at the estuarine macro- and meso-scale, our modeling approach was capable of predicting macrobenthic species distributions with a relatively high degree of success.

We are able to predict the probability of occurrence for some species better than for others. This variability in success may have different causes. It is difficult to ascertain that all (or most) of the relevant factors for the distribution of a species have been taken into account. Statistical approaches such as the one followed here depend on the ability to assemble sufficient environmental information at all sampling points. Potentially important factors related to food availability (e.g. biomass and productivity of micro-

phytobenthos - HERMAN et al., in press; productivity of the phytoplankton - HERMAN et al. 1999) have not been taken into account. Likewise, we have restricted our analyses here to single species, excluding possible strong interactions between different macrobenthic populations. The spatial resolution for most abiotic variables used was very high, but may still have been insufficient, especially at the edges of the intertidal flats. Strong gradients in height, current velocities and sediment composition may occur at these edges, and this may be a reason for the relatively high percentage of prediction failures at these edges. Moreover, intertidal flats are mobile over time, and we have imposed a fixed bathymetry and current patterns onto a biological data set gathered over a ten year period. From the sampling practice we know that some edges of tidal flats may move tens or even hundreds of meters in a few years time. Although preliminary trend analyses did not reveal strong evolutions of the biological communities over the past ten years, some trends could also have gone unnoticed and caused additional unexplained variation. Finally, our analysis

has not taken into account the small-scale spatial structure of macrobenthic populations. Due to patchiness of the populations, and the size of the sampling units, a zero observation (species is absent) can have quite different meanings: either the species is really absent from the zone sampled, or it is present very nearby but missed by the sampling. It can be expected that such effects are variable between species. Rare, large or very clumped populations are expected to have more 'false zeros' than abundant, small and homogeneously distributed populations. Correction of the estimation methods for these effects would require a thorough investigation of small-scale distributions of the different species, which could potentially lead to an improvement of the prediction success. Identifying patterns at various spatial scales may also provide a clue as to the kinds of processes that operate at that particular scale (THRUSH et al. 1999).

The next step will be to investigate the possibility of using the models and predictions for evaluation of the effects of different management schemes (e.g. a further deepening of the shipping channel) within the Schelde estuary. This requires an evaluation of the robustness of the models to different states of the system. The most appropriate test for this robustness is to investigate the applicability of the models in other estuarine systems. Including process information, especially on the feeding habits of the macrobenthic species, and natural history information will certainly improve the quality and generality of the models by making the predictions more robust to changes in physico-chemical forcing of the system and in the long-term will allow the development of models of the action and interaction of processes operating at different scales (ALLEN & STAR 1982; WIENS 1989; THRUSH 1991; SCHNEIDER 1994; THRUSH et al. 1999).

Acknowledgements

We thank all the people involved in taking and sorting the samples that made up our database. In particular we thank Johan Craeymeersch and John Buijs who were responsible for much of the sampling and for setting up large parts of the database. The help of Marijn van Helvert was needed for the hydrodynamical simulations. We thank Greet De Gueldre for comments on the manuscript. This study was part of the ECOFLAT project, a research project funded by the European Commission in the framework of ENVIRONMENT & CLIMATE Programme (contract number ENV4-CT96-0216), being part of ELOISE (European Land Ocean Interactions Studies). This is contribution no. xxx to the EU programme ELOISE and contribution no. xxx of the Netherlands Institute of Ecology.



Appendix 9.1. The maximum-likelihood estimates of the logistic regression parameters for the species response surfaces. The probability of occurrence is calculated as $p = e^x / (1 + e^x)$, where x is the solution to the regression function. Parameters derived both from the model without sediment data ($n=2827$ samples) and the model with sediment data ($n=1293$ samples) are presented. Negative depth values, ranging from -56.4 to +2.2 m, were replaced by positive values by changing sign (value*-1) and adding 2.5 m.

Without sediment data		With sediment data		Without sediment data		With sediment data	
<i>Heteromastus filiformis</i>				<i>Macoma balthica</i>			
Intercept	-2.2298	Intercept	-7.5618	Intercept	0.4229	Intercept	0.6798
Max. flood	removed	Max. flood	-2.9286	Max. flood	3.5401	Median ²	-0.00006
Max. ebb ²	-0.7335	Depth	-0.2340	Depth	-0.4422	Depth	removed
Temporal sal. ²	-0.00426	Median	-0.00552	Depth ²	0.00823	Model. sal.	-0.3009
Temporal sal.	0.1147	Model sal.	0.4851	Max. flood ²	-5.8467	Max. flood ²	-10.5546
Model sal.	0.3433	Model sal. ²	-0.00845	Max. ebb ²	-4.7585	Temp. sal ²	-0.0159
Model sal. ²	-0.00845	Mud	0.1073	Max. ebb	3.6948	Temp. sal.	0.3963
Max. flood ²	-1.7250	Mud ²	-0.00114			Model sal. ²	0.0140
Depth ²	0.00448	Max. flood ²	removed			Depth ²	-0.0980
Depth	-0.1261	Temp. sal ²	-0.0129				
		Temp. sal.	0.3599	<i>Pygospio elegans</i>			
		Depth ²	0.00732	Intercept	-5.2640	Intercept	-7.5609
		Max. ebb	7.7127	Max. flood	removed	Max. flood	-3.1578
		Max. ebb ²	-4.9373	Depth	-0.3914	Model sal.	0.9682
				Depth ²	0.0103	Model sal. ²	-0.0213
<i>Nereis diversicolor</i>				Model sal.	0.6872	Median ²	-0.00006
Intercept	7.3822	Intercept	9.0758	Model sal. ²	-0.0156	Depth	-0.4163
Max. flood	-1.1788	Max. ebb	-3.8073	Max. ebb ²	-1.0291	Depth ²	0.0125
Depth	-0.6146	Median	-0.00954	Max. flood ²	-2.3810	Median	0.0102
Depth ²	0.0106	Depth	-0.6606				
Model sal.	-0.4199	Depth ²	0.0197	<i>Bathyporeia spec.</i>			
Max. ebb	-2.8955	Model sal.	-0.0878	Intercept	-7.2309	Intercept	-2.6535
Model sal. ²	0.00871	Model sal. ²	removed	Depth	-0.2882	Mud	-0.0978
		Mud ²	-0.00024	Temp. sal ²	-0.00626	Depth	-0.4620
		Temp. sal.	-0.3703	Temp. sal.	0.1585	Depth ²	0.0126
		Temp. sal ²	0.0105	Max. ebb ²	1.1721	Max. ebb	4.1235
				Depth ²	0.00571	Temp. sal. ²	-0.0125
<i>Corophium volutator</i>				Model sal.	0.6689	Temp. sal.	0.3857
Intercept	6.6438	Intercept	6.2743	Model sal. ²	-0.0169	Max. ebb ²	-1.7495
Model sal.	-0.4245	Median	-0.0111				
Max. ebb	-3.2311	Max. ebb	-3.3653	<i>Spio spec.</i>			
Depth	-0.4134	Model sal.	-0.1884	Intercept	-16.9542	Intercept	-17.1183
Depth ²	0.00755	Depth	-0.4738	Temp. sal. ²	removed	Temp. sal.	1.1932
Model sal. ²	0.00582	Depth ²	0.0145	Temp. sal.	0.3402	Model sal. ²	-0.00635
				Model sal. ²	-0.0204	Max. flood	6.0268
<i>Nephtys cirrosa</i>				Model sal.	0.7173	Max. flood ²	-2.7218
Intercept	-19.6625	Intercept	-13.8353	Max. ebb ²	-0.5283	Model sal. ²	-0.0151
Temp. sal.	0.7573	Depth	0.5568	Max. ebb	removed	Median ²	-0.00003
Max. ebb	7.4088	Temp. sal.	0.8223	Max. flood	8.0842	Mud	-0.1292
Temp. sal ²	-0.0151	Depth ²	-0.0181	Max. flood ²	-5.1461	Mud ²	0.00146
Max. ebb ²	-3.6803	Temp. sal ²	-0.0154				
Model sal.	0.4195	Mud	-0.1074	<i>Arenicola marina</i>			
Model sal. ²	-0.00728	Max. ebb ²	-0.8913	Intercept	-13.4934	Intercept	-9.3460
				Max. flood	-1.9627	Model sal.	0.2921
<i>Cerastoderma edule</i>				Model sal.	1.0284	Max. flood	-3.3583
Intercept	-13.2667	Intercept	-11.5229	Model sal. ²	-0.0194	Temp. sal ²	-0.00260
Max. flood	removed	Max. flood	-4.0737	Depth	-0.2633	Depth	1.4338
Model sal.	0.6427	Model sal.	0.6943	Max. ebb ²	-6.6295	Depth ²	-0.3155
Depth	-0.3871	Median ²	-0.00004	Max. ebb	5.4847	Max. ebb	3.0047
Model sal. ²	-0.0129	Model sal. ²	-0.0114	Depth ²	0.00438	Median ²	-0.00007
Temp. sal.	0.2972	Temp. sal.	0.4338	Temp. sal ²	-0.00099	Median	0.0208
Max. flood ²	-4.0479	Depth	-0.1868				
Depth ²	0.00696	Temp. sal ²	-0.0103				
Max. ebb ²	-18.4287						
Max. ebb	14.7480						
Temp. sal. ²	-0.00503						



Chapter 10

Waterbird communities along the estuarine salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary, NW-Europe

T. Ysebaert, P.L. Meininger, P. Meire, K. Devos, C.M. Berrevoets, R.C.W. Strucker and E. Kuijken

Abstract

The zonation of non-breeding waterbirds along the Schelde estuary (The Netherlands-Belgium), one of the longest estuaries in NW-Europe with still a complete salinity gradient, including a large freshwater tidal area, was described. Numbers of birds were counted monthly over the period October 1991 to June 1997. Highest numbers of waterbirds were observed in late autumn and winter, with annual peak numbers ranging between 150,000 and 235,000 individuals for the whole estuary. Based on a multivariate analysis different waterbird communities were observed along the salinity gradient. The polyhaline areas of the estuary were numerically dominated by the waders Oystercatcher and Dunlin. Due to the presence of a large brackish marsh in the mesohaline zone, the waterbird community in this area was dominated by the herbivores Wigeon and Greylag Goose. In the oligohaline and freshwater tidal areas, the waterbird community was dominated by duck species, with Teal and Mallard being the most important. The international importance of the Schelde estuary for waterbirds was evidenced by the fact that for 21 waterbird species the 1% level criterion, according to the Ramsar convention, was exceeded. The relation of the observed diversity and community patterns with the functional and habitat diversity of the Schelde estuary as well as the effect of recent conservation measures to preserve this habitat were discussed.

Introduction

Estuaries are defined as inlets of the sea reaching into a river valley as far as the upper limit of tidal rise (FAIRBRIDGE 1980). Estuaries are cited among the most productive biomes of the world (ODUM 1983; DAY et al. 1989; COSTANZA et al. 1993) and support important biogeochemical processes that are central to the planet's functioning,

e.g. nutrient cycling (BILLEN et al. 1991; COSTANZA et al. 1997). Birds benefit from this high level of productivity, and for many waterbird species estuaries are of vital importance for one or more stages of their life cycle (e.g. PIENKOWSKI & EVANS 1984; SMIT & PIERSMA 1989; DAVIDSON et al. 1991; ENS et al. 1994). However, most of the threats to biodiversity are precisely in the estuarine zone and are a direct result of human population and demographic trends (PRATER 1981; SMIT et al. 1987; DAVIDSON et al. 1991; SUCHANEK 1994; GRAY 1997; MCLUSKY 1999).

Because of their position at the top of the food web birds are good indicators of environmental changes (FURNESS & GREENWOOD 1993). Waterbirds are widely used in monitoring programmes as an indicator of the value of wetland habitats (MOSER et al. 1993; SCOTT & ROSE 1996). Within the Ramsar Convention (Convention of Wetlands of International Importance Especially as Waterfowl Habitat, Ramsar 1971, and 1982 Protocol) the 1% criterion states that a wetland should be considered internationally important if it regularly supports 1% of the individuals of a population of one species of waterfowl (ATKINSON-WILLES 1976; BOYD & PIROT 1989; SCOTT & ROSE 1996).

Several papers demonstrate the importance of coastal and estuarine areas for waterbirds (e.g. MEIRE et al. 1989; DAVIDSON et al. 1991; SCHEKKERMAN et al. 1994; MELTOFTE et al. 1994). However, very few papers deal with the zonation of waterbird communities along a complete salinity gradient, including poly- and mesohaline as well as freshwater tidal areas. Especially freshwater tidal areas are nowadays very rare habitats, and knowledge on these areas is poor (ODUM 1988).

The Schelde estuary is one of the longest estuaries in NW-Europe with still a complete salinity gradient according to the classification of estuarine divisions of MCLUSKY (1993, 1999). In this paper the zonation of non-breeding waterbird communities along the salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary is described. Emphasis is given to the spatial and seasonal distribution. Annual trends will be discussed elsewhere. The importance of the Schelde estuary as a wetland for waterbirds according to the Ramsar convention is determined. The possible relation of the observed diversity and community patterns with the functional and habitat diversity of the Schelde estuary as well as the effect of recent conservation measures to preserve this habitat are discussed.



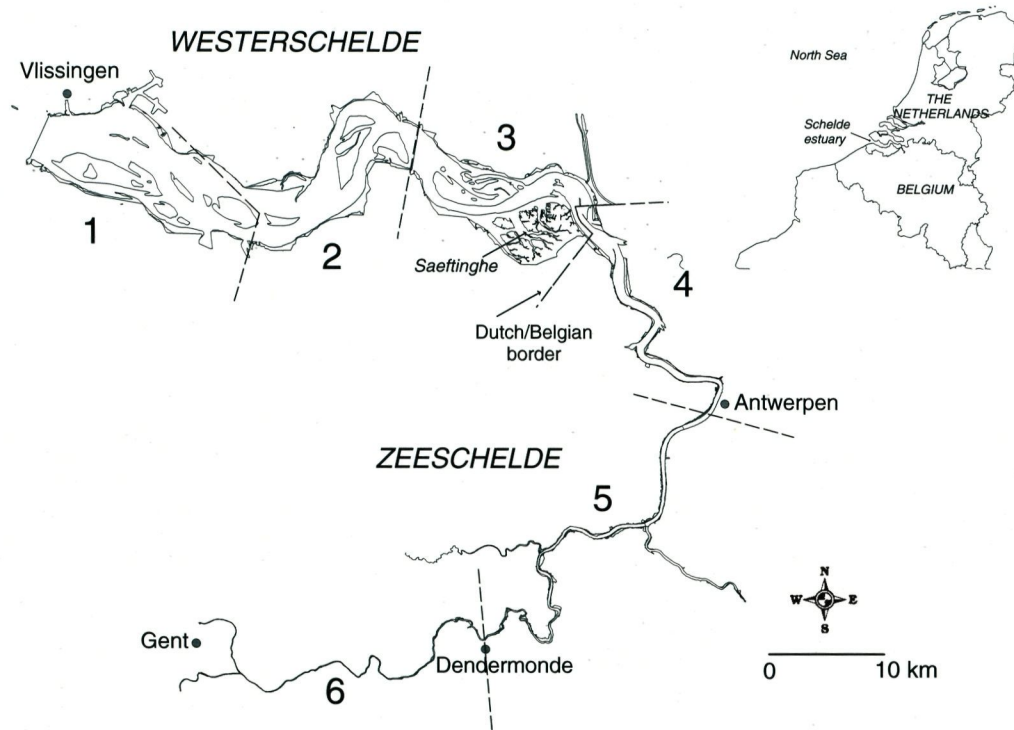


Figure 10.1. Map of the Schelde estuary situated between Vlissingen (The Netherlands) and Gent (Belgium), with its division in Westerschelde (areas 1-3), and Zeeschelde (areas 4-6).

Materials and methods

Study area

The Schelde estuary measures 160 km from Vlissingen (The Netherlands) upstream to Gent (Belgium) (Figure 10.1). The width is about 100 m at Dendermonde, 500 m at Antwerpen, 1500 m near the Dutch-Belgian border, and 4500 m at Vlissingen with a maximum of 7800 m. The mean tidal range increases from 3.8 m at Vlissingen to 5.3 m at Antwerpen. At Gent the tidal range is still 2 m. The Westerschelde (55 km) represents the downstream Dutch part of the estuary. It is a well mixed region, characterized by a complex morphology with flood and ebb channels surrounding several large intertidal flats. The surface of the Westerschelde amounts to 310 km², with the intertidal area covering 35%. The Zeeschelde (105 km), the Belgian part of the estuary, is characterized by a single channel, bordered by relatively small mudflats and marshes (28% of total surface). The surface of the Zeeschelde amounts to only 44 km². Human activities are mainly concentrated in the Zeeschelde, where agglomerations and industries are located close to the river banks. The intertidal zone is often absent (e.g. quays, wharfs) or very narrow, consisting only of dikes with a steep hard substrate of rubble. Upstream of Dendermonde, the estuary is almost completely canalized.

Bird counts

In the Westerschelde, waterbird censuses were organized by the National Institute for Coastal and Marine Management (RIKZ) (e.g. MEININGER et al. 1997, 1998). Every month counts were performed during high tide, when birds concentrated on roosts. In the Zeeschelde, a waterbird monitoring programme was carried out by the Institute of Nature Conservation (e.g. YSEBAERT et al. 1998b, 1999). Here, monthly censuses were done at low tide from boats, when birds were present in the intertidal zone. In both Westerschelde and Zeeschelde count dates were set close to mid-month.

Neighbouring areas, between which bird movements were frequent, were counted on the same day. For the Westerschelde missing counts were covered by the method of imputing (UNDERHILL & PRYS-JONES 1994). The results presented in this study deal with counts over the period October 1991 to June 1997, representing 69 observation months. For the Zeeschelde no counts were available for the period May-August 1992. During the six-year observation period, only two winters (1995/96 and 1996/97) were really cold with respectively 14 and 18 days showing freezing temperatures all day. The other winters ranged from mild to normal with on average 4 days with freezing temperatures all day.



Table 10.1. Surface area (ha) of the intertidal zone (tidal flats and marshes) and subtidal zone in the different areas along the Schelde estuary. Areas 1-3: Westerschelde. Areas 4-6: Zeeschelde.

Area	Classification	Tidal flats	Marsh	Subtidal	TOTAL
1	lower/middle (polyhaline)	2898	51	10195	13144
2	middle/inner (poly/mesohaline)	2456	76	6564	9069
3	inner (α -mesohaline)	3020	2383	3342	8745
4	inner/upper (β -meso/oligohaline)	514	181	2005	2700
5	upper/tidal fresh (oligohaline/limnetic)	196	297	948	1441
6	tidal fresh (limnetic)	9.5	30.5	250	290
TOTAL	whole estuary	9093.5	3018.5	23304	35389

Data analysis

Numbers of divers, grebes, cormorants, herons, geese, swans, ducks, coots, and waders were dealt with. Exotic waterbird species (8 species) and species which were only observed once (9 species) were excluded from all further analyses. Gulls and terns were not considered.

Based on the classification of MCLUSKY (1993,1999) six areas were recognized along the estuarine salinity gradient (Figure 10.1, Table 10.1). In the Westerschelde the boundaries of the areas were defined so that birds roosted and foraged in the same area (MOSTERT et al. 1990). Surfaces of the intertidal (tidal flats and marshes) and of the subtidal zone were obtained from non-published reports (Table 10.1). Area 3 was characterized by the presence of the marsh of Saeftinghe, one of the largest brackish marshes in NW-Europe. For the Zeeschelde the long stretches of only hard substrate with rubble (man-made constructions) were also considered as part of the intertidal surface. The surface of these constructions was estimated from aerial photographs, being 26, 54, and 52 ha respectively for area 4, 5 and 6.

Vegetation structure of the marshes changed along the salinity gradient, from a relatively low vegetation in the salt-marshes of areas 1-2 to a more pronounced vertical structure with reed beds and willow scrubs in the freshwater tidal marshes of areas 5-6.

Monthly mean numbers of waterbirds for the whole study period were calculated for each waterbird species and for each area over the six observation years. Also means were calculated for four periods, that were distinguished by season-related functions of the estuary for waterbirds: 1) summer (moulting and breeding): June, July; 2) autumn (staging): August, September, October, November; 3) winter (wintering): December, January, February; 4) spring (staging): March, April, May. Year-to-year fluctuations in waterbird numbers were not considered, only the impact of severe versus mild winters on the estuarine zonation of waterbirds.

Waterbird species were divided into functional (trophic) guilds based on feeding type. All waders and the Shelduck were considered as carnivores, here called benthivores as they feed on benthos on the tidal flats, diving ducks and scoters as diving benthivores, grebes, divers, cormorants, herons

and sawbills as piscivores. Several duck species (Teal, Mallard, Pintail) mainly foraged on the mudflats along the low water edge, probably feeding on small macrofauna (e.g. Oligochaeta) and organic material (pers. observ.), and were considered as omnivores. The remaining duck species (mainly Wigeon), geese, swans and coots were considered as herbivores.

As a measure of species diversity, the dominance pattern (numerical diversity) within areas and seasons was determined from k-dominance curves that plot cumulative ranked abundances against (log) species rank (LAMSHEAD et al. 1983). The zonation of waterbird communities along the salinity gradient was analysed by multivariate statistics based on annual means per season. The methods of classification and ordination (GAUCH 1982) were used to indicate the degree of (dis)similarity in waterbird species composition (community structure) among areas for each season. The agglomerative clustering method (Group Average Sorting GAS of Bray-Curtis dissimilarities) (CLIFFORD & STEPHENSON 1975) and ordination by non-metric multi-dimensional scaling (MDS) (KRUSKAL & WISH 1978) were applied. Data were fourth root transformed prior to analysis. The results for the winter season were representative for the other seasons, so only these results are discussed in detail. Dominance curves, GAS and MDS were performed with the statistical package PRIMER (CARR et al. 1993; CLARKE 1993).

Finally, the mean of the annual peak numbers for the whole study period was determined for each waterbird species and compared with the 1% criterion of the Ramsar Convention to evaluate the international importance of each of the six areas and of the Schelde estuary as a whole (PERENNOU et al. 1994; SCOTT & ROSE 1996). The population estimates were based on MEININGER et al. (1995), SCOTT & ROSE (1996) and ROSE & SCOTT (1997).

Results

Species composition and total numbers of waterbirds

A total of 80 waterbird species were observed in the Schelde estuary, with respectively 69, 61 and 68 species in



Table 10.2. Species list of the 21 internationally important waterbirds observed in the Schelde estuary during the whole study period (1991/92 - 1996/1997). For each species the mean of the annual peak numbers per area and for the whole Schelde estuary, the absolute maximum number and the number of months the 1% level was exceeded (on a total of 69 observation months), as well as the number corresponding with the 1% criterion of the Ramsar Convention are given. Numbers exceeding the 1% level are highlighted.

Species name	Area 1 Mean max.	Area 2 Mean max.	Area 3 Mean max.	Area 4 Mean max.	Area 5 Mean max.	Area 6 Mean max.	Schelde estuary Mean max.	Schelde estuary Absolute max.	Months	1% criterion
Spoonbill - <i>Platalea leucorodia</i>	2	0	64	0	0	0	79	139	9	30
Greylag Goose - <i>Anser anser</i>	857	111	36657	1754	5	0	38833	51070	32	2000
Shelduck - <i>Tadorna tadorna</i>	3032	1215	3445	1335	1421	93	7811	10719	33	3000
Wigeon - <i>Anas penelope</i>	5412	3472	37435	1925	24	2	41117	67099	32	12500
Gadwall - <i>Anas strepera</i>	6	3	69	587	565	66	1160	1748	33	300
Teal - <i>Anas crecca</i>	130	52	1803	2410	10412	740	13309	17938	34	4000
Mallard - <i>Anas platyrhynchos</i>	5359	2914	9717	1113	5843	1487	22518	26437	11	20000
Pintail - <i>Anas acuta</i>	71	136	2731	166	375	23	3056	4584	30	600
Pochard - <i>Aythya ferina</i>	46	5	11	316	3500	1272	4418	11081	5	3500
Oystercatcher - <i>Haematopus ostralegus</i>	11317	7966	1694	165	5	1	18724	23762	45	9000
Avocet - <i>Recurvirostra avosetta</i>	570	205	654	447	2	1	1546	2133	16	700
Ringed plover - <i>Charadrius hiaticula</i>	1499	293	274	112	0	0	2452	3487	5	500/2000*
Kentish Plover - <i>Charadrius alexandrinus</i>	355	18	6	1	0	0	437	610	1	610
Grey plover - <i>Pluvialis squatarola</i>	4292	880	1351	105	0	0	5357	8388	47	1500
Knot - <i>Calidris canutus</i>	2607	463	240	0	14	0	2957	8749	2	3500
Sanderling - <i>Calidris alba</i>	788	554	48	0	0	0	1384	1840	5	1000
Dunlin - <i>Calidris alpina</i>	14385	13835	3378	747	672	0	29014	43957	25	14000
Bar-tailed Godwit - <i>Limosa lapponica</i>	1565	1060	1434	43	0	0	4049	4837	21	1000/7000**
Curlew - <i>Numenius arquata</i>	2195	1176	1414	147	1	0	4225	5588	12	3500
Spotted Redshank - <i>Tringa erythropus</i>	262	37	798	1	0	0	1116	1307	3	1200
Redshank - <i>Tringa totanus</i>	819	733	550	102	3	0	1959	2822	8	1500

* 2000 for the months May, August and September; 500 in the other months (Meininger et al. 1995)

** 7000 for the months May, July and August; 1000 in the other months (Meininger et al. 1995)

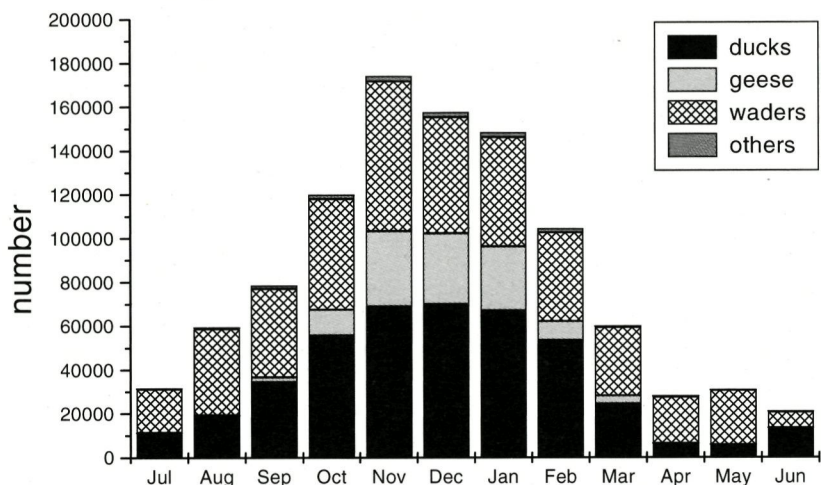


Figure 10.2. Monthly mean numbers of ducks, geese, waders and other waterbirds counted in the Schelde estuary during the whole study period (1991/92 - 1996/97).

the Westerschelde areas 1, 2 and 3, and 56, 47 and 37 species in the Zeeschelde areas 4, 5 and 6. Scientific names for species mentioned in the text are given in Table 10.2.

The monthly mean numbers of waterbirds showed clear seasonality (Figure 10.2), with lowest numbers in the period April - July and a peak in the period November - January. Ducks and waders dominated throughout the year, whereas geese were only abundant during late autumn and winter. The annual peak numbers for the whole study period ranged between 150,000 and 235,000 individuals.

When considering the occurrence of waterbirds along the estuarine salinity gradient, it appeared that in all seasons more than 75 % of all waterbirds occurred in the Westerschelde (areas 1-3), with respectively 40% in area 3 in autumn and winter and 40% in area 1 in spring and summer (Figure 10.3). In the Zeeschelde highest numbers were observed in area 5, especially in autumn and winter.

Relative to the available intertidal surface in each area, numbers ha^{-1} (diving benthivores and piscivores excluded) were especially high in the freshwater tidal areas 5-6.

Only 3-5 species accounted for more than 75% of the total number observed in each area and in each season, as demonstrated by the k-dominance curves based on the autumn average (Figure 10.4). Numerical diversity was lowest in area 6 where two species accounted for 83% of the total number of waterbirds observed. In area 4 dominance was lowest and hence numerical diversity greatest.

Zonation of waterbird communities along the estuarine salinity gradient

The GAS-classification for the winter period resulted in a clear separation of the six areas along the salinity gradient

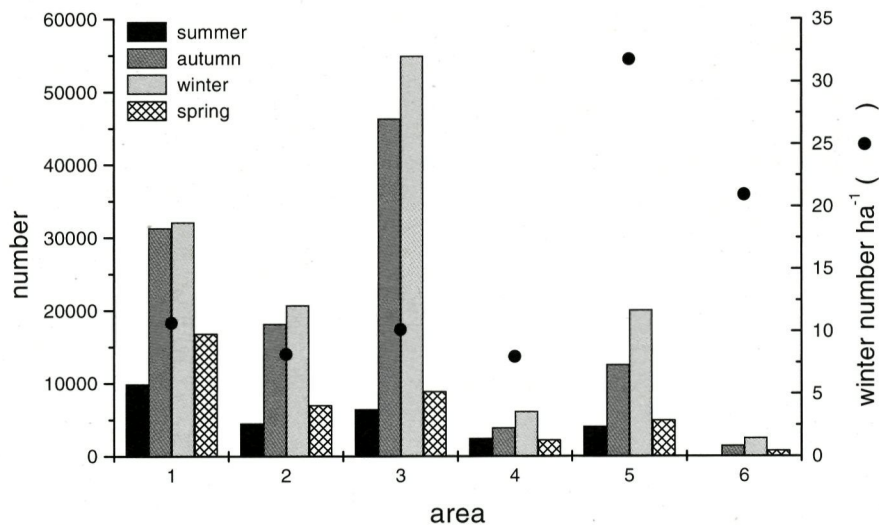


Figure 10.3. Seasonal mean numbers of waterbirds counted in the six areas along the salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary during summer, autumn, winter and spring. The dots represent the number of birds relative to the available intertidal surface in each area (numbers ha^{-1} based on winter means).



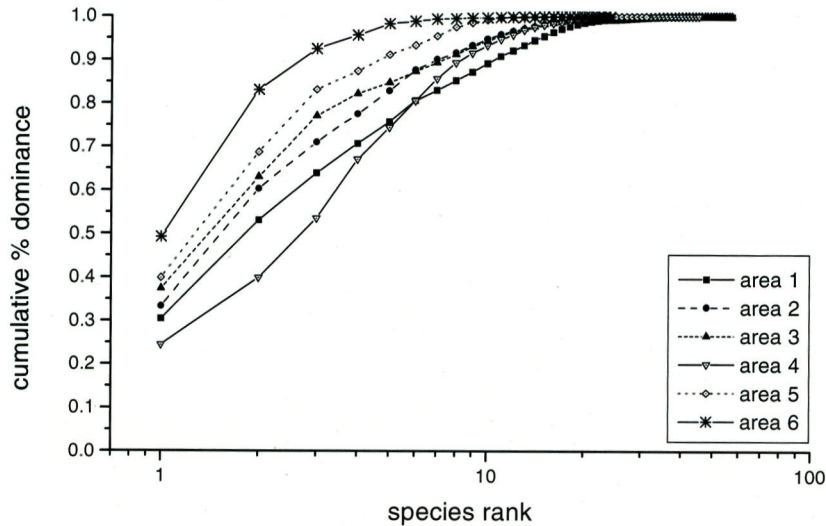


Figure 10.4. *k*-Dominance curves for the different areas (autumn average).

(Figure 10.5). This was confirmed by the MDS ordination diagramme. Area 6 was clearly separated from the other areas, with the exception of the two more severe winters 1995/96 and 1996/97, which were found both in the cluster dendrogram as in the ordination diagramme close to the area 5 cluster. This could be explained by a change in the occurrence of the waterbird species during the cold winters. Only in area 6 mean total numbers of waterbirds increased significantly (6x) in the severe winters as compared to the mild/normal winters. In the other areas mean total numbers only slightly changed in the severe winters and did not affect the observed pattern of estuarine zonation.

Characterization of waterbird communities along the salinity gradient

Figure 10.6 summarizes the zonation of the most characteristic waterbird species along the estuarine salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary. The spatio-temporal occurrence of some waterbird species is given in Figure 10.7.

The polyhaline zone of the estuary (areas 1-2) was dominated by waders and functioned mainly as a migration stop-over and as a wintering area. Oystercatcher and Dunlin accounted for 50-60% of the observed numbers during winter, autumn and spring. In summer Oystercatcher (37%), mainly non-breeding subadults, and Shelduck (22%) dominated. Typical migrating waders were Kentish Plover, Knot, Grey Plover, Turnstone, Ringed Plover, Sanderling and Bar-tailed Godwit.

In the mesohaline zone of the estuary (area 3) both waders and ducks occurred. Here the waterbird community was mainly related to the presence of the very large brackish marsh Saeftinghe (Table 10.1). The area mainly functioned as a wintering area. During winter the bird community was dominated by the herbivores Greylag Goose (37%) and Wigeon (36%). Greylag Geese, which fed main-

ly on roots of *Scirpus maritimus*, were only since 1990 present in such large numbers. During migration periods large numbers of Grey Plover, Bar-tailed Godwit, Redshank and Curlew were observed and the area appeared typically suitable for Spotted Redshank. During late autumn migration the Avocet reached highest numbers in area 3. During summer large numbers of Shelduck were observed (41%).

In area 4, a transition zone between the brackish area 3 and the freshwater tidal area 5, the waterbird community was composed of species found in areas 3 and 5. During winter Teal (25 %), Mallard (14 %), Greylag Goose (14 %), and Wigeon (13 %) were the most important species. Typically, the Gadwall was observed to feed almost exclusively on the man-made hard substrates (rubbles). During spring and summer Shelduck dominated, accounting for 40% of the total numbers observed in this area. During summer Avocet reached highest numbers in area 4.

In area 5 several duck species occurred. The area mainly functioned as a wintering area. During winter Teals (41%) were mainly observed on mudflats, feeding along the low water line. Like in area 4, Gadwalls were feeding on hard substrates. The Pochard, the only common diving duck observed in the freshwater tidal area, was observed in large numbers during the severe winters of 1995/96 - 1996/97 (maximum of 11,000 ind.) as compared to normal winters (maximum of 2150). During autumn and especially during summer Mallard dominated in area 5 (77%).

Area 6 was characterized by very low numbers of waterbirds. Only two species dominated during all seasons, Mallard (40-50 %) and Moorhen (25-40 %). Only in severe winters an influx was observed from other species like Pochard and Teal.

The zonation was also translated in different trophic groups among areas (Figure 10.8). In mild/normal winter as well as in autumn benthivores dominated in areas 1-2, herbivores in area 3, both herbivores and omnivores in area 4 and omnivores in the freshwater tidal areas 5-6. In severe

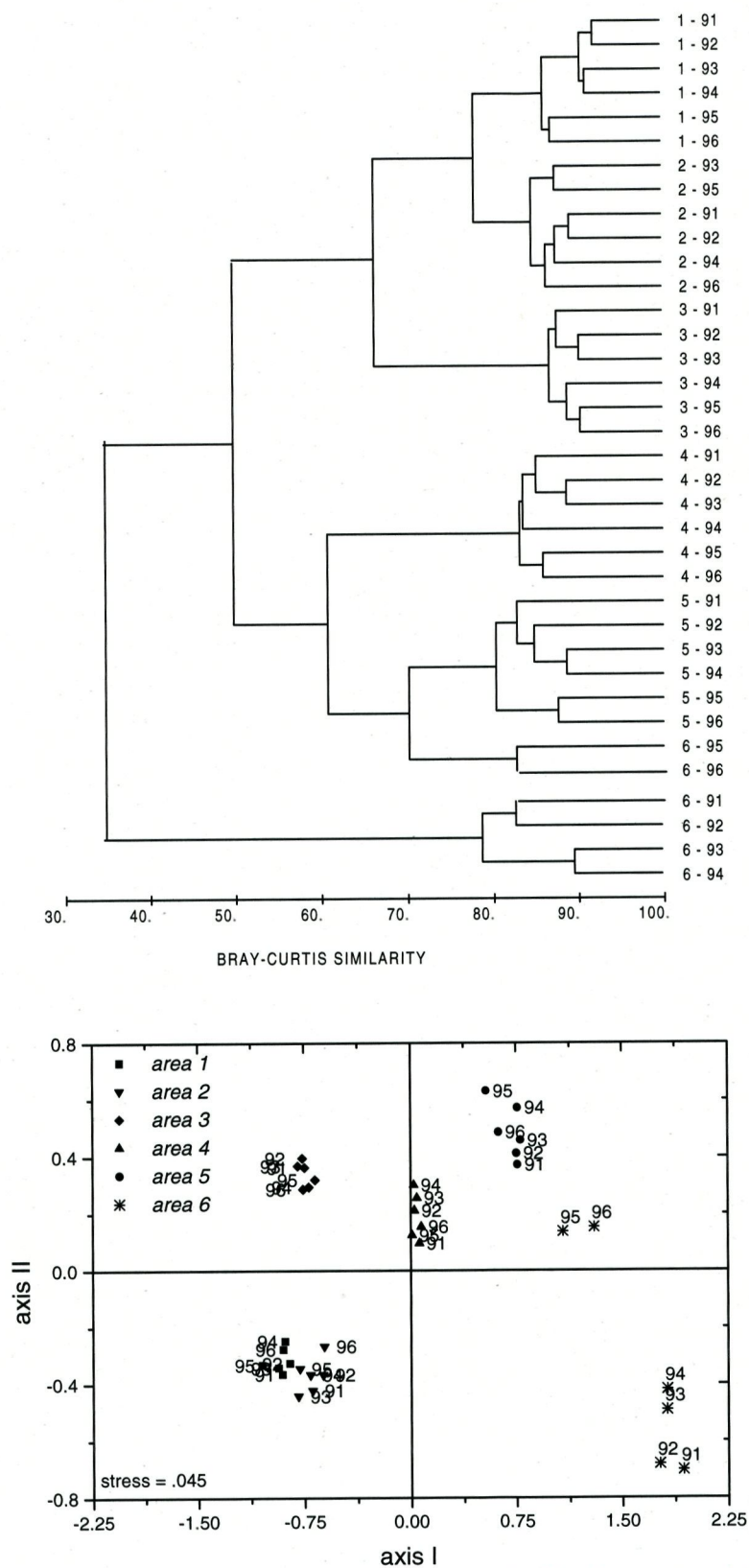


Figure 10.5. Multivariate analysis based on winter means for the six areas in the Schelde estuary and for the whole study period (seasons 1991/92 - 1996/97). Above. Hierarchical agglomerative clustering (1-91 = area 1, winter 91/92, ...; 2-92 = area 2, winter 91/92; ...). The clustering clearly shows a separation of each area along the salinity gradient. Below. Two-dimensional MDS ordination diagram (91 = winter 91/92; 92 = winter 92/93; ...). The first axis reflects the salinity gradient, with, on the right side (positive side of the axis), the most upstream, limnetic area 6, and on the left side, the most downstream, polyhaline area 1.



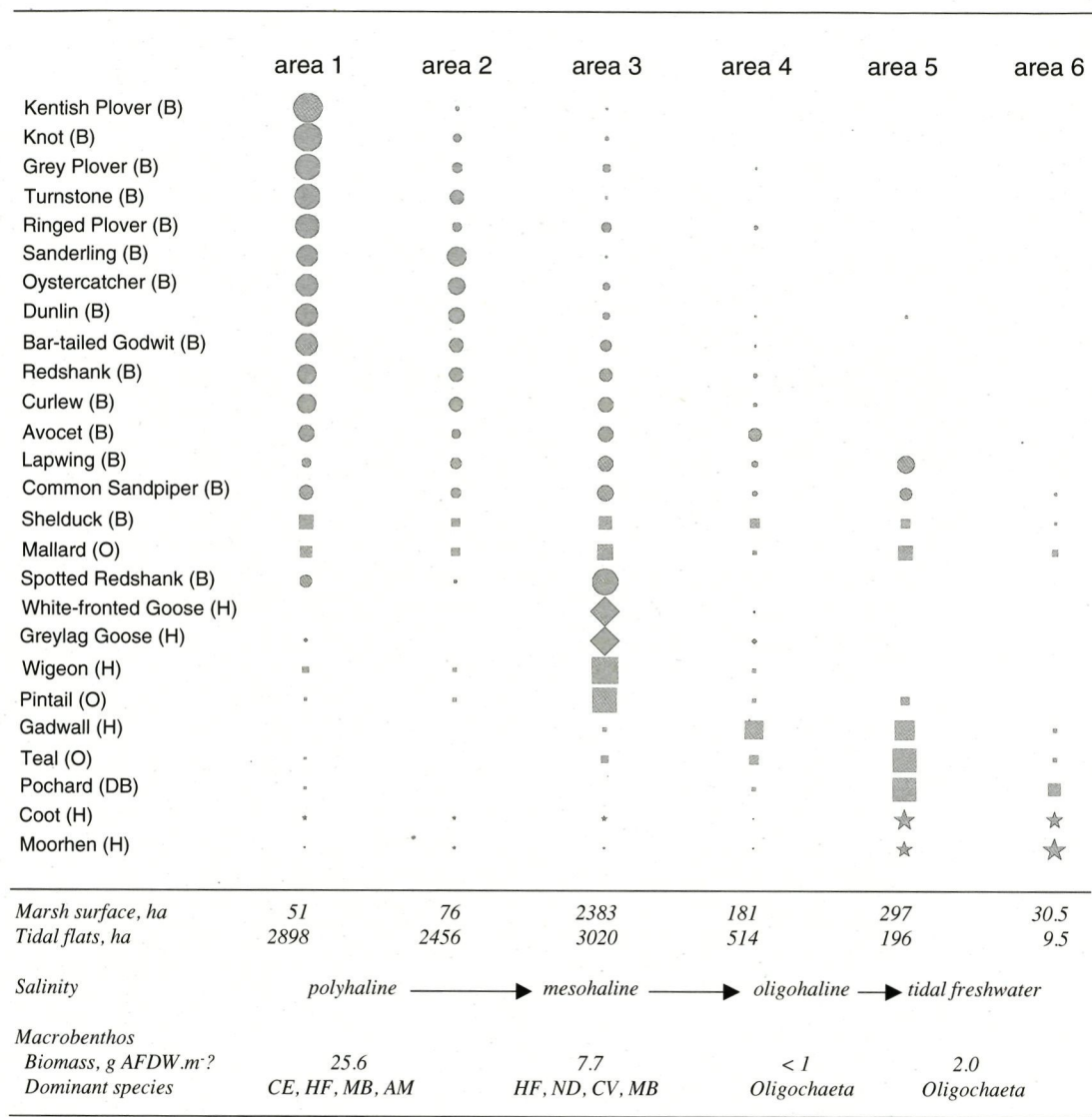


Figure 10.6. Zonation of the most characteristic waterbird species (B = benthivores, H = herbivores, O = omnivores, DB = diving benthivores) along the salinity gradient of the Schelde estuary (scaling based on annual mean numbers). Circles = waders, Squares = ducks, Diamonds = geese, Stars = other waterbird species. For each area marsh and tidal flat surfaces (ha) are given. For each salinity region mean total macrobenthic biomass is given, together with the dominant macrobenthic species present (CE=Cerastoderma edule, MB=Macoma balthica, HF=Heteromastus filiformis, AM=Arenicola marina, ND=Nereis diversicolor, CV=Corophium volutator). Macrobenthos data based on YSEBAERT & MEIRE (1999) and SEYS et al. (1999b).

winters the proportion of herbivores increased in the polyhaline and mesohaline zones of the estuary (areas 1-4), whereas an increase in diving benthivores was observed in the freshwater tidal areas. Piscivores were nearly absent in all areas. During spring the proportion of benthivores increased in the areas 1-4 up to more than 80% during summer. In the freshwater tidal areas 5-6 omnivores (Mallard) dominated during summer (> 80%).

International importance of the Schelde estuary

For the study period considered the Schelde estuary appeared to be of international importance for 21 waterbird species (Table 10.2). In the Westerschelde (areas 1-3) the internationally most important species were Greylag Goose, Pintail and Wigeon, the absolute maximum number of which exceeded for the whole Schelde estuary the 1% level respectively 25.5, 7.6 and 5.4 times. These species mainly occurred in area 3, demonstrating the extremely high importance of the marsh of Saeftinghe. Important waders were Ringed Plover, Grey Plover, Dunlin and

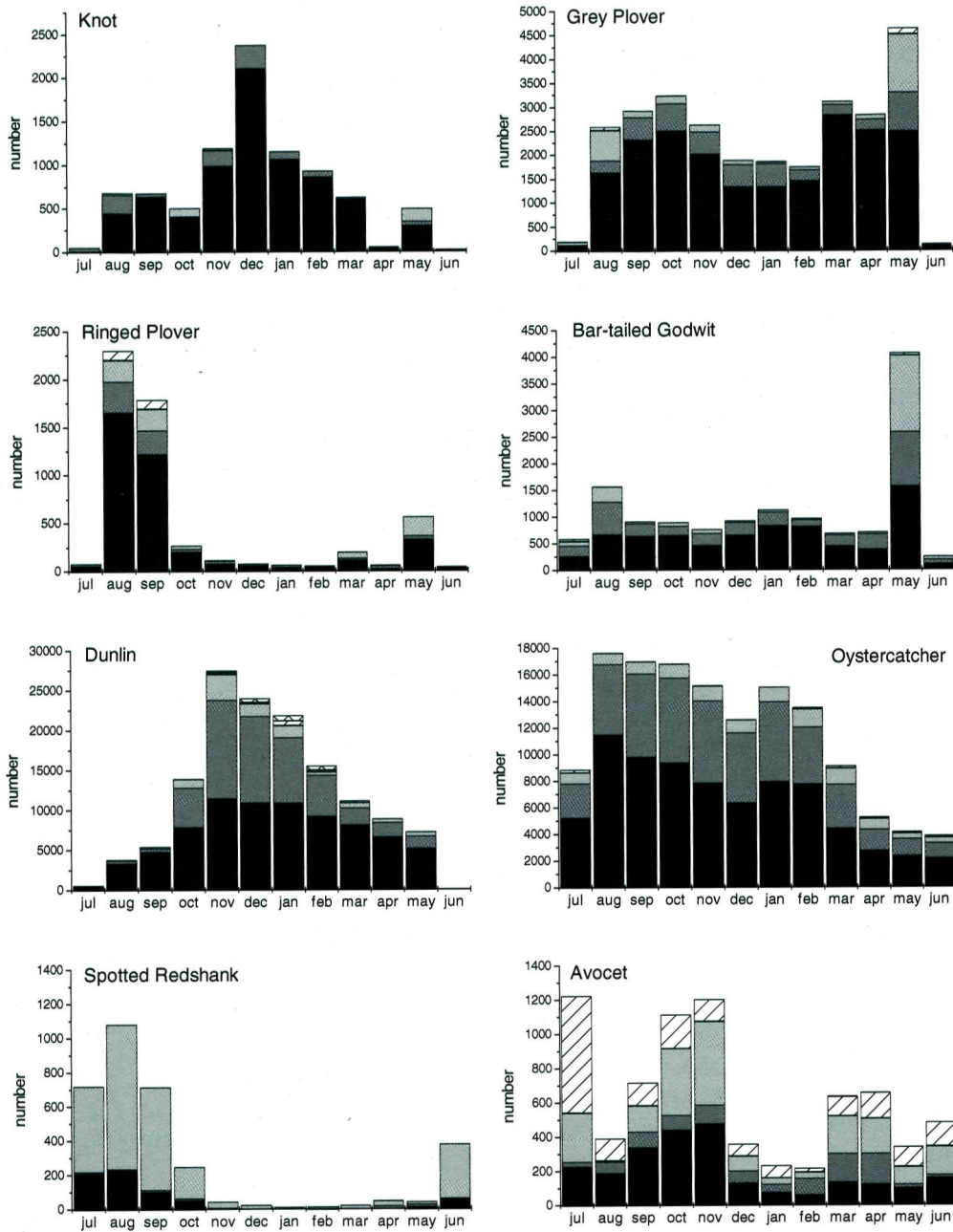


Figure 10.7. Monthly mean numbers per area of some characteristic waterbird species counted in the Schelde estuary during the whole study period (1991/92 - 1996/97).

Oystercatcher; the absolute maximum number of which exceeded the 1% level respectively 7.5, 6.0, 3.1 and 2.6 times. These species mainly occurred in area 1. Typical migratory species (e.g. Spotted Redshank, Sanderling) only shortly exceeded the 1% level. In the Zeeschelde (areas 4-6) internationally important species were Gadwall and Teal, the absolute maximum number of which exceeded the 1% level respectively 5.8 and 4.5 times. During severe

winter months the 1% level was exceeded for the Pochard. In area 6 no important waterbird populations were observed. For the whole Schelde estuary, the frequency of occurrence exceeding the 1% level was highest for Grey Plover and Oystercatcher (seven months a year on average). Other species exceeding the 1% level regularly were Greylag Goose and the ducks Teal, Gadwall, Shelduck and Wigeon.

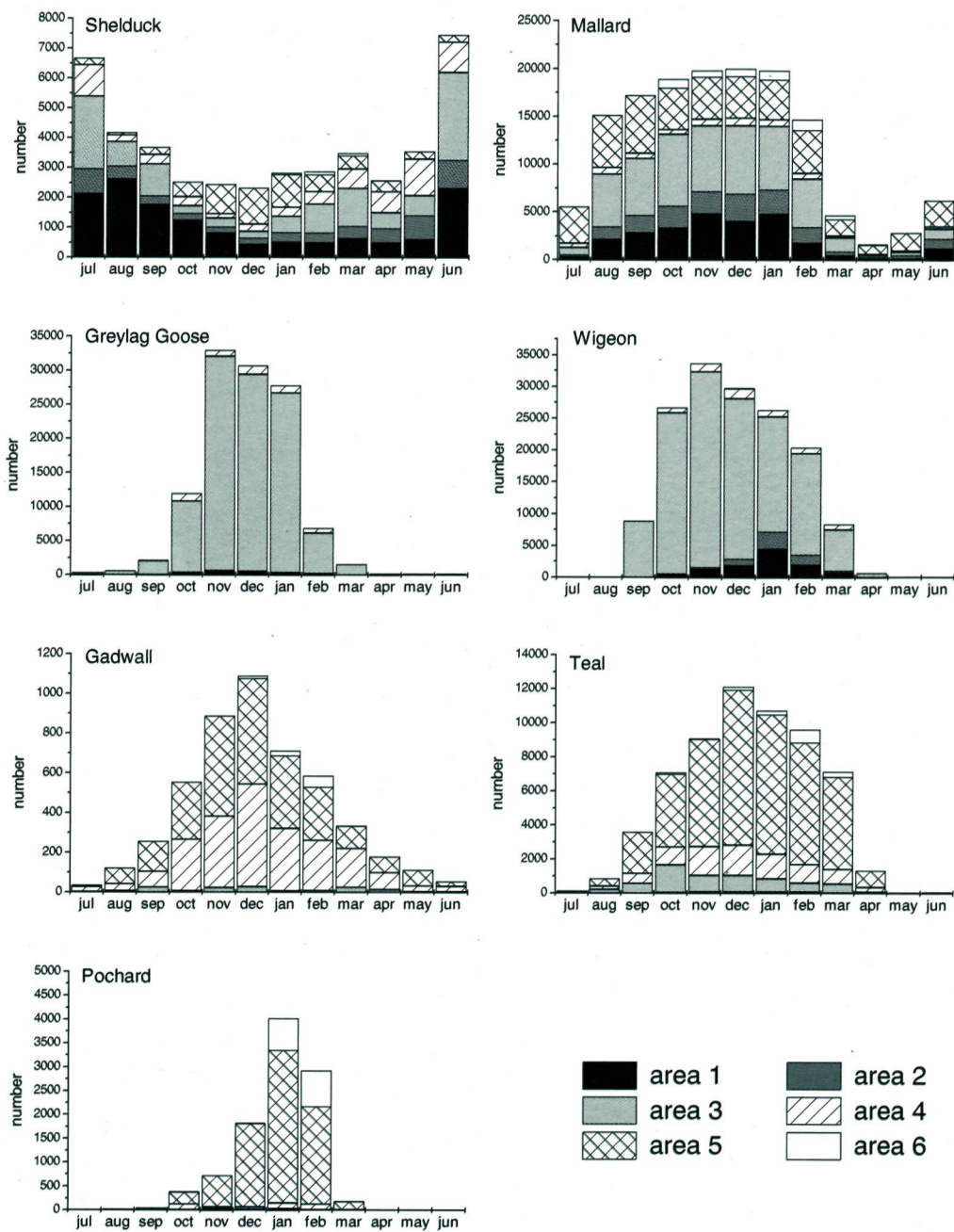


Figure 10.7. Continued.

Discussion

Zonation of waterbirds along the Schelde estuary

In this paper the zonation of non-breeding waterbird communities along an estuary with a complete salinity gradient, the Schelde estuary, has been described in detail for the first time. Estuaries with a complete salinity gradient, including an extensive freshwater tidal area, are nowadays

very rare habitats in NW-Europe. In the past, several such estuaries have been cut off from the sea (e.g. Rhine-Meuse Delta, FERGUSON & WOLFF 1983; SMIT et al. 1997b), or have been regulated completely, resulting in an accelerated sedimentation (e.g. Seine estuary, AVOINE et al. 1981).

The most important factors affecting the distribution of waterbird species along an estuarine salinity gradient are habitat diversity and habitat suitability. For wintering and migrating waterbirds food availability appears to be the main factor determining habitat suitability (EVANS et al



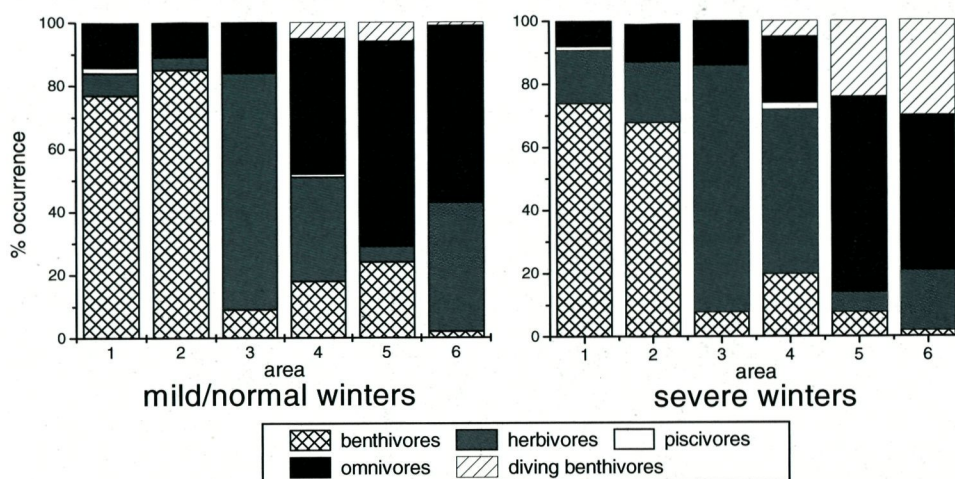


Figure 10.8. Proportion of different trophic groups in each area along the Schelde estuary in mild/normal (1991/92 - 1993/94) and severe winters (1995/96 - 1996/97) (based on winter means).

1984). Many benthivorous waterbird species depend on the estuarine intertidal areas for their survival, as they feed on the tidal flats on macrobenthic invertebrates which become available during low water (EVANS & DUGAN 1984; GOSS-CUSTARD 1985; PERSMA et al. 1993; ZWARTS 1997). In the Schelde estuary a significant decrease of both biomass and diversity of macrobenthos in the intertidal zone was observed in upstream direction (YSEBAERT et al. 1993, 1998a; YSEBAERT & MEIRE 1999; SEYS et al. 1999b). The intertidal macrobenthic biomass was mainly determined respectively by molluscs and large polychaetes in the polyhaline zone (with locally biomasses of 250 g AFDW.m⁻² in cockle beds), by smaller polychaetes and amphipods in the mesohaline zone and by few oligochaetes in the oligohaline zone (Figure 10.6). The freshwater tidal zone had impoverished communities dominated by oligochaetes. The distribution of the benthivorous waterbirds observed in this study was clearly related to this macrobenthic gradient (Figure 10.6) (see also WOLFF 1969). High numbers of waders, especially those feeding mainly on bivalves (e.g. *C. edule*, *M. balthica*) and large polychaetes (*Nereis* spp.), such as Oystercatcher, Knot, Grey Plover, Bar-tailed Godwit and Curlew (ZWARTS & BLOMERT 1992; PERSMA et al. 1993; ZWARTS 1997) were observed in the polyhaline areas 1-2. Species, like Avocet and Spotted Redshank, feeding on small crustaceans (*C. volutator*), spionid polychaetes and oligochaetes in soft and silty sediments (e.g. MOREIRA 1995) were more concentrated in the mesohaline zone. Shelducks, feeding to a large extent on diatoms, the mud-snail *Hydrobia ulvae*, small oligochaetes, *C. volutator* and green algae (BUXTON 1981; THOMPSON 1982; MEININGER & SNOEK 1992), were observed in large numbers from the polyhaline zone up to the freshwater tidal zone. Shelducks were most abundant during summer in the Schelde estuary, especially in areas 1, 3 and 4, using the estuary also as pre-moulting and moulting sites (2000-3000 moulting ind.) (MEININGER & SNOEK 1992). During winter total numbers decreased but the relative importance of area 5 increased,

with Shelducks mainly feeding here along the low water line.

In the freshwater tidal zone the combination of excess organic material (derived from natural input as well as from human waste loads) and of low but sufficient oxygen supply locally resulted in mass populations of tubificid (peak densities of 3.10⁶ ind.m⁻², SEYS et al. 1999b). Such mass populations of tubificid oligochaetes and small polychaetes present in polluted bottoms were demonstrated to be an important part of the diet of estuarine birds in polluted estuaries (GRAY 1976), and more specifically of the diet of ducks (ZWARTS 1976; ROFRITZ 1977; WARNES 1981; pers. observ.). This was confirmed for the Schelde estuary by the occurrence of several duck species (especially Teal, Mallard and Shelduck) in area 5, feeding along the low water line while dabbling in the soft muds. Studies in the Biesbosch and the Oude Maas indicated that the presence of tidal flats was the determining factor in the presence of duck species like the Teal. These formerly freshwater tidal areas from the Rhine-Meuse delta in the southwestern part of The Netherlands, with at that time often more than 10,000 wintering Teals, were cut off from the tide in 1970, resulting in the permanent disappearance of most of the Teals within a few weeks (LEBRET 1979; STRUCKER et al. 1994). Loss of suitable foraging habitat was given as the main reason for this decrease.

Marshes are especially important for waterbirds as resting, refuge and roosting areas, but also as feeding areas for grazing waterbirds (e.g. EVANS & DUGAN 1984; AERTS et al. 1996). In the Schelde estuary the small available marsh area in the polyhaline zone (areas 1-2) was reflected in low numbers of herbivores (Figure 10.6). The mesohaline area 3, with its large marsh surface, appeared a suitable feeding area for herbivorous waterbird species. On the large marsh of Saeftinghe, with a vegetation dominated by *Phragmites australis*, *Elymus athericus* and *Scirpus maritimus*, very high numbers of herbivores such as Wigeon and Greylag Goose were observed, giving this area a characteristic and distinct-



Table 10.3. List of the current status of the conservation measures taken in the Westerschelde and Zeeschelde respectively (intertidal areas only).

Conservation measure	Westerschelde (The Netherlands)	Zeeschelde (Belgium)
International (worldwide)		
RAMSAR	area 1: all* area 2: all* area 3: 3500 ha, all*	area 4: 398 ha area 5: - area 6: -
International (EC)		
Wild Birds Directive: SPA sites 'Special Protection Area' (Council Directive 79/409/EEC)	area 1: all* area 2: all* area 3: 3500 ha, all*	area 4: \pm 450 ha area 5: \pm 360 ha area 6: \pm 33 ha
Habitat Directive (SCI proposals) 'Site of Community Importance' (Council Directive 92/43/EEC)	area 1: all* area 2: all* area 3: 3500 ha, all*	area 4: all** area 5: all** area 6: all**
National/Regional		
National Act on Nature Conservation (The Netherlands)	area 1: all* area 2: all*	area 4: -*** area 5: 40.5 ha***
State Nature reserves (Belgium)	area 3: 3600 ha, all*	area 6: -***
Nature reserves owned and/or managed by nature conservation organisations	area 1: 966 ha area 2: 163 ha area 3: 3922 ha	area 4: 312 ha area 5: 93 ha area 6: 24 ha

*: the complete intertidal and shallow subtidal area of the Westerschelde has been proposed by the Dutch Government as Ramsar, SPA and SCI site, and to be put under the National Act on Nature Conservation

**: the complete intertidal area of the Zeeschelde (\pm 1200 ha) has been proposed by the Flemish Government as SCI site

***: the complete intertidal area of the Zeeschelde (\pm 1200 ha) will become a state nature reserve

tive waterbird community. The relatively high vegetation with willow scrubs and reed beds on the marches of the freshwater tidal area of the Schelde estuary appeared not suitable for feeding waterbirds, but mainly functioned as resting and refuge areas.

The man-made constructions in the Zeeschelde, such as dikes with rubble, were especially important as a feeding area for Gadwalls, foraging along the low water line on green algae, seeds and detritus (pers. observ.). However, Gadwalls were completely absent on hard substrates in the most upstream, narrow areas of the Zeeschelde where disturbance by e.g. shipping was high. Other waterbird species (e.g. Teal, Mallard and Lapwing) also occurred on hard substrates, but mainly using them as resting places.

Also external factors were responsible for the occurrence of certain waterbird species in the Schelde estuary. E.g., the spectacular increase of the Greylag Goose on the marsh of Saeftinghe (area 3) could be explained by a general increase of the NW-European population, a shift from traditional wintering grounds in Spain towards wintering grounds in NW-Europe, and the abandonment of hunting in the Saeftinghe area (NILLSON et al. 1999).

International importance and conservation of the Schelde estuary

With a maximum of 188,000 individuals observed in midwinter the Schelde estuary is one of the most important NW-European estuaries for waterbirds as compared to other important estuaries in the region, such as the Oosterschelde (175,000 ind.) in The Netherlands (MEININGER et al. 1997) and the Wash (180,000 ind.) and Morecambe Bay (140,000 ind.) in Great Britain (DAVIDSON et al. 1991). The importance of the Schelde estuary for waterbirds is further evidenced by the 1% level criterion, which is exceeded for 21 waterbird species (Table 10.2).

Today, several parts of both the Westerschelde (areas 1-3) and the Zeeschelde (areas 4-6) are protected (Table 10.3), but this is mainly due to independent measures from The Netherlands and Belgium. Thus far, no mutual communication aiming at the protection of the unique estuarine salinity gradient has been organized. Independently, the complete intertidal area of the Zeeschelde has been proposed in 1996 as SCI by the Flemish government and recently the complete Westerschelde (excluding the ship-



ping lanes) as Ramsar site, SPA and SCI by the Dutch government. As such, the intertidal zone along the whole Schelde estuary will have an international conservation status in the near future.

However, the Schelde estuary also has different, often conflicting, functions that have an impact on the normal functioning of the estuarine ecosystem as a whole. As a result of human expansion, 150 km² of tidal area was lost due to land claim the last 200 years. The last decade several new harbour infrastructures were constructed along the estuary due to industrial expansion of the harbour of Antwerpen. This resulted in the direct loss of several parts of the previously protected (Ramsar, SPA) intertidal areas. Moreover, other human impacts, such as increased sedimentation and dredging activities and pollution, further degraded the estuarine ecosystem. Since the 1960s, riverine mud input, deriving from wastewater, surface erosion and precipitation, has increased, and together with the large amount of dredging and dumping and the modest attempts of regulation, has resulted in an increased sedimentation in the intertidal areas. For example, the flood volume in the marsh of Saeftinghe has decreased from more than 60 million m³ to less than 10 million m³ in 1990 (SMIT et al. 1997a). The extensive dredging in the shipping channel to Antwerpen, being 10-15*10⁶ m³ per year at present, has resulted in several changes in the morphology of the estuary (VROON et al. 1997). Future plans include a further deepening of the estuary, which will increase the dredging activities by more than 50%. Especially the upper and freshwater tidal parts of the estuary are heavily polluted by domestic, industrial and agricultural waste loads (WOLLAST 1988; VAN DAMME et al. 1995; VAN ECK et al. 1998) and the concentrations of PCBs, PAHs and cadmium are high (VAN ZOESY & VAN ECK 1993; ZWOLSMAN 1999).

Estuarine management

Despite several international conservation measures, protected areas in industrialized and densely populated areas, e.g. estuaries, are still under the risk of habitat degradation, fragmentation and loss (see also PRATER 1981; DAVIDSON 1991; DAVIDSON et al. 1991; GRAY 1997). The compensation of habitat loss, as regulated by the international conservation measures, may result in the conservation of other areas with high ecological values. However, this can never replace a unique estuarine salinity gradient. The entire Schelde estuary should be conserved since changes in one area may have an impact on another. Furthermore, the mosaic of habitats must be protected to achieve a complete protection of biodiversity (PERRINGS et al. 1992; GRAY 1997).

Estuaries often have a 'naturally' limited number of species or have species which are spatially restricted (WOLFF 1973; DAY et al. 1989). This is also confirmed in this

study where only a few waterbird species dominate in each of the six areas along the salinity gradient. Thus, priorities for marine diversity conservation cannot be based simply on habitats with high diversity (PRENDERGAST et al. 1993; GRAY 1997). Besides biological community structure (species conservation, based on the species present, their abundances and biomasses and the diversity of the community) and quality and maintenance of habitats (habitat conservation), also the functioning of the estuarine ecosystem should be included in the management of estuaries. Indeed, natural ecosystems also perform fundamental life-support services (DAILY et al. 1997). For estuaries these fundamental life-support services are very important (e.g. production of ecosystem goods (fish, shellfish, shrimp), cycling and movement of nutrients, purification of water, maintenance of biodiversity, ...), but often these values are ignored by the short-term goals of economic developments. It should be one of the challenges of the scientific community to demonstrate to the human society and policy makers the value of these fundamental life-support services and the long-term benefits gained from them (COSTANZA et al. 1997).

Acknowledgements

The counts in the Westerschelde are part of a biological monitoring programme, organized and financed by RIKZ. In addition to the authors, many volunteers participated in the counts. Their valuable contribution is highly appreciated. We particularly would like to thank the "Saeftinghe-team" (coordinated by H. Castellijns and J. Maebe), R. Beyersbergen, G. Slob, W. de Wilde and W. Wisse. Counts on the Zeeschelde were made possible by the logistic support of the Department Zeeschelde of the Flemish Community. A. Anselin, N. De Regge, J. Soors and P. Geers participated in the counts. We thank A. Anselin, E. Osieck and T. Kramer to provide information on the conservation measures taken in the Schelde estuary. This study was partly supported by the FWO-project G.0104.99.

Summary

Being the main transition zones between the freshwater of the land and the salt water of the oceans, estuaries are characterized by unique functional and structural biodiversity values that result in important ecosystem services (chapter 1). On the other hand, human pressure and impact on estuaries is very high, as most of the urbanization is concentrated in the coastal zone. Therefore, these ecosystems are particularly important for integrating sound ecological management with sustainable economics.

The general aim of the present study is to contribute to a better understanding of the environmental variability of estuarine soft-sediment ecosystems and their biota. Generating this understanding will lead to better predictions of future change to ecological systems, which is a prerequisite for improving conservation and management strategies.

This study is concentrated on **macrobenthos** and **waterbirds**, and their relation with environmental variables, in the Schelde estuary. Data from different, mainly monitoring studies, that describe patterns and gradients in space and time, are used to get insight into the spatial and temporal variability of macrobenthos and waterbirds to reveal how this variability can be explained by the environment (e.g. salinity, temperature, depth, current velocity, sediment characteristics).

A brief introduction to the general features of the estuarine environment and to the study area, the Schelde estuary, is given in chapter one. The Schelde estuary, situated near the border between The Netherlands and Belgium, is a temperate, turbid, nutrient-rich coastal plain estuary with a total length of 160 km. This estuary is characterized by a complete salinity gradient, including a large freshwater tidal zone. The Dutch, poly-/mesohaline part of the estuary is called Westerschelde, the Belgian, meso-/oligohaline and freshwater tidal parts of the estuary, the Zeeschelde.

The spatio-temporal patterns in macrobenthic species and communities along the whole estuarine salinity gradient, including the freshwater tidal part, were investigated on intertidal and subtidal sampling locations (chapters 2, 3, 4). Community parameters, as well as univariate and multivariate analyses, clearly revealed distinct gradients in diversity, abundance and biomass along the vertical and longitudinal gradients. In general, highest macrobenthic diversity and biomass were observed in the intertidal, polyhaline zone and decreased with decreasing salinity, while abundance did not show a clear trend. Especially the oligohaline and freshwater tidal parts were characterized by a very impoverished benthic community, composed only of *Oligochaeta* (chapter 2). The polyhaline zone had a more diverse macrozoobenthos structure than that of the mesohaline

zone. Species characteristic for the polyhaline zone were e.g. *Cerastoderma edule*, *Tharyx marioni* and *Eteone longa*. In the mesohaline zone of the estuary, *Corophium volutator* was a typical, dominant species. However, a lot of the dominant species were common in both the polyhaline and mesohaline zones of the Schelde estuary (e.g. *Heteromastus filiformis*, *Pygospio elegans*, *Nereis diversicolor*, *Macoma balthica*). In all salinity regions, very low values for all measures were observed in all subtidal depth strata (chapter 3). Here, characteristic species were *Nephtys cirrosa* (polyhaline zone) and the mobile amphipod *Bathyporeia* spp. (mesohaline zone).

Abundance was in all salinity regions dominated by both surface and sub-surface deposit feeders. Clear gradients in the biomass of the different feeding guilds were observed in the intertidal zone (chapter 2, 3). Suspension feeders (mainly *Cerastoderma edule*) dominated in the polyhaline zone and showed a significant decrease with decreasing salinity. A similar trend was observed for surface deposit feeders and sub-surface deposit feeders. Omnivores (mainly *Nereis diversicolor*) showed an opposite trend, with an increasing dominance towards the mesohaline zone.

Multivariate analyses indicated that the structural complexity of the macrobenthic assemblages decreased from the polyhaline zone towards the meso-/oligohaline zone (chapter 3). A first gradient was related to depth, which reflected also the hydrodynamic conditions. A second gradient was clearly related to salinity and confirmed the observations from the univariate analysis. Sediment characteristics appeared to be more correlated with depth and current velocities, but correlation was rather weak. The different assemblages were further described in terms of indicator species and abiotic characteristics.

Seasonal variation appeared to be smaller than spatial variation (chapter 4). Seasonality was evident for all diversity measures, total abundance and biomass in the intertidal zone. All commonly observed macrobenthic species showed distinct seasonal patterns. The general pattern was that of an increase in abundance during late spring and early summer, coinciding with an increase in temperature, followed by a decrease towards winter. This decrease could be very sharp within a short time, or slowly decreasing towards winter, depending on the species and/or location considered. Lowest abundances were observed in late winter and early spring. Seasonal variation in biomass followed abundance patterns, especially at the low salinity locations. Recruitment was observed at all intertidal locations and community variability was higher during periods of peak recruitment (spring-early summer) than during non-recruitment periods. Temporal variability in environmental variables (mainly salinity) was highest at the low salinity locations, and this coincided with highest variability in macrobenthic communities. It is argued that in the meso-/oligohaline transition zone, where salinity conditions



show large, seasonal fluctuations, benthic communities change frequently, resulting in communities that seldom progress beyond early benthic-community succession. On the other hand, macrobenthic communities in the polyhaline zone appeared to be dominated by more long living species. Sand flat communities appeared to be more variable than mud flat communities, because of a more dynamic physical environment.

The intertidal macrobenthic communities of the Schelde estuary were compared with two other NW-European estuaries, the Oosterschelde (chapter 5) and the Ems (chapter 6).

Next to the Schelde estuary, the Oosterschelde is the other remaining estuary in the Delta area of SW Netherlands. However, major coastal engineering works (the construction of a storm surge barrier and secondary dams regulating freshwater inflow) have profoundly changed the character of the Oosterschelde, resulting in no salinity gradient, and very low turbidity and pollution. The intertidal macrofauna of both estuaries was found to be similar in species composition (chapter 5). More species occurred and average biomass was much larger in the Oosterschelde (extensive mussel beds), whereas average density was larger in the Westerschelde. Despite similar species composition, multivariate analyses indicated almost no overlap between the sampling locations from the Ooster- and Westerschelde. Water parameters (salinity, turbidity etc.) correlated with the first ordination axis and sediment parameters (median grain size, mud content) were correlated with the second axis. A gradient from a suspension feeder community in the Oosterschelde and polyhaline zone of the Westerschelde to a deposit feeder dominated community in the brackish zone of the Westerschelde was found. These correspond to coastal and detritus food chains. It is concluded that the absence of suspension feeders in the brackish part of the Westerschelde is mainly caused by the highly dynamic character of the estuary. Increased dredging activities could further impoverish the fauna.

The intertidal benthic macrofauna of the Schelde and Ems estuaries appeared to have a very similar species composition, especially at genus level (chapter 6). The higher number of species observed in the Schelde estuary was probably due to a greater habitat diversity. In both estuaries species diversity decreased with distance upstream, the total abundance did not vary, whereas biomass was highest in the polyhaline zone. In both estuaries distinct intertidal benthic communities were observed along the salinity gradient: a marine community in the polyhaline zone, a brackish community in the mesohaline zone, and a third community in the oligohaline and freshwater tidal zones of the estuary. These three communities were very similar between both estuaries. For the Schelde estuary and to a lesser extent also for the Ems estuary, there was evidence that antropogenic stress had a negative effect on

the intertidal macrobenthic communities of the oligohaline/freshwater tidal zone. Only Oligochaeta were dominating, whereas the very euryhaline and/or true limnetic species were missing. In the mesohaline zone, the Schelde estuary was dominated by large numbers of short-living, opportunistic species, whereas in the Ems estuary relatively more stable macrobenthic communities were observed. A comparison with some other European estuaries showed in general similar trends as those observed for the Schelde and Ems estuaries.

The mesohaline part of the (Zeeschelde) estuary was investigated in more detail (chapter 7, 8). In the subtidal zone sediments ranged from silty to very coarse, with the dominant sediment type being silt (chapter 7). The polychaete *Heteromastus filiformis* and Oligochaeta were most common. Several typical 'brackish water' species were observed (e.g. *Polydora ligerica*, *Corophium lacustre*, *Gammarus salinus*). Mean total abundance and biomass were very low, and the benthic communities appeared to be under stress, with a dominance of mainly small, sub-surface deposit and surface deposit feeding opportunistic species. This is probably a combined effect of both natural physical and human-induced disturbance. Only sediments with hard substrates (e.g. rocks) seem to favour species richness, providing a shelter against physical disturbance. Multivariate techniques revealed three distinct communities, linked mainly with sedimentological factors: (1) a species-poor community in fine sand with a dominance of the amphipod *Bathyporeia pilosa*, a low mean abundance and biomass; (2) a species-rich community in fine/muddy sediments, and sediments with hard substrates, with the small polychaete *Polydora ligerica* as indicator species, a relatively high mean abundance and biomass; (3) a community in muddy sediments with intermediate species richness, abundance and biomass, with *Heteromastus filiformis* and Oligochaeta as indicator species.

In the intertidal zone the macrobenthos was investigated in relation to biological (microphytobenthos) and physical characteristics of the cohesive sediments on different mudflats (chapter 8). Here, the sediment was muddy or consisted of very fine sand. Sediment characteristics of the top layer were strongly correlated and did not differ significantly among seasons (April and September). However, microphytobenthos contents in the top layer of the sediment were about 7 times higher in April, and showed a large spatial variation, related to the elevation of the mudflats. The high pigment contents in April were accompanied by a relative low abundance of the zoobenthos, being mainly Oligochaeta in the 1000 µm and 500 µm fraction of the zoobenthos, and Nematodes in the 250 µm fraction. The critical shear stress for erosion, measured *in situ* with the SedErode device, was significantly lower in September, coinciding with low pigment contents and high zoobenthos abundance. In September *Corophium volutator* and *Heteromastus filiformis* dominated the 1000 µm frac-

tion, Oligochaeta and *Corophium volutator* the 500 μm fraction, and Nematodes, *Manayunkia aestuarina*, Oligochaeta and Copepoda the 250 μm fraction. Zoobenthos species showed a different vertical distribution pattern in the sediment, mainly reflecting their difference in feeding habits. It appeared that physical and biological processes interacted in a complex manner, and that their contribution to sedimentological processes differed spatially and temporally.

The development of predictive ecological models is a prerequisite for the evaluation of human changes in estuarine ecosystems. The available data were used to develop statistical models to predict macrobenthic species response to environmental conditions in estuarine ecosystems (chapter 9). Therefore, logistic regression technique was applied, predicting the probability of occurrence of macrobenthic species in the Schelde estuary as a response to the predictor variables salinity, depth, current velocity and sediment characteristics. Ecological response surfaces were constructed for ten estuarine macrobenthic species. Single logistic regression models provided good descriptions of the occurrence along one environmental variable, which were in general agreement with the observed distributions. The response surfaces obtained by multiple logistic regression models provided estimates of the probability of species occurrence across the spatial extent of the Schelde estuary with a relatively high degree of success. Results from subsampling 50% of the original data ten times indicate final models were stable. Maps of the probability of occurrence of the macrobenthic species appeared to be fairly consistent with the observations of presence and absence in the Schelde estuary. It was concluded that where patterns of distribution are strongly and directly coupled to physicochemical processes, as is the case at the estuarine macro- and meso-scale, our modeling approach was capable of predicting macrobenthic species distributions with a relatively high degree of success, although the processes controlling estuarine macrobenthic distribution patterns cannot be determined using this method. The models and predictions might be used for evaluation of the effects of different management schemes within the Schelde estuary.

The importance of the whole Schelde estuary as a wetland for waterbirds was evaluated by analyzing monthly monitoring counts over the period October 1991 to June 1997 (chapter 10). Highest numbers of waterbirds were observed in late autumn and winter, with annual peak numbers ranging between 150,000 and 235,000 individuals for the whole estuary. Based on a multivariate analysis different waterbird communities were observed along the salinity gradient. The polyhaline areas of the estuary were numerically dominated by the waders Oystercatcher (*Haematopus ostralegus*) and Dunlin (*Calidris alpina*). Due to the presence of a large brackish marsh in the mesohaline zone, the waterbird community in this area was dominated by the herbivores Wigeon (*Anas penelope*) and

Greylag Goose (*Anser anser*). In the oligohaline and freshwater tidal areas, the waterbird community was dominated by duck species, with Teal (*Anas crecca*) and Mallard (*Anas platyrhynchos*) being the most important. The international importance of the Schelde estuary for waterbirds was evidenced by the fact that for 21 waterbird species the 1% level criterion, according to the Ramsar convention, was exceeded. The observed diversity and community patterns were clearly related to the functional and habitat diversity of the Schelde estuary, with food availability as an important factor. The effect of recent conservation measures to preserve this habitat were discussed.

This study demonstrates that macrobenthos clearly responds to the dynamic estuarine environment. The relative importance of the different environmental variables differs among estuaries and within certain regions of an estuary, depending on the regional and local physical and physicochemical conditions. Also the scale at which studies are performed (e.g. subtidal versus intertidal or the inclusion of the freshwater tidal zone into the analysis) influences the perception of their relative importance. Macrobenthic assemblages should not be considered as static entities, but as dynamic assemblages. Their persistent occurrence, however, points to a real underlying structure in the distribution of biota of the estuarine ecosystem at the large scale.

The Schelde estuary is a unique ecosystem. Preservation and conservation is necessary for maintaining it for our next generations.



Samenvatting

Estuaria zijn belangrijke overgangsgebieden tussen de rivieren en de zee. Deze gebieden worden gekenmerkt door een grote functionele en structurele biodiversiteit en vervullen belangrijke ecosysteem functies (hoofdstuk 1). De menselijke druk op estuaria neemt echter steeds meer toe, mede door het feit dat een groot deel van de wereldbevolking leeft langs kusten en estuaria. Een duurzaam beheer van deze gebieden is dan ook noodzakelijk, waarbij zowel ecologische als economische functies integraal benaderd worden.

De algemene doelstelling van dit proefschrift is een bijdrage te leveren aan de kennis van de rol van wisselende omgevingsfactoren (in ruimte en tijd) op biota in estuariene ecosystemen. Een beter inzicht hierin is onontbeerlijk om voorspellingen te doen op het effect van menselijke ingrepen op lange termijn, waardoor gepaste beheersmaatregelen kunnen uitgewerkt worden.

Deze studie gaat dieper in op het voorkomen van macrobenthos (macroscopische bodemdieren) en watervogels in het Schelde-estuarium, in relatie tot hun omgeving. Hiervoor worden talrijke gegevens van verschillende studies, voornamelijk afkomstig van monitoringprogramma's, gebruikt. Patronen en gradiënten in omgevingsvariabelen (zoutgehalte, temperatuur, diepte, stroomsnelheden en sediment karakteristieken) worden beschouwd in ruimte en in tijd om de waargenomen variabiliteit van het macrobenthos en de watervogels te kunnen verklaren.

Het estuariene ecosysteem in het algemeen en het studiegebied, het Schelde-estuarium, in het bijzonder worden beschreven in hoofdstuk 1. Het Schelde-estuarium is gelegen ter hoogte van de grens tussen Nederland en België. Het estuarium heeft een lengte van 160 km en wordt gekenmerkt door een volledige zoutgradiënt, met een inbegrip van een (uniek) zoetwatergetijdengebied. Het Nederlandse mariene en brakke deel van het estuarium wordt Westerschelde genoemd, het Vlaamse brak- en zoetwatergetijdengebied de Zeeschelde.

De ruimtelijke en temporele patronen in soortenrijkdom en gemeenschapsstructuren van het macrobenthos langsheen de volledige zoutgradiënt werden bestudeerd op intertidale en subtidale monsternamplaatsen (hoofdstukken 2, 3, 4). Duidelijke gradiënten in diversiteit, voorkomen en biomassa van het macrobenthos werden waargenomen langsheen de verticale (diepte) en longitudinale (zout) omgevingsgradiënt. De grootste diversiteit en biomassa werden waargenomen in het intergetijdengebied van de mariene zone, en namen af met afnemend zoutgehalte. De oligohaline zone en het zoetwatergetijdengebied werden gekenmerkt door een zeer verarmde bodemfauna, enkel bestaande uit Oligochaeta (hoofdstuk 2), wat werd toegeschreven aan de hoge vervuilingsgraad in dit deel van het estuarium. Lage aantallen en biomassa's werden waargenomen in de subtidale zone, dit omwille van de hoge dynamiek (hoge stroomsnelheden) in dit gebied.

De trofische structuur, welke een goed beeld geeft van het functioneren van het ecosysteem, vertoonde duidelijke verschillen langsheen de zoutgradiënt. De biomassa werd gedomineerd door 'suspension feeders' in de mariene zone, en door 'deposit feeders' en omnivoren in de brakke zone (hoofdstukken 2, 3). De dichtheid werd in alle zones gedomineerd door 'deposit feeders'.

Aan de hand van multivariate verwerkingstechnieken werd duidelijk dat de structurele complexiteit van macrobenthosgemeenschappen bepaald werd door twee gradiënten, namelijk de diepte, met daaraan gekoppeld de hydrodynamische condities (stroomsnelheden) en in mindere mate ook sediment karakteristieken, en het zoutgehalte.

Wat betreft de seizoenale variaties in het voorkomen van macrobenthos in het intergetijdengebied toonden alle algemene soorten een duidelijk seizoenaal patroon (hoofdstuk 4). Het algemene beeld was dat van een toename in de lente en de vroege zomer (recruitment), gerelateerd aan een toename in de temperatuur van het water, gevolgd door een afname naar de winter toe. De macrobenthosgemeenschappen vertoonden de grootste variatie tijdens perioden van 'recruitment'. Daarnaast was de temporele variabiliteit in macrobenthosgemeenschappen het grootst waar ook omgevingsvariabiliteit het grootst was. In de brakke overgangszone, waar het zoutgehalte grote, seizoenale variaties vertoonde, bleek de macrobenthosgemeenschap niet verder te evolueren dan een pioniersgemeenschap, gekenmerkt door opportunistische soorten. Daarentegen werd in de mariene zone, met een veel stabielere zoutgehalte, de macrobenthosgemeenschap gekenmerkt door grotere, langer levende soorten.

Het voorkomen van het macrobenthos in het intergetijdengebied van het Schelde-estuarium werd tevens vergeleken met die van twee andere Noord-West Europese estuaria, de Oosterschelde (hoofdstuk 5) en het Eems-estuarium (hoofdstuk 6).

De Oosterschelde is tezamen met het Schelde-estuarium nog het enige watersysteem in het Deltagebied dat nog in open verbinding staat met de zee. De bouw van de stormvloedkering en een verminderde zoetwateraanvoer in de Oosterschelde hebben geleid tot het wegvallen van de zoutgradiënt, en het verminderen van de turbiditeit en de vervuiling. De intertidale macrofauna van beide estuaria vertoonde vele gelijkenissen in soortensamenstelling (hoofdstuk 5). Soortenaantal en biomassa waren duidelijk hoger in de Oosterschelde, oa. door de aanwezigheid van mosselbanken. Daarentegen was de densiteit van het macrobenthos hoger in de Westerschelde. Ondanks het voorkomen van dezelfde soorten, bleek uit multivariate analyses dat de gemeenschappen duidelijk verschillend waren, hoofdzakelijk in functie van saliniteit en turbiditeit, maar ook in functie van sediment parameters. Gaande van de Oosterschelde, over de mariene zone van de Westerschelde, naar de brakke zone, wijzigde de trofische structuur van het macrobenthos van een typische domi-



nantie van 'suspension feeders' tot een gemeenschap van 'deposit feeders'. De afwezigheid van 'suspension feeders' in de brakke zone van de Westerschelde werd toegeschreven aan het zeer dynamische karakter (hoge turbiditeit) van deze zone. Hierop kunnen baggerwerken een verdere negatieve invloed hebben.

Het macrobenthos van het Schelde- en Eems-estuarium was zeer gelijkend in soortensamenstelling (hoofdstuk 6). In beide estuaria werd een duidelijke afname in soortenaantal waargenomen met dalend zoutgehalte. De densiteit vertoonde geen duidelijke trend langsheen de zoutgradiënt, de biomassa daarentegen was duidelijk hoger in de mariene zone. Beide estuaria werden gekenmerkt door drie gemeenschappen: een mariene gemeenschap, een brakke gemeenschap en een zoetwatergemeenschap. In het Schelde-estuarium, en in mindere mate ook in het Eems-estuarium, kon de zeer arme bodemfauna in het zoetwatergetijdengebied toegeschreven worden aan vervuiling. Enkel weinig gevoelige *Oligochaeta* werden hier in grote aantallen aangetroffen. De brakke zone van het Schelde-estuarium werd gekenmerkt door grote aantallen kleine, vaak opportunistische soorten, dit in tegenstelling tot het Eems-estuarium waar een meer stabiele macrobenthos gemeenschap werd waargenomen.

De brakwaterzone van de Zeeschelde werd meer in detail onderzocht (hoofdstukken 7, 8). De bodem van de subtidale zone werd hier gekenmerkt door verschillende sedimenten, gaande van zeer slibrijke tot zeer zandige (hoofdstuk 7). De wormen *Heteromastus filiformis* en *Oligochaeta* waren het meest algemeen. Ook enkele zeer typische brakwatersoorten werden aangetroffen (bv. *Polydora ligierica*, *Corophium lacustre*, *Gammarus salinus*). Aantallen en biomassa's waren gemiddeld zeer laag, en de waargenomen gemeenschappen werden voornamelijk gedomineerd door zeer kleine, opportunistische soorten, indicatief voor systemen onder stress. Op basis van multivariate analyses werden drie gemeenschappen onderscheiden, welke duidelijk gerelateerd waren aan de sedimentsamenstelling van de bodem.

In het intergetijdengebied werd onderzoek verricht naar de biologische (zowel zoobenthos als microphytobenthos) en fysische karakteristieken van cohesieve sedimenten en hun mogelijke interacties (hoofdstuk 8). Hiertoe werd een voorjaarssituatie vergeleken met een najaarssituatie op drie slikgebieden in de Zeeschelde. Het sediment op deze slikken bestond uit zeer fijn tot slibrijk zand. De verschillende fysische sediment karakteristieken waren onderling sterk gecorreleerd, en vertoonden geen significante verschillen tussen de twee onderzoeksperiodes (april en september). Het microphytobenthos en het zoobenthos daarentegen vertoonden wel duidelijke verschillen tussen beide seizoenen. Microphytobenthos biomassa was vele malen hoger in april, en vertoonde een grote ruimtelijke variatie, gerelateerd aan de hoogteligging van de bemonsteringslokaties. De densiteit en biomassa

van het zoobenthos was in april laag, voornamelijk gedomineerd door *Oligochaeta* en *Nematoda*. In september waren diversiteit, densiteit en biomassa van het zoobenthos sterk toegenomen. De resultaten toonden aan dat fysische en biologische processen op een complexe manier op elkaar inwerken, en dat hun effect op sedimentologische processen ruimtelijk en temporeel verschillen.

Het ontwikkelen van ecologische voorspellingsmodellen is noodzakelijk wil men menselijke ingrepen in ecosystemen gaan evalueren en voorspellen. De zeer grote macrobenthos dataset liet toe om een statistisch model te ontwikkelen voor het voorspellen van de aanwezigheid van macrobenthos (hoofdstuk 9). Logistische regressie technieken werden toegepast om de probabiliteit van voorkomen van macrobenthos soorten te voorspellen in functie van de omgevingsfactoren zoutgehalte, diepte, stroomsnelheden en sediment karakteristieken. A.h.v. univariate en multivariate logistische regressie modellen konden het voorkomen van de verschillende soorten met relatief grote zekerheid voorspeld worden. Gemodelleerde verspreidingskaarten vertoonden grote overeenkomst met de werkelijk waargenomen verspreiding. In situaties waar verspreidingspatronen duidelijk gekoppeld zijn aan fysicochemische omgevingsfactoren, zoals in estuariene ecosystemen, blijkt de toegepaste modelering een relatief betrouwbare voorspellingsmethode, alhoewel de onderliggende processen hiermee niet kunnen bepaald worden. De bruikbaarheid van dergelijke modellen voor het voorspellen van effecten van beheer voor het Schelde-estuarium worden momenteel onderzocht.

Het belang van het Schelde-estuarium voor watervogels werd onderzocht aan de hand van maandelijkse monitoringsgegevens verzameld in de periode 1991-1997 (hoofdstuk 10). De hoogste aantallen aan watervogels werden waargenomen in de herfst en de winter, met jaarmaxima van 150,000 tot 235,000 watervogels. Op basis van multivariate verwerkingstechnieken werden verschillende watervogelgemeenschappen waargenomen langsheen de zoutgradiënt. De mariene zone van het estuarium werd gekenmerkt door hoge aantallen steltlopers, voornamelijk Scholeksters (*Haematopus ostralegus*) en Bonte Strandlopers (*Calidris alpina*). De aanwezigheid van Saeftinghe, een zeer groot brakwaterschor, verklaart de grote aantallen herbivoren in dit deel van het estuarium, zoals de Smient (*Anas penelope*) en de Grauwe Gans (*Anser anser*). Langsheen de Zeeschelde neemt het aandeel van eenden in de watervogelgemeenschap toe, met als typische vertegenwoordigers in het zoetwatergetijdengebied de Wintertaling (*Anas crecca*) en de Wilde Eend (*Anas platyrhynchos*). Het Schelde-estuarium is van internationaal belang voor 21 soorten watervogels (meer dan 1% van de volledige NW-Europese populatie). De waargenomen patronen in diversiteit en gemeenschapsstructuren waren duidelijk gerelateerd met de functionele en habitat diversiteit, waarbij voedselbeschikbaarheid een belangrijke rol speelt.



Dit proefschrift heeft aangetoond dat het voorkomen van macrobenthos in belangrijke mate bepaald wordt door een zeer dynamische omgeving, kenmerkend voor een estuarien ecosysteem. Macrobenthosgemeenschappen mogen dan ook niet beschouwd worden als statische entiteiten. Het belang van de sturende omgevingsvariabelen verschilt evenwel tussen estuaria en tussen verschillende zones binnen één estuarium, afhankelijk van regionale en lokale fysische en fysicochemische condities. Ook de beschouwde schaalgrootte van een studie, zowel in ruimte als in tijd, speelt hierbij een rol.

References

- AERTS, B.A., P. ESSELINK & G.F.J. HELDER, 1996. Habitat selection and diet composition of Greylag Geese *Anser anser* and Barnacle Geese *Branta leucopsis* during fall and spring staging in relation to management in the tidal marshes of the Dollard. *Zeitschrift für Ökologie und Naturschutz* 5: 65-75.
- ALLEN, T.F.H. & T.B. STARR, 1982. *Hierarchy: perspectives for ecological complexity*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- ANONYMOUS, 1985. Biological research Ems-Dollard estuary. *Rijkswaterstaat Communications* 40: 1-179.
- ANONYMOUS, 1986. Te verwachten ontwikkelingen in het Oosterscheldebekken na 1987. *Nota GWAO-86.106*: 142 pp.
- ANONYMOUS, 1990. Meetnet van de kwaliteit van de Belgische oppervlaktewateren in 1990. Ministerie van Volksgezondheid en Leefmilieu, Instituut voor Hygiëne en Epidemiologie, Brussel.
- ASMUS, H., 1987. Secondary production of an intertidal mussel bed community related to its storage and turnover compartments. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 39: 251-266.
- ATKINSON-WILLES, G.L., 1976. The numerical distribution of ducks, swans and Coots as a guide in assessing the importance of wetlands in midwinter. In: M. SMART, Ed., *Proc. Int. Conference on Conservation of Wetlands and Waterfowl*, Heiligenhafen, Federal Republic of Germany, pp 199-254.
- AUSTEN, M.C., R.M. WARWICK & M.C. ROSADO, 1989. Meiobenthic and macrobenthic community structure along a putative pollution gradient in southern Portugal. *Mar. Poll. Bull.* 20: 398-405.
- AUSTIN, M.P., 1987. Models for the analysis of species response to environmental gradients. *Vegetatio* 69: 35-45.
- AVOINE, J., G.P. ALLEN, M. NICHOLS, J.C. SALOMON & C. LARSONNEUR, 1981. Suspended-sediment transport in the Seine estuary, France: Effect of man-made modifications on estuary-shelf sedimentology. *Mar. Geol.* 40: 119-137.
- BACHELET, G., 1986. Recruitment and year-to-year variability in a population of *Macoma balthica* (L.). *Hydrobiologia* 142: 233-248.
- BAEYENS, W., B. VAN ECK, C. LAMBERT, R. WOLLAST & L. GOEYENS, 1998. General description of the Scheldt estuary. *Hydrobiologia* 366: 1-14.
- BARETTA, J. & P. RUARDIJ, 1988. Tidal flat estuaries. Simulation and analysis of the Ems estuary. *Ecological Studies* 71, Springer Verlag, Berlin, 353 pp.
- BARNES, R.D., 1982. *Invertebrate zoology*, 4th edition. Holt-Saunders, Tokio.
- BARRANGUET, C., P.M.J. HERMAN & J.J. SINKE, 1997. Microphytobenthos biomass and community composition studied by pigment biomarkers: importance and fate in the carbon cycle of a tidal flat. *J. Sea Res.* 38: 59-70.
- BASTROP, R., M. RÖHNER, C. STURMBAUER & K. JÜRSS, 1997. Where did *Marenzelleria* spp. (Polychaeta: Spionidae) in Europe come from? *Aquat. Ecol.* 31: 119-136.
- BAYNE, B.L., K.R. CLARKE & J.S. GRAY, 1988. Biological effects of pollutants. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 46: 1-278.
- BEINTEMA, A. & J. VAN VESSEM, 1999. Strategies for Conserving Migratory Waterbirds - Proceedings of Workshop 2 of the 2nd International Conference on Wetlands and Development held in Dakar, Senegal, 8-14 November 1998. Wetlands International Publication No. 55, Wageningen, The Netherlands, vi + 71 pp.
- BELL, R.G., T.M. HUME, T.J. DOLPHIN, M.O. GREEN & R.A. WALTERS, 1997. Characterisation of physical environmental factors on an intertidal sandflat, Manukau Harbour, New Zealand. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 216: 11-31.
- BELMANS, H., 1988. Verdiepings- en onderhoudsbaggerwerken in Wester- en Zeeschelde. *Water* 43: 184-194.
- BEUKEMA, J.J., 1976. Biomass and species richness of the macrobenthic animals living on tidal flats of the Dutch Wadden-sea. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 10: 236-261.
- BEUKEMA, J.J., 1979. Biomass and species richness of the macrobenthic animals living on at tidal flat area in the Dutch Wadden Sea: effects of a severe winter. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 13: 203-223.
- BEUKEMA, J.J., 1981. Quantitative data on the benthos in the Wadden Sea proper. In: DANKERS, N., H. KÜHL & W.J. WOLFF, Eds., *Invertebrates of the Wadden Sea*. Balkema Rotterdam, pp. 132-142.
- BEUKEMA, J.J., 1982. Annual variation in reproductive success and biomass of the major macrozoobenthic species living in a tidal flat area of the Wadden Sea. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 16: 37-45.
- BEUKEMA, J.J., 1983. Quantitative data on the benthos of the Wadden Sea proper. In: W.J. WOLFF, Ed., *Ecology of the Wadden Sea*. Balkema, Rotterdam, pp. 4/134-4/142.
- BEUKEMA, J., 1989. Long-term changes in macrobenthic abundance on the tidal flats of the Western Wadden Sea. *Helgoländer Meeresunters.* 43: 405-415.
- BILLEN, G., C. LANCELOT & M. MEYBECK, 1991. N, P and Si retention along the aquatic continuum from land to ocean. In: MANTOURA, R.F.C., J.M. MARTIN & R. WOLLAST, Eds., *Ocean Margin Processes in Global Change*, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, pp. 19-44.
- BIO, A.M.F., R. ALKEMADE & A. BARENDREGT, 1998. Determining alternative models for vegetation response analysis: a non-parametric approach. *J. Veg. Sci.* 9: 5-16.
- BOESCH, D.F., 1977. A new look at the zonation of benthos along the estuarine gradient. In: B.C. COULL, Ed., *Ecology of marine benthos*. The Belle W. Baruch Library in Marine Science 6, University of South



- Carolina Press, Columbia, South Carolina, pp. 245-266.
- BOESCH, D.F. & R. ROSENBERG, 1981. Response to stress in marine benthic communities. In: G.W. BARRETT & R. ROSENBERG, Eds., *Stress Effects on Natural Ecosystems*. Wiley, New York, p. 179-200.
- BÖHME, B., 1989. Bestandsaufnahmen des eulitoral Makrobenthos im Ems-Dollart-Ästuar. Niedersächsisches Landesamt für Wasserwirtschaft -Forschungsstelle Küste- Norderney, 29 pp.
- BOUSFIELD, E.L., 1970. Adaptive radiation in sand burrowing amphipod crustaceans. *Ches. Sci.* 11:143-154.
- BOYD, H. & J.-Y. PIROT, 1989. Flyways and reserve networks for water birds. IWRB Special Publication No. 9, Slimbridge.
- BROTAS, V. & M.R. PLANTE-CUNY, 1998. Spatial and temporal patterns of microphytobenthic taxa of estuarine tidal flats in the Tagus Estuary (Portugal) using pigment analysis by HPLC. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 171: 43-57.
- BRUMMELHUIS, E., J. CRAEYMEERSCH, R. MARKUSSE & W. SISTERMANS, 1997. Het macrobenthos van de Westerschelde, de Oosterschelde, het Veerse meer en het Grevelingenmeer in het najaar 1996. Rapport in het kader van het Biologisch Monitoring Programma, NIOO-CEMO Yerseke, 43 pp.
- BUCKLAND, S.T. & D.A. ELSTON, 1993. Empirical models for the spatial distribution of wildlife. *J. Appl. Ecol.* 30: 478-495.
- BULGER, A.J., B.P. HAYDEN, M.E. MONACO, D.M. NELSON & M. G. MCCORMICK-RAY, 1993. Biologically-based estuarine salinity zones derived from a multivariate analysis. *Estuaries* 16: 311-322.
- BUTMAN, C.A., 1987. Larval settlement of soft-sediment invertebrates: the spatial scales of pattern explained by active habitat selection and the emerging role of hydrodynamical processes. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 25: 113-165.
- BUXTON, N.E., 1981. The importance of food in the determination of the winter flock sites of the Shelduck. *Wildfowl* 32: 79-87.
- CADÉE, G.C., 1979. Sediment reworking by the polychaete *Heteromastus filiformis* on a tidal flat in the Dutch Wadden Sea. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 13: 441-456.
- CAIRNS, J. JR., 1997. Sustainability, ecosystem services, and health. *Int. J. Sustain. Dev. World Ecol.* 4: 153-165.
- CAIRNS, J. JR. 1999. Balancing ecological destruction and restoration: the only hope for sustainable use of the planet. *Aquatic Ecosystem Health and Management* 2: 91-95.
- CARR, M.R., R.G. CARTER & K.R. CLARKE, 1993. User guide to PRIMER v. 3.1b (Plymouth Routines in Multivariate Ecological Research). Version prepared for training workshop at Plymouth Marine Laboratory, October 1993, 53 pp.
- CARRIKER, M.R., 1967. Ecology of estuarine benthic invertebrates, a perspective. In: G.H. LAUFF, Ed., *Estuaries*. American Society for the Advancement of Science, Washington, Washington DC, pp. 442-487.
- CASPER, H., 1948. Ökologische Untersuchungen über die Wattentierwelt im Elbe-Ästuar. *Verh. Deutsch. Zool. Ges. Kiel* 1948: 350-359.
- CATTRIJSE, A., H.R. DANKWA & J. MEES, 1997. Nursery function of an estuarine tidal marsh for the brown shrimp *Crangon crangon*. *J. Sea Res.* 38: 109-121.
- CHRISTENSEN, N.L., A.M. BARTUSKA, J.H. BROWN, S. CARPENTER, C. D'ANTONIO, R. FRANCIS, J.F. FRANKLIN, J.A. MACMAHON, R.F. NOSS, D.J. PARSONS, C.H. PETERSON, M.G. TURNER & R.G. WOODMANSEE, 1996. The report of the Ecological Society of America Committee on the scientific basis for ecosystem management. *Ecological Applications* 6: 665-691.
- CICIN-SAIN, B. & R.W. KNECHT, 1998. *Integrated Coastal and Ocean Management: Concepts and Practices*. Washington, DC: Island Press. (517 pages).
- CLAESSENS, J., 1988. Het hydrodynamisch regime van de Schelde. *Water* 43(1): 163-169.
- CLAESSENS, J., J. VAN HOOFF & J.H.M. DE RUIJ, 1991. Interaction morphology and dredging works. *Water* 60: 182-189 (in dutch).
- CLARK, R.B. & E.C. HADERLIE, 1960. The distribution of *Nephtys cirrosa* and *Nephtys hombergii* on the south-western coasts of England and Wales. *J. Anim. Ecol.* 29: 117-147.
- CLARKE, K.R., 1993. Non-parametric multivariate analyses of changes in community structure. *Aust. J. Ecol.* 18: 117-143.
- CLIFFORD, H.T. & W. STEPHENSON, 1975. *An introduction to numerical classification*. Academic Press, New York.
- COMMITO, J.A., S.F. THRUSH, R.D. PRIDMORE, J.E. HEWITT & V.J. CUMMINGS, 1995. Dispersal dynamics in a wind-driven benthic system. *Limnol. Oceanogr.* 40: 1513-1518.
- CONSTABLE, A.J., 1999. Ecology of benthic macro-invertebrates in soft-sediment environments: A review of progress towards quantitative models and predictions. *Aust. J. Ecol.* 24: 452-476.
- COSTANZA, R., W.M. KEMP & W.R. BOYNTON, 1993. Predictability, scale, and biodiversity in coastal and estuarine ecosystems: implications for management. *Ambio* 22: 88-96.
- COSTANZA, R., R. D'ARCE, R. DE GROOT, S. FARBER, M. GRASSO, B. HANNON, K. LIMBURG, S. NAEEM, R.V. O'NEILL, J. PARUELO, R.G. RASKIN, P. SUTTON & M. VAN DEN BELT, 1997. The value of the world's ecosystem services and natural capital. *Nature* 387: 253-260.
- COX, D.R., 1970. *The analysis of binary data*. Methuen, London.
- CRAEYMEERSCH, J.A., 1999. The use of macrobenthic communities in the evaluation of environmental change. PhD thesis, University of Gent, Belgium.
- CRAEYMEERSCH, J.A., E.B.M. BRUMMELHUIS, M. DIMMERS, R. MARKUSSE & W. SISTERMANS, 1996. The macrobenthos of



- Westerschelde, Oosterschelde, Veerse meer and Grevelingenmeer in autumn 1995). Report Biologisch Monitoring Programma. Netherlands Institute of Ecology, Yerseke, The Netherlands. (in Dutch).
- CROKER, R.A., 1967. Niche diversity in five sympatric species of intertidal amphipods (Crustacea: Haustoriidae). *Ecol. Monogr.* 37: 173-200.
- DAILY, G.C., S. ALEXANDER, P.R. EHRLICH, L. GOULDER, J. LUBCHENCO, P.A. MATSON, H.A. MOONEY, S. POSTEL, S.H. SCHNEIDER, D. TILMAN & G.M. WOODWELL, 1997. Ecosystem services: Benefits supplied to human society by natural ecosystems. *Ecological Society of America, Issues in Ecology* No. 2.
- DAUER, D.M., 1993. Biological criteria, environmental health and estuarine macrobenthic community structure. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.* 26: 249-257.
- DAUER, D.M., 1996. Dynamics of an estuarine ecosystem: long-term trends in the macrobenthic communities of Chesapeake bay, (1985-1993). *Oceanol. acta* 20: 291-298.
- DAUER, D.M., C.A. MAYBURY & R.M. EWING, 1981. Feeding behavior and general ecology of several spionid polychaetes from the Chesapeake Bay. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 54: 21-38.
- DAUWE, B., 1999. Organic matter quality in North Sea sediments. PhD thesis, Rijksuniversiteit Groningen.
- DAUWE, B., P.M.J. HERMAN & C.H.R. HEIP, 1998. Community structure and bioturbation potential of macrofauna at four North Sea stations with contrasting food supply. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 173: 67-83.
- DAVEY, J.T. & V.A. PARTRIDGE, 1998. The macrofaunal communities of the Skeffling muds (Humber estuary), with special reference to bioturbation. In: BLACK K.S., D.M. PATERSON & A. CRAMP, Eds., *Sedimentary Processes in the intertidal zone*. Geological Society, London, Special Publications 139: 115-124.
- DAVIDSON, N.C., 1991. Human activities and wildlife conservation on estuaries of different sizes: a comment. *Aquat. Conserv.* 1: 89-92.
- DAVIDSON, N.C., D. D'A LAFFOLEY, J.P. DOODY, L.S. WAY, J. GORDON, R. KEY, C.M. DRAKE, M.W. PIENKOWSKI, R. MITCHELL & K.L. DUFF, 1991. Nature conservation and estuaries in Great Britain. Peterborough, Nature Conservancy Council, 422 pp.
- DAVIS, T.J., 1994. The Ramsar Convention Manual: a guide to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as a Waterfowl Habitat. Ramsar Convention Bureau, Gland, Switzerland.
- DAY, J.W., JR., A.S. HALL, W.M. KEMP & A. YANEZ-ARANCIBIA, 1989. *Estuarine ecology*. Wiley, New York, 558 pp.
- DE BROUWER, J.F.C., S. BIJELIC, E.M.G.T. DE DECKERE & L.J. STAL, 2000. Interplay between biology and sedimentology in a mudflat (Biezelingse Ham, Westerschelde, The Netherlands). *Cont. Shelf Res.*, in press.
- DE DECKERE, E.M.G.T., T.J. TOLHURST & J.F.C. DE BROUWER, 2000. Destabilization of cohesive intertidal sediments by infauna. Submitted.
- DEGRAER, S., I. MOUTON, L. DE NEVE & M. VINCX, 1999. Community structure and intertidal zonation of the macrobenthos on a macrotidal, ultra-dissipative sandy beach: summer-winter comparison. *Estuaries* 22: 742-752.
- DE GROOT, R.S., 1997. Valuing natural ecosystems: from local services to global capital. Position paper for the European Symposium on environmental valuation. Vaux de Cernay, France.
- DE JONG, D.J. & V.N. DE JONGE, 1995. Dynamics and distribution of microphytobenthic chlorophyll-a in the Western Scheldt estuary (SW Netherlands). *Hydrobiologia* 311: 21-30.
- DE JONGE, V.N., 1992. Physical processes and dynamics of microphytobenthos in the Ems estuary (The Netherlands). Phd. Thesis, University of Groningen, 176 pp.
- DE JONGE, V.N. & K. ESSINK, 1992. The Ems Estuary: Water circulation, sediment dynamics and nutrient enrichment. Rijkswaterstaat, Tidal Waters Division, Report DGW-92.025, 38 pp.
- DEKKER, R., 1992. The macrozoobenthos along nine transects in the Wadden Sea and the Ems-Dollard in 1991. Netherlands Institute for Sea Research, NIOZ-report 1992-3, 44 pp. (in Dutch).
- DEKKER, R., 1993. The macrozoobenthos along nine transects in the Wadden Sea and the Ems-Dollard in 1992. Netherlands Institute for Sea Research, NIOZ-report 1993-3, 42 pp. (in Dutch).
- DEKKER, L., P. LIEVENSE & C. VAN DER MALE, 1994. Calibratie en verificatie SCALDIS100. Rijkswaterstaat, Rijksinstituut voor Kust en Zee, werkdocument RIKZ/AB-94.839x.
- DE NEVE, L., T. YSEBAERT, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1998. The macrobenthos of the sublitoral Beneden Zeeschelde (1996-1997). Report 98/17, Institute of Nature Conservation, Brussels, Belgium. (in Dutch).
- DEN HARTOG, C., 1964. Typologie des Brackwassers. *Helgoländer wiss. Meeresunters* 10: 377-390.
- DEN HARTOG, C., 1971. The border environment between the sea and the fresh water, with special reference to the estuary. *Vie et Milieu* 22: 739-751.
- DIAZ, R.J., 1989. Pollution and tidal benthic communities of the James River Estuary, Virginia. *Hydrobiologia* 180: 195-211.
- DIAZ, R.J. & R. ROSENBERG, 1995. Marine benthic hypoxia: a review of its ecological effects and the behavioural responses of benthic macrofauna. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 33: 245-303.
- DITTMER, J.-D., 1983. The distribution of subtidal macrobenthos in the estuaries of the rivers Ems and Weser. In: W. WOLFF, Ed., *Ecology of the Wadden Sea*. Balkema, Rotterdam, p. 4/188-4/206.



- DOEKES, J., 1986. De stijging van de hoogwaterstanden op de Westerschelde in de afgelopen eeuw. RWS- nota GWIO-86.014: 5 pp.
- DONE, T.J. & R.E. REICHEL, 1998. Integrated coastal zone and fisheries ecosystem management: generic goals and performance indices. *Ecol. Appl.* 8: 110-118.
- DÖRJES, R. & H.-E. REINECK, 1981. Eine Elbstrombucht mit Süßwasserwatten. *Natur und Museum* 111: 275-285.
- DÖRJES, J., H. MICHAELIS & B. RHODE, 1986. Long-term studies of macrozoobenthos in intertidal and shallow subtidal habitats near the island of Norderney (East Frisian Coast, Germany). *Hydrobiologia* 142: 217-232.
- DUCROTOY, J.-P., H. RYBARCZYK, J. SOUPRAYEN, G. BACHELET, J.J. BEUKEMA, M. DESPREZ, J. DÖRJES, K. ESSINK, J. GUILLLOU, H. MICHAELIS, B. SYLVAND, J.G. WILSON, B. ELKÆM & F. IBANEZ, 1991. A comparison of the population dynamics of the cockle (*Cerastoderma edule*, L.) in North-Western Europe. In: ELLIOTT, M. & J.-P. DUCROTOY, Eds., *Estuaries and Coasts: Spatial and temporal intercomparisons*. Olsen & Olsen, Fredensborg, Denmark, pp. 173-184.
- DUURSMA, E.K., A.G.A. MERKS & J. NIEUWENHUIZE, 1988. Exchange processes in estuaries such as the Westerschelde, an overview. *Hydrobiol. Bull.* 22(1): 7-20.
- ELLIOT, M. & C.J.M. TAYLOR, 1989. The production ecology of the subtidal benthos of the Forth Estuary, Scotland. *Sci. Mar.* 53: 531-541.
- ENS, B.J., T. PIERSMA & R.H. DRENT, 1994. The dependence of waders and waterfowl migrating along the East Atlantic Flyway on their coastal food supplies: what is the most profitable research program? *Ophelia* supp. 6: 127-151.
- EPPINGA, J., 1991. The bottom fauna of the intertidal zone near Eemscentrale (Ems estuary) in the period 1976-1986. Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren, GWA0-91.065, 31 pp. (in Dutch).
- EPPINGA, J. & K. ESSINK, 1990. Changes in the bottom fauna of the intertidal zone along the 'Bocht van Watum' (Ems estuary) in the period 1981-1986. Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren, GWA0-90.060, 35 pp. (in Dutch).
- ESSELINK, P., J. VAN BELKUM & K. ESSINK, 1989. The effect of organic pollution on the local distribution of *Nereis diversicolor* and *Corophium volutator*. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 23: 323-332.
- ESSINK, K., 1999. Dispersal and development of *Marenzelleria* spp. (Polychaeta, Spionidae) in NW Europe and The Netherlands. *Helgoländer Meeresunters.* 52: 367-372.
- ESSINK, K. & H.L. KLEEF, 1988. *Marenzelleria viridis* (Verrill, 1873) (Polychaeta: Spionidae): a new record from the Ems estuary (The Netherlands / Federal Republic of Germany). *Zoologische Bijdragen (Leiden)* 38: 1-13.
- ESSINK, K. & H.L. KLEEF, 1993. Distribution and life cycle of the North American spionid polychaete *Marenzelleria viridis* (Verrill, 1873) in the Ems estuary. *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27: 237-246.
- ESSINK, K. & U. SCHÖTTLER, 1997. Studies on *Marenzelleria* spp. (Polychaeta: Spionidae). *Aquat. Ecol.* 31: 117-258.
- ESSINK, K., J. EPPINGA & R. DEKKER, 1998. Long-term changes (1977-1994) in intertidal macrozoobenthos of the Dollard (Ems estuary) and effects of introduction of the North American spionid polychaete *Marenzelleria* cf. *Wireni*. *Senckenbergiana maritima* 28: 212-225.
- ESSINK, K., J.J. BEUKEMA, J. COOSEN, J.A. CRAEYMEERSCH, J.-P. DUCROTOY, H. MICHAELIS & B. ROBINEAU, 1991. Population dynamics of the bivalve mollusc *Scrobicularia plana* da Costa: comparisons in time and space. In: ELLIOTT, M. & J.-P. DUCROTOY, Eds., *Estuaries and Coasts: Spatial and temporal intercomparisons*. Olsen & Olsen, Fredensborg, Denmark, pp. 167-172.
- EVANS, P.R., & P.J. DUGAN, 1984. Coastal birds: numbers in relation to food resources. In: EVANS, P.R., J.D. GOSS-CUSTARD & W.G. HALE, Eds., *Coastal waders and wildfowl in winter*. Cambridge University Press, pp. 8-28.
- EVANS, P.R., J.D. GOSS-CUSTARD & W.G. HALE, 1984. *Coastal waders and wildfowl in winter*. Cambridge University Press.
- FAIRBRIDGE, R., 1980. The estuary: its definition and geodynamic cycle. In: OLAUSSON, E. & I. CATO, Eds., *Chemistry and biochemistry of estuaries*, Wiley, New York, pp. 1-35.
- FAUCHALD, K. & P.A. JUMARS, 1979. The diet of worms: a study of polychaete feeding guilds. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 17: 193-284.
- FERGUSON, H.A., & W.J. WOLFF, 1983. The Haringvliet-project: The development of the Rhine-Meuse estuary from tidal inlet to stagnant freshwater lake. *Water Sci. Technol.* 16: 11-22.
- FETTWEIS, M. & M. SAS, 1999. On the sedimentation of mud in access channels to the harbour of Antwerp. *PIANC Bulletin* 101: 53-59.
- FETTWEIS, M., M. SAS & J. MONBALIU, 1998. Seasonal, neap-spring and tidal variation of cohesive sediment concentration in the Scheldt Estuary, Belgium. *Estuar. Coast. Shelf S.* 47: 21-36.
- FIELD, J.G., K.R. CLARKE & R.M. WARWICK, 1982. A practical strategy for analysing multispecies distribution patterns. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 8: 37-52.
- FLACH, E.C., 1992. The influence of four macrozoobenthic species on the abundance of the amphipod *Corophium volutator* on tidal flats of the Wadden Sea. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 29: 379-394.
- FLACH, E.C., 1993. The distribution of the amphipod *Corophium arenarium* in the dutch Wadden Sea: relationships with sediment composition and the presence of cockles and lugworms. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 31: 281-290.
- FLACH, E.C., 1996. The influence of the cockle *Cerastoderma edule* on the macrozoobenthic commu-



- nity of tidal flats in the Wadden Sea. *P.S.Z.N.I.: Mar. Ecol.* 17: 87-98.
- FLINT, R.W. & R.D. KALKE, 1985. Benthos structure and function in a South Texas Estuary. *Contrib. Mar. Sci.* 28: 33-53.
- FURNESS, R.W. & J.J.D. GREENWOOD, 1993. Birds as monitors of environmental change. Chapman & Hall, London.
- GASTON, G.R., C.F. RAKOCINSKI, S.S. BROWN & C.M. CLEVELAND, 1998. Trophic function in estuaries: response of macrobenthos to natural and contaminant gradients. *Mar. Freshwater Res.* 49: 833-846.
- GAUCH, H.G., JR., 1982. Multivariate analysis in community ecology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 298 pp.
- GERDOL, V. & R.G. HUGHES, 1994A. Effect of *Corophium volutator* on the abundance of benthic diatoms, bacteria and sediment stability in two estuaries in southeastern England. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 114: 109-115.
- GERDOL, V. & R.G. HUGHES, 1994B. Feeding behaviour and diet of *Corophium volutator* in an estuary in south-eastern England. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 114: 103-108.
- GOOSEN, N.K., P. VAN RIJSWIJK & U. BROCKMANN, 1995. Comparison of heterotrophic bacterial production rates in early spring in the turbid estuaries of the Scheldt and the Elbe. *Hydrobiologia* 311: 31-42.
- GOOSEN, N.K., J. KROMKAMP, J. PEENE, P. VAN RIJSWIJK & P. VAN BREUGEL, 1999. Bacterial and phytoplankton production in the maximum turbidity zone of three European estuaries: the Elbe, Westerschelde and Gironde. *J. Marine Syst.* 22: 151-171.
- GOSS-CUSTARD, J.D., 1985. Foraging behaviour of wading birds and the carrying capacity of estuaries. In: SIBLY, R.M. & R.H. SMITH, Eds., *Behavioural Ecology*, Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford, pp 169-188.
- GRANT, J., 1983. The relative magnitude of biological and physical sediment reworking in an intertidal community. *J. Mar. Res.* 41: 673-689.
- GRANT, J. & G. DABORN, 1994. The effects of bioturbation on sediment transport on an intertidal mudflat. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 32: 63-72.
- GRANT, J., U.V. BATHMANN & E.L. MILLS, 1986. The interaction between benthic diatom films and sediment transport. *Estuar. Coast. Shelf S.* 23: 225-238.
- GRANT, J., S.J. TURNER, P. LEGENDRE, T.M. HUME & R.G. BELL, 1997. Patterns of sediment reworking and transport over small spatial scales on an intertidal sandflat, Manukau Harbour, New Zealand. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 216: 33-50.
- GRARE, W., 1998. Veiligheid tegen overstromingen in Vlaanderen. *Water* 102: 309-310.
- GRAY, J.S., 1974. Animal-sediment relationships. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 12: 223-261.
- GRAY, J.S., 1976. The fauna of the polluted Tees estuary. *Estuar. Coast. Mar. S.* 4: 652-676.
- GRAY, J.S., 1989. Effects of environmental stress on species rich assemblages. *Biol. J. Linn. Soc.* 37: 19-32.
- GRAY, J.S., 1997. Marine biodiversity: patterns, threats and conservation needs. *Biodivers. Conserv.* 6: 153-175.
- HAESLOOP, U., 1990. Beurteilung der zu erwartenden Auswirkungen einer Reduzierung der anthropogenen Weserversalzung auf die aquatische Biozönose der Unterweser. Dissertation, University of Bremen. Bremen, Germany.
- HALL, S.J., 1994. Physical disturbance and marine benthic communities: life in unconsolidated sediments. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 32: 179-239.
- HALL, S.J., D. RAFFAELLI & S.F. THRUSH, 1994. Patchiness and disturbance in shallow water benthic assemblages. In: HILDREW, A.G., P.S. GILLER & D. RAFFAELLI, Eds., *Aquatic Ecology: Scale, Pattern and Processes*. Blackwell Scientific, pp. 333-375.
- HAMERLYNCK, O., J. MEES, J.A. CRAEYMEERSCH, K. SOETAERT, K. HOSTENS, A. CATTIRJSSE & P.A. VAN DAMME, 1993. The Westerschelde estuary: two food webs and a nutrient rich desert. *Progress in Belgian Oceanographic Research*: 217-234.
- HAMMOND, A. 1992. *World Resources 1992-1993: towards sustainable development*. Oxford University Press, Oxford.
- HARGRAVE, B.T., N.J. PROUSE, G.A. PHILLIPS & P.A. NEAME, 1983. Primary production and respiration in pelagic and benthic communities at two intertidal sites in the upper Bay of Fundy. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 40 (Suppl. 1): 229-243.
- HARREL, R.C. & M.A. HALL, 1991. Macrobenthic community structure before and after pollution abatement in the Neches River estuary (Texas). *Hydrobiologia* 211: 241-252.
- HARVEY, M. & B. VINCENT, 1989. Spatial and temporal variations of the reproduction cycle and energy allocation of the bivalve *Macoma balthica* (L.) on a tidal flat. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 129: 199-217.
- HEIP, C., 1988. Biota and abiotic environment in the Westerschelde estuary. *Hydrobiol. Bull.* 22: 31-34.
- HEIP, C., 1989. The ecology of the estuaries of Rhine, Meuse and Scheldt in the Netherlands. In: J.D. ROSS, Ed., *Topics in Marine Biology*, *Scient. Mar.* 53: 457-463.
- HEIP, C.H.R. & P.M.J. HERMAN, 1995. Major biological processes in European tidal estuaries. *Hydrobiologia* 311, 266 pp.
- HEIP, C., R. HERMAN & J. CRAEYMEERSCH, 1986. Diversity, density and biomass of macrobenthos in the Westerschelde: 1978-1985. University of Gent, Section Marine Biology, 12 pp. (in Dutch).
- HEIP, C., B.F. KEEGAN & J.R. LEWIS, 1987. Long-term changes in coastal benthic communities. *Developments in Hydrobiology* 38. Dr W Junk Publishers, Dordrecht, The Netherlands.
- HEIP, C.H.R., N.K. GOOSEN, P.M.J. HERMAN, J. KROMKAMP, J.J. MIDDELBURG & K. SOETAERT, 1995. Production and con-



- sumption of biological particles in temperate tidal estuaries. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 33: 1-149.
- HERMAN, P.M.J. & C.H.R. HEIP, 1999. Biogeochemistry of the Maximum Turbidity Zone of Estuaries (MATURE). *J. Marine Syst.* 22: 89-228.
- HERMAN, P.M.J., J.J. MIDDELBURG, J. VAN DE KOPPEL & C.H.R. HEIP, 1999. Ecology of estuarine macrobenthos. *Adv. Ecol. Res.* 29: 195-240.
- HERMAN, P.M.J., J.J. MIDDELBURG, J. WIDDOWS, C.H. LUCAS & C.H.R. HEIP, 2000. Stable isotope labelling experiments confirm the importance of microphytobenthos as food for macrofauna. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, in press.
- HILL, M.O., 1979. TWINSPLAN: A Fortran program of arranging multivariate data in an ordered two-way table by classification of the individuals and attributes. Section of Ecology and Systematics, Cornell University Ithaca, New York, 48 pp.
- HOFFMANN, M. & P. MEIRE, 1997. De oevers langs de Zeeschelde: inventarisatie van de huidige oeverstructuren. *Water* 95: 131-137.
- HOLLAND, A.F., R.G. ZINGMARK & J.M. DEAN, 1974. Quantitative evidence concerning the stabilization of sediments by marine benthic diatoms. *Mar. Biol.* 27: 191-196.
- HOLLAND, A.F., A.T. SHAUGHNESSY & M.H. HIEGEL, 1987. Long-term variation in mesohaline Chesapeake Bay macrobenthos: spatial and temporal patterns. *Estuaries* 10: 227-245.
- HONKOOP, P.J.C. & J. VAN DER MEER, 1997. Reproductive output of *Macoma balthica* populations in relation to winter temperature and intertidal-height mediated changes in body mass. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 149: 155-162.
- HOSMER, D.W. & S. LEMESHOW, 1989. Applied logistic regression. Wiley & Sons, New York.
- HUISMAN, J., H. OLFF & L.F.M. FRESCO, 1993. A hierarchical set of models for species response analysis. *J. Veg. Sci.* 4: 37-46.
- HUMMEL, H., G. MOERLAND & C. BAKKER, 1988. The concomitant existence of a typical coastal and a detritus food chain in the Westerschelde estuary. *Hydrobiol. Bull.* 22(1): 35 - 41.
- HUPKES, R., 1990. Pollution of the North Sea imposed by West-European rivers (1984-1987). Report 90.03, International Centre of Water Studies (ICWS), Amsterdam.
- JANSSEN, C., E. BOEL, R. HERMAN & M. VINCX, 1988. Diversity, density and biomass of macrobenthos in the Westerschelde: 1986-88. University of Gent, Section Marine Biology, 15 pp. (in Dutch).
- JENSEN, K.T. & H.R. SIEGISMUND, 1980. The importance of diatoms and bacteria in the diet of *Hydrobia* species. *Ophelia* (Suppl.) 17: 193-199.
- JEPSEN, U., 1965. Die Struktur der Wattenbiozöosen im Vormündungsgebiet der Elbe. *Arch. Hydrobiol. Suppl. Elbe-Aestuar XXIXII* 3/4: 252-370.
- JONGMAN, R.H.G., C.J.F. TER BRAAK & O.F.R. VAN TONGEREN, 1987. Data analysis in community and landscape ecology. Pudoc, Wageningen.
- JONGMAN, R.H.G., C.F.J. TER BRAAK & O.F.R. VAN TONGEREN, 1995. Data analysis in community and landscape ecology, 2nd edition. Cambridge University Press.
- JUNOY, J. & J.M. VIÉTEZ, 1990. Macrozoobenthic community structure in the Ria de Foz, an intertidal estuary (Galicia, Northwest Spain). *Mar. Biol.* 107: 329-339.
- KALKE, R.D. & P.A. MONTAGNA, 1991. The effect of freshwater inflow on macrobenthos in the Lavaca River Delta and upper Lavaca Bay, Texas. *Contrib. Mar. Sci.* 32: 49-71.
- KAMERMANS, P., 1994. Similarity in food source and timing of feeding in deposit- and suspension-feeding bivalves. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 104: 63-75.
- KHAYRALLAH, N.H. & A.M. JONES, 1980. The ecology of *Bathyporeia pilosa* (Amphipoda: Haustoriidae) in the Tay estuary. II. Factors affecting the microdistribution. *P. Roy. Soc. Edinb. B* 78: 121-130.
- KLEEF, H.L., 1991. The macrozoobenthos of the Hond-Paap in the Ems estuary in 1988. Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren, GWA0-91.062, 55 pp. (in Dutch).
- KOLBE, K., 1992. Long term study of benthos communities in the vicinity of a TiO₂-waste water outlet in the Weser estuary. In: P.M.J. HERMAN, Ed., JEEP 92: Major biological processes in European tidal estuaries. Report of the workshop held in Plymouth, Jan.29-Feb.1 1992. Center for Estuarine and Coastal Ecology, Yerseke, The Netherlands. p. 13-22.
- KRAMER, K.J.M., U.H. BROCKMANN & R.M. WARWICK, 1994. Tidal estuaries. Manual of sampling and analytical Procedures. Balkema, Rotterdam.
- KROMKAMP, J., J. PEENE, P. VAN RIJSWIJK, A. SANDEE & N. GOOSEN, 1995. Nutrients, light and primary production by phytoplankton and microphytobenthos in the eutrophic, turbid Westerschelde estuary (The Netherlands). *Hydrobiologia* 311: 9-19.
- KRUSKAL, J.B. & M. WISH, 1978. Multidimensional scaling. Sage Publications, Beverly Hills.
- KUHL, H. & H. MANN, 1983. Main characteristics of the environment and zooplankton of Eider, Elbe, Weser and Ems. In: W.J. WOLFF, Ed., Ecology of the Wadden Sea. Balkema, Rotterdam, p. 4/143 -4/145.
- KUSHLAN, J.A., 1993. Waterbirds as bioindicators of wetland change: are they a valuable tool? In: MOSER, M., PRENTICE, R.C. and VAN VESSEM, J. Eds. Waterfowl and wetland conservation in the 1990s - a global perspective. Proc. IWRB Symp., St Petersburg Beach, Florida, USA. IWRB Special Publication No. 26, Slimbridge, UK., pp. 48-55.
- LAMBSHEAD, P.J.D., H.M. PLATT & K.M. SHAW, 1983. The detection of differences among assemblages of marine benthic species based on an assessment of dominance and diversity. *J. Nat. Hist.* 17: 859-874.

- LEBRET, T., 1979. Biesbosch-birds. Kosmos, Amsterdam-Antwerpen. (in Dutch).
- LEGENDRE, P. & L. LEGENDRE, 1998. Numerical ecology. Elsevier Press, The Netherlands.
- LEGENDRE, P., S.F. THRUSH, V.J. CUMMINGS, P.K. DAYTON, J. GRANT, J.E. HEWITT, A.H. HINES, B.H. MCARDLE, D. PRIDMORE, D.C. SCHNEIDER, S.J. TURNER, R.B. WHITLACH & M.R. WILKINSON, 1997. Spatial structure of bivalves in a sandflat: scale and generating processes. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 216: 99-128.
- LELOUP, E. & B. KONIETZKO, 1956. Recherches biologiques sur les eaux saumâtres des Bas-Escaut. *Verhandelingen van het Koninklijk Belgisch Instituut voor Natuurwetenschappen* 132, 100 pp.
- LENIHAN, J.M., 1993. Ecological response surfaces for North American boreal tree species and their use in forest classification. *J. Veg. Sci.* 4: 667-680.
- LEVIN, S.A., 1992. The problem of pattern and scale in ecology. *Ecolgy* 73: 1943-1967.
- LIEVENSE, P., 1994. Waterbewegingsmodel SCALDIS400. Rijkswaterstaat, directie Zeeland, rapport AX 94.072.
- LUCAS, C.H. & P.M. HOLLIGAN, 1999. Nature and ecological implications of algal pigments diversity on the Molenplaat tidal flat (Westerschelde estuary). *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 180: 51-64.
- LUCKENBACK, M.W., 1986. Sediment stability around animal tubes: the roles of hydrodynamic processes and biotic activity. *Limnol. Oceanogr.* 31: 779-787.
- LUDIHKUIZE, D., 1989. Scheldt River basin study. ICWS-report 89.09, International Centre of Water Studies (ICWS), Amsterdam.
- MACINTYRE, H.L. & J.J. CULLEN, 1996. Primary production by suspended and benthic microalgae in a turbid estuary: time scales of variability in San Antonio bay, Texas. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 122: 245-268.
- MAES, J., P.A. VAN DAMME, A. TAILLIEU & F. OLLEVIER, 1998A. Fish communities along an oxygen-poor salinity gradient (Zeeschelde estuary, Belgium). *J. Fish Biol.* 52:534-546.
- MAES, J., A. TAILLIEU, P. A. VAN DAMME, K. COTTENIE & F. OLLEVIER, 1998B. Seasonal patterns in the fish and crustacean community of a turbid temperate estuary (Zeeschelde estuary, Belgium). *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.* 47:143-151.
- MANNINO, A. & P.A. MONTAGNA, 1997. Small-scale spatial variation in macrobenthic community structure. *Estuaries* 20: 159-173.
- MANTOURA, R.F.C. & C.A. LLEWELLYN, 1983. The rapid determination of algal chlorophyll and carotenoid pigments and their breakdown products in natural water by reverse phase high performance liquid chromatography. *Anal. Chim. Acta* 151: 297-314.
- MATTHEWS, G.V.T., 1993. The Ramsar Convention on Wetlands: its history and development. Ramsar Convention Bureau, Gland, Switzerland.
- MARCHAND, J. & D. GASCUEL, 1988. Seasonal dynamics of the zoobenthic communities in the mesohaline zone of the Loire estuary (France). *Hydrobiologia* 160:129-139.
- MCARDLE, B.H., J.E. HEWITT & S.F. THRUSH, 1997. Pattern and process: it is not as easy as it looks. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 216: 229-242.
- MCCULLAGH, P. & J.A. NELDER, 1989. Generalized linear models, 2nd ed. Chapman and Hall, London.
- MCLUSKY, D.S., 1987. Intertidal habitats and benthic macrofauna of the Forth estuary, Scotland. *P. Roy. Soc. Edinb. B* 93: 389-400.
- MCLUSKY, D.S., 1989. The estuarine ecosystem. Blackie & Son, Glasgow and London, Chapman & Hall, New York, 150 pp.
- MCLUSKY, D.S., 1993. Marine and estuarine gradients - an overview. *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27: 489-493.
- MCLUSKY, D.S., 1999. Estuarine benthic ecology: A European perspective. *Aust. J. Ecol.* 24: 302-311.
- MCLUSKY, D.S., M. TEARE & P. PHIZACKLEA, 1980. Effects of domestic and industrial pollution on distribution and abundance of aquatic oligochaetes in the Forth estuary. *Helgoländer Meeresunters* 33: 384-392.
- MCLUSKY, D.S., S.C. HULL & M. ELLIOT, 1993. Variations in the intertidal and subtidal macrofauna and sediments along a salinity gradient in the upper Forth estuary. *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27 (2-4): 101-109.
- MEADOWS, P.S. & J. TAIT, 1989. Modification of sediment permeability and shear strength by two burrowing invertebrates. *Mar. Biol.* 101: 75-82.
- MEADOWS, P.S., J. TAIT & S.A. HUSSAIN, 1990. Effects of estuarine infauna on sediment stability and particle sedimentation. *Hydrobiologia* 190: 263-266.
- MEES, J., A. DEWICKE & O. HAMERLYNCK, 1993. Seasonal composition and spatial distribution of the hyperbenthic communities along the estuarine gradients in the Westerschelde. *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27: 359-376.
- MEES, J., N. FOCKEY & O. HAMERLYNCK, 1995. Comparative study of the hyperbenthos of three European estuaries. *Hydrobiologia* 311: 153-174.
- MEININGER, P.L. & H. SNOEK, 1992. Non-breeding Shelduck in the SW-Netherlands: effects of habitat changes on distribution, numbers, moulting sites and food. *Wildfowl* 43: 139-151.
- MEININGER, P.L., H. SCHEKKERMAN & M.D.W. VAN ROOMEN, 1995. Population estimates and 1%-levels for waterbird species occurring in The Netherlands: suggestions for standardization. *Limosa* 68: 41-48. (in Dutch with English summary).
- MEININGER, P.L., C.R. BERREVOETS & R.C.W. STRUCKER, 1997. Waterbirds in the salt waters of the Delta area, south-west Netherlands, 1995/96. Rijksinstituut voor Kust en Zee, RIKZ-97.001, Middelburg, Nederland. (in Dutch with English summary).
- MEININGER, P.L., C.M. BERREVOETS & R.C.W. STRUCKER, 1998. Waterbirds in the salt waters of the Delta area, south-west Netherlands, 1996/97. Rijksinstituut voor Kust en



- Zee (RIKZ), RIKZ-98.001, Middelburg, Nederland. (in Dutch with English summary).
- MEIRE, P.M., 1987. Foraging behavior of some wintering waders: prey-selection and habitat distribution. In: A.C. KAMIL, J.R. KREBS & H.R. PULLIAM, Eds., *Foraging behavior*. Plenum Press, New York, p. 215-237.
- MEIRE, P.M. & E. KUIJKEN, 1984. Relations between the distribution of waders and the intertidal benthic fauna of the Oosterschelde, Netherlands. In: P.R. EVANS, J.D. GOSS-CUSTARD & W.G. HALE, Eds., *Coastal waders and wildfowl in winter*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, p. 57-68.
- MEIRE, P.M. & J. COOSEN, 1985. Benthos and bird communities in a changing estuary. Proceedings of 'Progress in Belgian oceanographic research', University of Antwerp (UIA), Antwerpen-Wilrijk, p. 292-303.
- MEIRE, P.M. & A. ERVYNCK, 1986. Are oystercatchers (*Haematopus ostralegus*) selecting the most profitable mussels (*Mytilus edulis*)? *Anim. Behav.* 34: 1427-1435.
- MEIRE, P.M. & J. DEREU, 1990. Use of the Abundance/Biomass Comparison method for detecting environmental stress: some considerations based on intertidal macrozoobenthos and bird communities. *J. Appl. Ecol.* 27: 210-223.
- MEIRE, P. & M. VINCX, 1993. Marine and estuarine gradients. Proceedings of the 21th Symposium of the Estuarine and Coastal Science Association. *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27, 496 pp.
- MEIRE, P., M. STARINK & M. HOFFMANN, 1997. Integratie van ecologie en waterbouwkunde in de Zeeschelde: aanleiding tot en situering van het Onderzoek Milieueffekten Sigmaplan (OMES). *Water* 95: 147-165.
- MEIRE, P., P.M.J. HERMAN & L.P.A. SANTBERGEN, 1998. Ecologische structuren binnen het Schelde stroomgebied: een essentiële voorwaarde voor het ecologisch herstel en de veerkracht van het systeem. *Water* 102: 315-322.
- MEIRE, P.M., J.J. SEYS, T.J. YSEBAERT & J. COOSEN, 1991. A comparison of the macrobenthic distribution and community structure between two estuaries in SW Netherlands. In: M. ELLIOT and J.-P. DUCROTOY, Eds., *Estuaries and Coasts: Spatial and Temporal Intercomparisons*. Olsen & Olsen, Fredensborg, Denmark, p. 221-230.
- MEIRE, P.M., J. SEYS, J. BUIJS & J. COOSEN, 1994. Spatial and temporal patterns of intertidal macrobenthic populations in the Oosterschelde: are they influenced by the construction of the storm-surge barrier? *Hydrobiologia* 282/283, 157-182.
- MEIRE, P.M., J. SEYS, T. YSEBAERT, P.L. MEININGER & H.J.M. BAPTIST, 1989. A changing Delta: effects of large coastal engineering works on feeding ecological relationships as illustrated by waterbirds. In: HOOGHART, J.C. & C.W.S. POSTHUMUS, Eds., *Hydro-ecological relations in the Delta waters of the SW Netherlands*. TNO Committee on Hydrological Research Proc. and Informations No. 41, pp 109-145.
- MEIRE, P., G. ROSSAERT, N. DE REGGE, T. YSEBAERT & E. KUIJKEN, 1992. The Schelde estuary: An ecological description and a vision for the future. Report Institute of Nature Conservation, A. 92.57, 150 pp. (in Dutch).
- MELTOFFE, H., J. BLEW, J. FRIKKE, H.-U. RÖSNER & C.J. SMIT, 1994. Numbers and distribution of waterbirds in the Wadden Sea. Results and evaluation of 36 simultaneous counts in the Dutch-German-Danish Wadden Sea 1980-1991. IWRB Publication 34 / Wader Study Group Bulletin 74, Special issue.
- MERNE, O., 1985. The infauna of the Shannon/Fergus estuarine mudflats as a food resource for shorebirds. M. Sc. Thesis, Trinity College, Dublin.
- MICHAELIS, H., 1983. Intertidal benthic animal communities of the estuaries of the rivers Ems and Weser. In: W.J. WOLFF, Ed., *Ecology of the Wadden Sea, Volume I*. Balkema, Rotterdam, p. 4/158-4/188.
- MICHAELIS, H., H. FOCK, M. GROTHJAHN & D. POST, 1992. The status of intertidal zoobenthic brackish-water species in estuaries of the German Bight. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 30: 201-207.
- MILLER, D.C., M.J. BOCK & E.J. TURNER, 1992. Deposit and suspension feeding in oscillatory flows and sediment fluxes. *J. Mar. Res.* 50: 459-520.
- MITCHENER, H.J., R.J.S. WHITEHOUSE, R.L. SOULSBY & V.A. LAWFORD, 1996. Estuarine Morphodynamics - Instrument Development for Mud Erosion Measurements. Development and testing of SedErode - Sediment Erosion Device. HR Report No. TR 16, HR Wallingford, Oxon, UK, October 1996.
- MOERLAND, G., 1987. Het Schelde-estuarium: een literatuurstudie naar het ecosysteem met het accent op de biotische componenten. Westerschelde-studierapport 9(2): 74 pp.
- MÖLLER, P. & R. ROSENBERG, 1982. Production and abundance of the amphipod *Corophium volutator* on the west coast of Sweden. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 16: 127-140.
- MÖLLER, P. & R. ROSENBERG, 1983. Recruitment, abundance and production of *Mya arenaria* and *Cardium edule* in marine, shallow waters, western Sweden. *Ophelia* 22: 33-55.
- MOREIRA, F., 1995. The winter feeding ecology of *Avocets Recurvirostra avosetta* on intertidal areas. II. Diet and feeding mechanisms. *Ibis* 137: 99-108.
- MORRIS, D.W., 1987. Ecological scale and habitat use. *Ecology* 68: 362-369.
- MORRISSEY, D.J., 1988. Differences in effects of grazing by deposit-feeders *Hydrobia ulvae* (Pennant) (Gastropoda: Prosobranchia) and *Corophium arenarium* Crawford (Amphipoda) on sediment microalgal populations. II. Quantitative effects. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 118: 43-53.
- MOSER, M., R.C. PRENTICE & J. VAN VESSEM, 1993. Waterfowl and wetland conservation in the 1990s - A global per-



- spective. IWRB Special Publ. No. 26, Slimbridge, UK, 263 pp.
- MOSTERT, K., L.A. ADRIAANSE, P.L. MEININGER & P.M. MEIRE, 1990. Vogelconcentraties en vogelbewegingen in Zeeland. Rijkswaterstaat, Directie Zeeland, Dienst Getijdewateren, Rijksuniversiteit Gent. Middelburg/Gent. (in Dutch).
- MOURITSEN, K.N., L.T. MOURITSEN & K.T. JENSEN, 1998. Change of topography and sediment characteristics on an intertidal mudflat following mass-mortality of the amphipod *Corophium volutator*. J. Mar. Biol. Assoc. UK 78: 1167-1180.
- MURDOCH, M.H., F. BARLOCHER & M.L. LALTOO, 1986. Population dynamics and nutrition of *Corophium volutator* (Pallas) in the Cumberland Basin (Bay of Fundy). J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol. 103: 235-249.
- NELDER, J.A. & R.W.M. WEDDERBURN, 1972. Generalized linear models. J. R. Statist. Soc. A 135: 370-384.
- NICOLAISEN, W. & E. KANNEWORFF, 1969. On the burrowing and feeding habits of the amphipods *Bathyporeia pilosa* Lindström and *Bathyporeia sarsi* Watkin. Ophelia 6: 231-250.
- NIELSEN, M.V. & L.H. KOFOED, 1982. Selective feeding and epipsammic browsing by the deposit-feeding amphipod *Corophium volutator*. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 10: 81-88.
- NIENHUIS, P.H. & A.C. SMAAL, 1994. The Oosterschelde estuary (The Netherlands): a case-study of a changing ecosystem. Hydrobiologia 282/283, 1-597.
- NILLSON, L., A. FOLLESTAD, K. KOFFIJBERG, E. KUIJKEN, J. MADSEN, J. MOOIJ, J.B. MOURONVAL, H. PERSSON, V. SCHRICKE & B. VOSLAMBER, 1999. Greylag Goose: *Anser anser*. Northwest Europe. In: MADSEN, J., G. CRACKNELL & A.D. FOX, Eds., Goose populations of the Western Palearctic. A review of status and distribution. Wetlands International Publ. No. 48, Wetlands International, Wageningen, The Netherlands. National Environmental Research Institute, Rønde, Denmark, pp 182-201.
- NORSE, E.A., 1994. Global marine biological diversity. Island Press, Washington, 383 pp.
- NOWELL, A.R.M. & P.A. JUMARS, 1984. Flow environments of aquatic benthos. Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst. 15: 303-328.
- ODUM, E.P., 1983. Basic ecology. Saunders College Publishing, Philadelphia, 613 pp.
- ODUM, W.E., 1988. Comparative ecology of tidal freshwater and salt marshes. Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst. 19: 147-176.
- ODUM, W.E., L.P. ROZAS & C.C. MCIVOR, 1988. A comparison of fish and invertebrate community composition in tidal freshwater and oligohaline marsh systems. In: D.D. HOOK, Ed., The ecology and management of wetlands, Volume 1: Ecology of wetlands. Croom Helm, London, Sydney, p. 561-569.
- OENEMA, O., R. STENEKER & J. REYNDERS, 1988. The soil environment of the intertidal area in the Westerschelde. Hydrobiol. Bull. 22: 21-30.
- OLAFSSON, E.B., 1986. Density dependence in suspension-feeding and deposit-feeding populations of the bivalve *Macoma balthica*: a field experiment. J. Anim. Ecol. 55: 517-526.
- OLAFSSON, E.B., C.H. PETERSON & W.B. AMBROSE, 1994. Does recruitment limitation structure populations and communities of macroinvertebrates in marine soft sediment: the relative significance of pre- and post-settlement processes. Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev. 32: 65-109.
- OSBORNE, P.E. & B.J. TIGAR, 1992. Interpreting bird atlas data using logistic models: an example from Lesotho, Southern Africa. J. Appl. Ecol. 29: 55-62.
- O'SULLIVAN, G., 1980. An ecological study of the intertidal fauna of Aghinish Island, Shannon Co. Limerick. Report Dept. of Zoology, University College Dublin.
- PATERSON, D.M., 1997. Microbiological factors contributing to the erosion resistance in natural cohesive sediments. In: BURT, N., R. PARKER & J. WATTS, Eds., Cohesive Sediments. pp. 215-229.
- PATERSON, D.M. & K.S. BLACK, 1999. Water Flow, Sediment Dynamics and Benthic Biology. Adv. Ecol. Res. 29: 155-193.
- PATERSON, D.M., K.H. WILTSHIRE, A. MILES, J. BLACKBURN, I. DAVIDSON, M.G. YATES, S. MCGRORTY & J.A. EASTWOOD, 1998. Microbiological mediation of spectral reflectance from intertidal cohesive sediments. Limnol. Oceanogr. 43: 1207-1221.
- PEARSON, T.H. & R. ROSENBERG, 1978. Macrobenthic succession in relation to organic enrichment and pollution of the marine environment. Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev. 16: 229-311.
- PEARSON, T.H. & R. ROSENBERG, 1987. Feast and famine: structuring factors in marine benthic communities. In: GEE, J.H.R. & P.S. GILLER, Eds., Organization of Communities: Past and Present. Blackwell Science, Oxford, pp. 373-395.
- PEER, D.L., L.E. LINKLETTER & P.W. HICKLIN, 1986. Life history and reproductive biology of *Corophium volutator* (Crustacea: Amphipoda) and the influence of shorebird predation on population structure in Chignecto Bay, Bay of Fundy, Canada. Neth. J. Sea Res. 20: 359-373.
- PERENNOU, C., T. MUNDKUR, D.A. SCOTT, A. FOLLESTAD & L. KVENILD, 1994. The Asian Waterfowl Census 1987-91: Distribution and status of Asian Waterfowl. AWB Publication No.86. IWRB Publication No.24. AWB, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia and IWRB, Slimbridge, UK. 372 pp.
- PERRINGS, C., C. FOLKE & K.-G. MÄLER, 1992. The ecology and economics of biodiversity loss: the research agenda. Ambio 21: 28-33.
- PETERSON, C.H., 1979. Predation, competitive exclusion, and diversity in soft sediment benthic communities of estuaries and lagoons. In: R.J. LIVINGSTON, Ed., Ecological Processes in coastal and marine systems. Plenum Press, New York, pp. 233-264.
- PETERSON, C.H., 1991. Intertidal zonation of marine invertebrates in sand and mud. Am. Nat. 79: 236-249.



- PHILIPPART, C.J.M., 1994. Interactions between *Arenicola marina* and *Zostera noltii* on a tidal flat in the Wadden Sea. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 111: 251-257.
- PIELOU, E.C., 1966. The measurement of diversity in different types of biological collections. *J. Theor. Biol.* 13: 131-144.
- PIENKOWSKI, M.W. & P.R. EVANS, 1984. Migratory behavior of shorebirds in the western Palearctic. In: BURGER, J. & B.L. OLLA, Eds., *Behaviour of marine animals*, vol. 6: *Shorebirds: Migration and foraging behaviour*. Plenum Press, New York, p. 73-123.
- PIERSMA, T., 1987. Hop, skip or jump? Constraints on migration of arctic waders by feeding, fattening and flight speed (In Dutch with English summary). *Limosa* 60: 185-191.
- PIERSMA, T., 1994. Close to the edge: energetic bottlenecks and the evolution of migratory pathways in Knots. PhD thesis. Uitgeverij Het Open Boek, Den Burg, Texel, The Netherlands.
- PIERSMA, T., R. HOEKSTRA, A. DEKINGA, A. KOOLHAAS, P. WOLF, P. BATTLE & P. WIERSMA, 1993. Scale and intensity of intertidal habitat use by knots *Calidris canutus* in the western Wadden Sea in relation to food, friends and foes. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 31: 331-337.
- PIETERS, T., C. STORM, T. WALHOUT & T. YSEBAERT, 1991. The Scheldt estuary, more than a navigation channel. Ministry of Transport and Public works, Tidal Waters Division and Directorate Zeeland. Middelburg, the Netherlands. Nota GWW-91.081 (in Dutch with English summary).
- PRATER, A.J., 1981. Estuary birds of Britain and Ireland. T. Calton & A. Poyser, Calton.
- PRENDERGAST, J.R., R.M. QUINN, J.H. LAWTON, B.C. EVERS HAM & D.W. GIBBONS, 1993. Rare species, the coincidence of diversity hotspots and conservation strategies. *Nature* 365: 335-337.
- PRITCHARD, D., 1967. Observations of circulation in coastal plain estuaries. In: LAUFF, G. Ed., *Estuaries*. American Association for the Advancement of Science. Publ. No. 83, Washington, D.C., pp. 37-44.
- RAKOCINSKI, C.F., S.S. BROWN, G.R. GASTON, R.W. HEARD, W.W. WALKER & J.K. SUMMERS, 1997. Macrobenthic responses to natural and contaminant-related gradients in Northern Gulf of Mexico estuaries. *Ecol. Appl.* 7: 1278-1298.
- REISE, K., 1985. Tidal flat ecology; an experimental approach to species interactions. Springer Verlag, Berlin, 191 p.
- REMANE, A., 1958. Ökologie des Brackwassers. In: A. REMANE & C. SCHLIEPER, Eds., *Die Biologie des Brackwassers*. Die Binnengewässer 22: 1-216.
- REMANE, A., 1969. Wie erkennt man eine genuine Brackwasserart? *Limnologica* 7: 9-21.
- REMANE, A., 1971. Ecology of brackish water. *Die Binnengewässer* 25: 1-210.
- REMANE, A. & C. SCHLIEPER, 1958. *Die Biologie des Brackwassers*. E. Schweizerbart'sche Verlagsbuchhandlung, Stuttgart, 348 pp.
- REMANE, A. & C. SCHLIEPER, 1971. *Biology of Brackish Water*. J. Wiley and Sons, New York.
- RHOADS, D.C., 1974. Organism-sediment relations on the muddy sea floor. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 12: 263-300.
- RHOADS, D.C. & D.K. YOUNG, 1970. The influence of deposit-feeding organisms on sediment stability and community trophic structure. *J. Mar. Res.* 28: 150-178.
- RHOADS, D.C., P.L. MCCALL & J.Y. YINGST, 1978. Disturbance and production on the estuarine seafloor. *Am. Sci.* 66: 577-586.
- RHODE, B., 1982. Die Bodenfauna der Watten in der Emsmündung von Papenburg bis Emden. *Jber. 1980, Forsch.-Stelle f. Insel- u. Küstenschutz Bd 32, Norderney*, 32: 99-117.
- RIEDEL-LORJE, J., U. KOHLA & B. VAESSEN, 1995. Das Vordringen ausgewählter Bodentiere im Elbe-Ästuar als Indikation für eine Verlagerung der oberen Brackwassergrenze. *Deutsche Gewässerkundliche Mitteilungen* 39: 137-145.
- ROBINEAU, B., 1987. Caractérisation des peuplements macrozoobenthiques de l'estuaire de la Loire. *Vie Milieu* 37: 67-76.
- ROBINEAU, B. & J. MARCHAND, 1984. Distribution des communautés macrozoobenthiques des substrats meubles de l'estuaire interne de la Loire (France). *J. Rech. Océanogr.* 9: 146-149.
- ROFRITZ, D.J., 1977. Oligochaetes as a winter food source for the Old Squaw. *J. Wildlife Manage.* 41: 590-591.
- ROSE, P.M. & D.A. SCOTT, 1997. Waterfowl population estimates. Wetlands International Publication 44, Wageningen.
- SAEIJ, H.L.F., 1977. De Westerschelde: Een milieu in beweging. De natuurwetenschappelijke waarde van de Westerschelde en de bedreigingen daarvan. Rijkswaterstaat, Middelburg, The Netherlands.
- SAMEOTO, D.D., 1969. Comparative ecology, life histories, and behavior of intertidal sand-burrowing amphipods (Crustacea: Haustoriidae) at Cape Cod. *J. Fish. Res. Bd. Canada* 26, 361-388.
- SANDERS, H.L., P.C.J. MANGELSDORF & G.R. HAMPSON, 1965. Salinity and faunal distribution in the Pocasset River, Massachusetts. *Limnol. Oceanogr. (Suppl.)* 10: 216-229.
- SCHAFFNER, L.C., R.J. DIAZ, C.R. OLSEN & I.L. LARSEN, 1987. Faunal characteristics and sediment accumulation processes in the James River Estuary, Virginia. *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.* 25: 211-226.
- SCHIEKERMANN, H., P.L. MEININGER & P.M. MEIRE, 1994. Changes in the waterbird populations of the Oosterschelde (SW Netherlands) as a result of large-scale coastal engineering works. *Hydrobiologia* 282/283: 509-524.
- SCHLACHER, T.A. & T.H. WOOLDRIDGE, 1996. Axial zonation patterns of subtidal macrozoobenthos in the Gantoots Estuary, South Africa. *Estuaries* 19: 680-696.



- SCHNEIDER, D., 1994. Quantitative Ecology: Spatial and Temporal Scaling. Academic Press, New York.
- SCHUCHARDT, B., U. HAESLOOP & M. SCHIRMER, 1993. The tidal freshwater reach of the Weser estuary: riverine or estuarine? *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27: 215-226.
- SCOTT, D.A. & P.M. ROSE, 1996. Atlas of Anatidae Populations in Africa and Western Eurasia. Wetlands International Publication No. 41, Wetlands International, Wageningen, The Netherlands.
- SHACKLEY, S.E., 1981. The intertidal soft sediments and their macrofauna in the Greater Swansea Bay Area (Worm's Head to Nash Point), South Wales. *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.* 12: 535-548.
- SHILLABEER, N. & J.F. TAPP, 1989. Improvements in the benthic fauna of the Tees estuary after a period of reduced pollution loadings. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.* 20: 119-123.
- SEYS, J., M. VINCX & P. MEIRE, 1999A. Macrobenthos of the Zeeschelde, with special reference to the distribution and role of Oligochaeta. Report Institute of Nature Conservation 99.4 (in Dutch).
- SEYS, J., M. VINCX & P. MEIRE, 1999B. Spatial distribution of Oligochaeta (Clitellata) in the tidal freshwater and brackish parts of the Schelde estuary (Belgium). *Hydrobiologia* 406: 119-132.
- SIMPSON, K.W., J.P. FAGNANI, R.W. BODE, D.M. DENICOLA & L.E. ABELE, 1986. Organism-substrate relationships in the main channel of the Lower Hudson River. *J.N. Am. Benthol. Soc.* 5: 41-57.
- SMAAL, A.C. & P.H. NIENHUIS, 1992. The eastern Scheldt (The Netherlands), from an estuary to a tidal bay: a review of responses at the ecosystem level. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 30: 161-173.
- SMAAL, A.C., M. KNOESTER, P.H. NIENHUIS & P.M. MEIRE, 1991. Changes in the Oosterschelde ecosystem induced by the Delta works. In: M. ELLIOTT & J.-P. DUCROTOY, Eds., *Estuaries and coasts: Spatial and temporal intercomparisons*. Olsen & Olsen, Fredensborg, Denmark, p. 375-384.
- SMIT, C.J. & T. PIERSMA, 1989. Numbers, midwinter distribution, and migration of wader populations using the East Atlantic Flyway. In: BOYD, H. & J.-Y. PIROT, Eds., *Flyways and reserve networks for water birds*. IWRB Special Publication No. 9, Slimbridge, England, p. 24-63.
- SMIT, C.J., R.H.D. LAMBECK & W.J. WOLFF, 1987. Threats to coastal wintering and staging areas of waders. In: DAVIDSON, N.C. & M.W. PIENKOWSKI, Eds., *The conservation of international flyway populations of waders*. Wader Study Group Bulletin 49, Suppl.: 105-113.
- SMIT, H., R. KOP & S. WESTMACOTT, 1997A. Strategies to combine the functions of ecology and navigation in the Scheldt estuary. *J. CIWEM* 11: 251-256.
- SMIT, H., R. SMITS, G. VAN DER VELDE & H. COOPS, 1997B. Ecosystem responses in the Rhine-Meuse Delta during two decades after enclosure and steps toward estuary restoration. *Estuaries* 20: 504-520.
- SMITH, D.J. & G.J.C. UNDERWOOD, 1998. Exopolymer production by intertidal epipellic diatoms. *Limnol. Oceanogr.* 43: 1578-1591.
- SNELGROVE, P.V.R. & C.A. BUTMAN, 1994. Animal-sediment relationships revisited: cause versus effect. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.* 32: 111-177.
- SOETAERT, K. & P.M.J. HERMAN, 1995A. Carbon flows in the Westerschelde estuary (The Netherlands) evaluated by means of an ecosystem model (MOSES). *Hydrobiologia* 311: 247-266.
- SOETAERT, K. & P.M.J. HERMAN, 1995B. Estimating estuarine residence times in the Westerschelde (The Netherlands) using a box model with fixed dispersion coefficients. *Hydrobiologia* 311: 215-224.
- SOKAL, R.R. & F.J. ROHLF, 1981. *Biometry*. Freeman, San Francisco, CA.
- SORENSEN, T., 1948. A method of establishing groups of equal amplitude in a plant society based on similarity of species content. *K. Danske. Vidensk. Selsk.* 5: 1-35.
- SRINETR, V., 1997. Metal bioavailability to macrobenthic species of the Western Scheldt: adverse effect, source and exposure. PhD thesis, University of Brussel, Brussel.
- STEUWER, J. & M. KÖRITZ, 1986. *Das Makrobenthos des Wattes Rysumer Nacken*. Dipl.-Arb., Universität Oldenburg, 80 pp.
- STRUCKER, R.C.W., L.C. PREESMAN & J. VERKERK, 1994. *Watervogels van de zoetwatergetijderiver de Oude Maas*. *Limosa* 67: 45-52. (in Dutch with English Summary).
- SUCHANEK, T.H., 1994. Temperate coastal marine communities: biodiversity and threats. *Am. Zool.* 34: 100-114.
- SWAN, J.M.A., 1970. An examination of some ordination problems by use of simulated vegetation data. *Ecology* 51: 89-102.
- TAGHON, G.L. & R.R. GREENE, 1992. Utilization of deposited and suspended particulate matter by benthic interface feeders. *Limnol. Oceanogr.* 37: 1370-1391.
- TER BRAAK, C.J.F., 1988. Partial canonical correspondence analysis. In: BOCK H.H., Ed., *Classification and related methods of data analysis*. North-Holland, Amsterdam, pp. 551-558.
- TER BRAAK, C.J.F., 1994. Canonical community ordination. Part I. Basic theory and linear methods. *Ecoscience* 1: 127-140.
- TER BRAAK, C.J.F. & C.W.N. LOOMAN, 1986. Weighted averaging, logistic regression and the Gaussian response model. *Vegetatio* 65: 3-11.
- TER BRAAK, C.J.F. & P.F.M. VERDONSCHOT, 1995. Canonical correspondence analysis and related multivariate methods in aquatic ecology. *Aquat. Sci.* 57: 255-289.
- TER BRAAK, C.J.F. & P. SMILAUER, 1998. *CANOCO Reference Manual and User's Guide to Canoco for Windows: Software for Canonical Community Ordination (version 4)*. Microcomputer Power, Ithaca, New York, 352 pp.



- THOMPSON, D.B.A., 1982. The abundance and distribution of intertidal invertebrates and an estimation of their selection by Shelduck. *Wildfowl* 33: 151-158.
- THRUSH, S.F., 1991. Spatial patterns in soft-bottom communities. *Trends. Ecol. Evol.* 6: 75-79.
- THRUSH, S.F., S.M. LAWRIE, J.E. HEWITT & V.J. CUMMINGS, 1999. The problem of scale: uncertainties and implications for soft-bottom marine communities and the assessment of human impacts. In: GRAY, J.S. et al., Eds., *Biogeochemical Cycling and Sediment Ecology*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, The Netherlands, p 195-210.
- THRUSH, S.F., V.J. CUMMINGS, P.K. DAYTON, R. FORD, J. GRANT, J.E. HEWITT, A.H. HINES, S.M. LAWRIE, R.D. PRIDMORE, P. LEGENDRE, B.H. MCARDLE, D.C. SCHNEIDER, S.J. TURNER, R.B. WHITLATCH & M.R. WILKINSON, 1997. Matching the outcome of small-scale density manipulation experiments with larger scale patterns: an example of bivalve adult/juvenile interactions. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.* 216: 153-169.
- TREXLER, J.C. & J. TRAVIS, 1993. Nontraditional regression analyses. *Ecology* 74: 1629-1637.
- UNDERHILL, L.G. & R.P. PRYS-JONES, 1994. Index numbers for waterbird populations. I. Review and methodology. *J. Appl. Ecol.* 31: 463-480.
- UNDERWOOD, G.J.C. & D.M. PATERSON, 1993. Seasonal changes in diatom biomass, sediment stability and biogenic stabilization in the Severn Estuary. *J. Mar. Biol. Assoc. UK* 73: 871-887.
- UNDERWOOD, G.J.C., D.M. PATERSON & R.J. PARKES, 1995. The measurement of microbial carbohydrate exopolymers from intertidal sediments. *Limnol. Oceanogr.* 40: 1243-1253.
- VAN DAMME, S., T. YSEBAERT, E. VAN DEN BERGH & P. MEIRE, 1999. Habitatstructuren, waterkwaliteit, en leefgemeenschappen in het Schelde-estuarium. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 99.24, Brussel.
- VAN DAMME, S., P. MEIRE, H. MAECKELBERGHE, M. VERDIEVEL, L. BOURGOING, E. TAVERNIERS, T. YSEBAERT & G. WATTEL, 1995. De waterkwaliteit van de Zeeschelde: evolutie in de voorbije dertig jaar. *Water* 85: 244-256.
- VAN DAMME, S., T. YSEBAERT, P. MEIRE, P. HERMAN, M. STARINK, L. HELLINGS, M. TACKX & O. VAN CLEEMPUT, *subm.* Nutrients and trophical levels in the highly polluted Scheldt estuary at a starting point of recovery (Belgium and The Netherlands): A synthesis. *Estuaries*, *subm.*
- VAN DEN BERGH, E., P. MEIRE, M. HOFFMANN & T. YSEBAERT, 1999. Natuurherstelplan Zeeschelde. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 99.19, Brussel.
- VAN DE RIJT, C.W.C.J., L. HAZELHOFF & C.W.P.M. BLOM, 1996. Vegetation zonation in a former tidal area: a vegetation-type response model based on DCA and logistic regression using GIS. *J. Veg. Sci.* 7: 505-518.
- VAN DER MEER, J., A. VAN DEN DOOL, A. ENGELBERTS, D.J. DE JONG, R.H.D. LAMBECK & J.M. POLDERMAN, 1989. Het macrozoobenthos van enkele intergetijdengebieden in de Oosterschelde. Resultaten van een inventarisatie in de nazomer van 1985. DGW-DIHO Rapport GWA0-89.307: 6 pp.
- VAN DER MEULEN, A., & M. SILEON, 1997. Overzicht van modellen in gebruik bij het RIKZ en het RIZA. Rijkswaterstaat, Rapport RIKZ-97.008, 109 pp.
- VAN ECK, G.T.M. & N.M. DE ROOIJ, 1993. Potential chemical time bombs in the Schelde estuary. *Land Degrad. Rehabil.* 4: 317-332.
- VAN ECK, G.T.M., N. DE PAUW, M. VAN DEN LANGENBERGH & G. VERREET, 1991. Emissions, concentrations, behaviour and effects of (micro)contamination in the Schelde and Schelde estuary. *Water* 60: 164-181 (in Dutch).
- VAN ECK, G.T.M., F.L.G. DE BRUIJCKERE, E. DE MEYER & H. MAECKELBERGHE, 1998. Naar een Schone Schelde. *Water* 102: 293-303.
- VAN MEEL, L., 1958. Etudes hydrobiologiques des eaux saumâtres de Belgique. L'Escaut à Liefkenshoek (Doel). *Bull. K. Belg. Inst. Nat. Wet.* 34: 1-60.
- VAN ZOEST, R. & G.T.M. VAN ECK, 1990. Behaviour of particulate polychlorinated biphenyls and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in the Scheldt Estuary. *Neth. J. Sea Res.* 26: 89-96.
- VAN ZOEST, R. & G.T.M. VAN ECK, 1993. Behaviour of selected PCBs, PAHs and t-HCH in the Scheldt estuary, S.W. Netherlands. *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27: 301-308.
- VERMEULEN, Y.M. & J.C.R. GOVAERE, 1983. Distribution of benthic macrofauna in the Western Scheldt estuary (The Netherlands). *Cah. Biol. Mar.* 24: 297-308.
- VENIER, L.A., D.W. MCKENNEY, Y. WANG & J. MCKEE, 1999. Models of large-scale breeding-bird distribution as a function of macro-climate in Ontario, Canada. *J. Biogeogr.* 26: 315-328.
- VISSE, W., K. ESSINK & D. BEGEMAN, 1987. Inventarisatie of the benthic fauna of the Dollard, June-July 1985. Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren, GWA0-87.155, 37pp. (in Dutch).
- VROON, J., C. STORM & J. COOSEN, 1997. Westerschelde, stram of stuifs? Eindrapport van het Project Oostwest, een studie naar de beïnvloeding van fysische en verwante biologische patronen in een estuarium. Ministerie van Verkeer en Waterstaat, Directoraat-Generaal Rijkswaterstaat, Rijkinstituut voor Kust en Zee (RIKZ). Rapport RIKZ 97.023, Middelburg, The Netherlands.
- WARNES, J.M., 1981. The impact of overwintering birds on the production ecology of estuarine benthic invertebrates. Phd. Thesis, University of Stirling, Scotland, 177 pp.
- WARTEL, S., M. SHAN CHEN & P. SCHOTTE, 1998. Sea Scheldt, Tidal dock West: Gamma densimetric, granulometric and radio-isotope study. Report Royal Belgian Institute of Natural Sciences, 36pp (in Dutch).
- WARWICK, R.M., 1984. The benthic ecology of the Bristol Channel. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.* 15: 70-76.
- WARWICK, R.M., 1986. A new method for detecting pollu-



- tion effects on marine macrobenthic communities. *Mar. Biol.* 92: 557-562.
- WARWICK, R.M. & R.J. UNCLES, 1980. Distribution of benthic macrofauna associations in the Bristol Channel in relation to tidal stress. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 3: 97-103.
- WARWICK, R.M. & K.R. CLARK, 1993. Comparing the severity of disturbance: a meta-analysis of marine macrobenthic community data. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 92: 221-231.
- WARWICK, R.M., T.H. PEARSON & RUSWAHYUNI, 1987. Detection of pollution effects on marine macrobenthos: further evaluation of the species abundance/biomass method. *Mar. Biol.* 95: 193-200.
- WARWICK, R.M., J.D. GOSS-CUSTARD, R. KIRBY, C.L. GEORGE, N.D. POPE & A.A. ROWDEN, 1991. Static and dynamic environmental factors determining the community structure of estuarine macrobenthos in SW Britain: Why is the Severn estuary different? *J. Appl. Ecol.* 28: 329-345.
- WIDDOWS, J., M.D. BRINSLEY, P.N. SALKELD & C.H. LUCAS, subm. Influence of biota on spatial and temporal variation in sediment erodability and material flux on a tidal flat (Westerschelde estuary).
- WIENS, J.A., 1989. Spatial scaling in ecology. *Funct. Ecol.* 3: 385-397.
- WILDISH, D.J. AND D.D. KRISTMANSON, 1979. Tidal energy and sublittoral macrobenthic animals in estuaries. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* 6: 1197-1206.
- WILDISH, D.J. & D.D. KRISTMANSON, 1997. Benthic suspension feeders and flow. Cambridge University Press. Cambridge, 409 pp.
- WILKINSON, L., 1990. SYSTAT: The System for Statistics, Evanston, IL: SYSTAT, Inc., 1990.
- WILSON, W.H., 1991. Competition and predation in marine soft-sediment communities. *Ann. Rev. Ecol. Syst.* 21: 221-241.
- WILSON, J.G., I. LAWLER & L. CURRAN, 1993. Jeep92 Final Report on the Shannon estuary. Trinity College, Dublin, 26 pp.
- WOLFF, W.J., 1969. Distribution of non-breeding waders in an estuarine area in relation to the distribution of their food organisms. *Ardea* 57:1-28.
- WOLFF, W.J., 1971. Distribution of four species of *Nephtys* (Polychaeta) in the estuarine area of the rivers Rhine, Meuse and Scheldt. *Troisième Symposium Européen de Biologie Marine. Vie et Milieu, supplément* 22: 677-699.
- WOLFF, W.J., 1973. The estuary as a habitat. An analysis of data on the soft-bottom macrofauna of the estuarine area of the Rivers Rhine, Meuse and Scheldt. *Zool. Verhand., Leiden*, 126, 242 pp.
- WOLFF, W.J., 1983. Estuarine benthos. In: KETCHUM, B.H., Ed., *Ecosystems of the World, Estuaries and Enclosed Seas* edn, Vol 26. Elsevier, Amsterdam, p 337-374.
- WOLLAST, R., 1988. The Scheldt Estuary. In: W. SALOMONS et al., Eds., *Pollution of the North Sea: an assessment*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, p. 183-193.
- WOLLAST, R., & J.J. PETERS, 1978. Biogeochemical properties of an estuarine ecosystem: the river Scheldt. In: E. GOLDBERG, Ed., *Biogeochemistry of estuarine sediments*. Unesco, Paris, pp. 279-293.
- WOLLAST, R. & A. MARIJNS, 1981. Evaluation des contributions de différentes sources de matières en suspension à l'envasement de l'Escaut. Final report to the Ministry of Public Health and Environment, 152pp.
- YALLOP, M.L., B. DE WINDER, D.M. PATERSON & L.J. STAL, 1994. Comparative structure, primary production and biogenic stabilization of cohesive and non-cohesive marine sediments inhabited by microphytobenthos. *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.* 39: 565-582.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1991. The macrozoobenthos of the Westerschelde and Beneden-Zeeschelde. University of Gent, Report W.W.E. 12, 184 pp. (in Dutch).
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1993. The occurrence of the macrozoobenthos in the littoral zone of the Schelde and Ems estuary in relation to salinity and sediment characteristics. Report Institute of Nature Conservation IN 93.08, 95 pp. (in Dutch).
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, 1998. Macrobenthic populations along the estuarine gradient of the Schelde estuary: role of the abiotic (natural and human) environment. Report Institute of Nature Conservation 98.35, Brussel, Belgium, 223 pp.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1999. Macrobenthos of the Schelde estuary: predicting macrobenthic species responses in the estuarine environment. A statistical analysis of the Schelde estuary macrobenthos within the ECOFLAT project. Report Institute of Nature Conservation IN 99/19. Brussel, Belgium.
- YSEBAERT, T., L. DE NEVE & P. MEIRE, 2000. The subtidal macrobenthos in the mesohaline part of the Schelde estuary (Belgium): influenced by man? *J. Mar. Biol. Assoc. UK*, in press.
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, D. MAES & J. BUIJS, 1993. The benthic macrofauna along the estuarine gradient of the Schelde estuary. *Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol.* 27(2-4): 327-341.
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, J. COOSEN & K. ESSINK, 1998A. Zonation of intertidal macrobenthos in the estuaries of Schelde and Ems. *Aquat. Ecol.* 32: 53-71.
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, M. DE BLOCK, N. DE REGGE & J. SOORS, 1996. First record of *Marenzelleria viridis* (Verrill, 1873) (Polychaeta, Spionidae) in the Schelde estuary (Belgium). *Biologisch Jaarboek Dodonea* 64: 176-181.
- YSEBAERT, T., K. DEVOS, A. ANSELIN, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1998B. Waterbirds along the Zeeschelde (Belgium) in 1995/96. Report Institute of Nature Conservation 98/16, Brussel. (in Dutch with English summary).
- YSEBAERT, T., K. DEVOS, A. ANSELIN, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1999. Waterbirds along the Zeeschelde (Belgium) in 1996/97. Report Institute of Nature Conservation 99/10, Brussel. (in Dutch with English summary).



- ZAJAC, R.N. & R.B. WHITLATCH, 1982A. Responses of estuarine infauna to disturbance. II. Spatial and temporal variation of initial recolonization. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 10: 1-14.
- ZAJAC, R.N. & R.B. WHITLATCH, 1982B. Responses of estuarine infauna to disturbance. I. Spatial and temporal variation of succession. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 10: 15-27.
- ZAJAC, R.N. & R.B. WHITLATCH, 1985. A hierarchical approach to modelling soft-bottom successional dynamics. In: GIBBS, P.E., Ed., Proceedings of the 19th EMBS 1984. Cambridge University Press, pp. 265-276.
- ZWARTS, L., 1976. Density-related processes in feeding dispersion and feeding activity of Teal (*Anas crecca*). Ardea 64: 192-209.
- ZWARTS, L., 1997. Waders and their estuarine food supplies. Phd. Thesis State University, Groningen, The Netherlands.
- ZWARTS, L. & J. WANINK, 1989. Siphon size and burying depth in deposit-and suspension feeding benthic bivalves. Mar. Biol. 100: 227-240.
- ZWARTS, L. & A.-M. BLOMERT, 1992. Why knot *Calidris canutus* take medium-sized *Macoma balthica* when six prey species are available. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 83: 113-128.
- ZWOLSMAN, J.J.G., 1999. Geochemistry of trace metals in the Scheldt estuary. Geologica Ultraiectina, Mededelingen van de Faculteit Aardwetenschappen, Universiteit Utrecht, 171, 183 pp.
- ZWOLSMAN, J.J.G. & G.T.M. VAN ECK, 1993. Dissolved and particulate trace metal geochemistry in the Scheldt estuary, S.W. Netherlands (water column and sediments). Neth. J. Aquat. Ecol. 27: 287-300.



List of reports of Tom Ysebaert related to the different topics of this thesis.

- ANSELIN A., N. BOONE, A. CLIQUET, K. DECLEER, K. DEVOS, E. KUIJKEN, P. MEIRE & T. YSEBAERT, 1999. De internationale status van natuurgebieden in Vlaanderen. In: KUIJKEN, E., Ed., *Natuurrapport 1999. Toestand van de natuur in Vlaanderen: cijfers voor het beleid*. Mededelingen van het Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 6, Brussel, pp. 95-112.
- DE NEVE, L., T. YSEBAERT, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1998. Het macrobenthos van het sublittoraal van de Beneden Zeeschelde (1996-1997). Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 98/17, Brussel.
- DEVOS, K., P. MEIRE, T. YSEBAERT & E. KUIJKEN, 1997. Watervogels in Vlaanderen tijdens het winterhalfjaar 1995-1996. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 97.19, Brussel.
- DEVOS, K., P. MEIRE, T. YSEBAERT & E. KUIJKEN, 1998. Watervogels in Vlaanderen tijdens het winterhalfjaar 1996-1997. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 98.27, Brussel.
- DEVOS, K., E. KUIJKEN, T. YSEBAERT & P. MEIRE, 1999. Trekvogels en overwinterende watervogels. In: KUIJKEN, E., Ed. *Natuurrapport 1999. Toestand van de natuur in Vlaanderen: cijfers voor het beleid*. Mededelingen van het Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 6, Brussel, pp. 52-59.
- FETTWEIS M., T. YSEBAERT, M. SAS & P. MEIRE, 1998. Hydraulisch-Sedimentologisch Onderzoek: Deelrapport 3: In situ metingen van de erosiegevoeligheid van slib in de Beneden Zeeschelde, Winter en zomercampagne. IMDC en IN rapport, I/RA/11128/98.005/WFE.
- FETTWEIS, M., T. YSEBAERT, M. SAS & P. MEIRE, 2000. Sedimentologische en Biologische Processen en de Erosiegevoeligheid van Cohesieve Sedimenten op enkele Slikken in de Beneden Zeeschelde. @WEL3-Water.
- MEIRE P., G. ROSSAERT, N. DE REGGE, T. YSEBAERT & E. KUIJKEN, 1992. Het Schelde-estuarium: Ecologische beschrijving en een visie op de toekomst. IN-Rapport nr. A 92.57, Instituut voor Natuurbehoud, Brussel, 150p.
- MEIRE, P., M. HOFFMANN & T. YSEBAERT, 1995. De Schelde, een stroom natuurtalent. Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap, Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 95.10, Brussel.
- PIETERS, T., C. STORM, T. WALHOUT & T. YSEBAERT, 1991. Het Schelde-estuarium, méér dan een vaarweg. Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren en Directie Zeeland. Nota GWW5-91.081, 135 pp.
- VAN DAMME, S., T. YSEBAERT, E. VAN DEN BERGH & P. MEIRE, 1999. Habitatstructuren, waterkwaliteit, en leefgemeenschappen in het Schelde-estuarium. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 99/24, Brussel.
- VAN DEN BERGH, E., T. YSEBAERT, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1998. Watervogels in de internationaal beschermde gebieden van de Beneden Zeeschelde: trends van 1980 tot 1997. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 98/18, Brussel.
- VAN DEN BERGH, E., P. MEIRE, M. HOFFMANN & T. YSEBAERT, 1999. Natuurherstelplan Zeeschelde. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 99.19, Brussel.
- VERHEYEN, R., P. MEIRE, A. SCHNEIDERS, C. WILS & T. YSEBAERT, 1991. Naar een ecologisch herstelplan voor de Schelde. *Water* 60: 195-203.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1990. Het macrozoöbenthos van het sublittoraal in het mariene deel van de Westerschelde (opname najaar 1988). Universiteit Gent, Laboratorium voor Ecologie der Dieren, Rapport W.W.E. 10.
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, K. DEVOS & J. SEYS, 1990. Het macrozoöbenthos van de Westerschelde t.h.v. de Platen van Valkenisse. Studie in opdracht van Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren en Directie Zeeland, Middelburg. Rijksuniversiteit Gent. Rapport W.W.E. 11.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1991. Het macrobenthos van de Westerschelde en Beneden Zeeschelde. Universiteit Gent, Laboratorium voor Ecologie der Dieren en Instituut voor Natuurbehoud, Hasselt Rapport WWE.12 en IN A92.085, 184 pp.
- YSEBAERT, T., N. DE REGGE & P. MEIRE, 1991. Het macrozoöbenthos op twee debietraaien in het oostelijk deel van de Westerschelde. Rijksuniversiteit Gent, Laboratorium voor Ecologie der Dieren. Rapport W.W.E. 24.
- YSEBAERT, T., D. MAES, N. DE REGGE & P. MEIRE, 1991. Het macrozoöbenthos op sedimentatie-erosieplots in het oostelijk deel van de Westerschelde. Studie in opdracht van Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren, Middelburg. Rijksuniversiteit Gent. Rapport W.W.E. 25.
- YSEBAERT, T., N. DE REGGE, D. MAES & P. MEIRE, 1991. Populatie dynamiek van macrozoöbenthos op sedimentatie/erosieplots in het oostelijk deel van de Westerschelde. Studie in opdracht van Rijkswaterstaat, Dienst Getijdewateren, Middelburg. Rijksuniversiteit Gent. Rapport W.W.E. 26.
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, D. MAES, J. BUIJS & N. DE REGGE, 1992. Het macrozoöbenthos in relatie tot de verontreinigingsgraad van sedimenten van de Westerschelde en Zeeschelde. Studie in opdracht van Rijkswaterstaat, Directie Zeeland, Middelburg. Rijksuniversiteit Gent. WWE-Rapport 31.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1993. Het voorkomen van macrozoöbenthos in de littorale zone van het Schelde- en Eems-estuarium in relatie tot zoutgradiënt en sedi-



- mentkenmerken. Rapport RUG-WWE nr. 29/Rapport IN 93.08, 110 pp.
- YSEBAERT, T., N. DEREGGE & P. MEIRE, 1993. Het macrozoöbenthos van de littorale en sublittorale zone in het oostelijk deel van de Westerschelde: presentatie van de biotische resultaten najaarsbemonstering 1990. Studie in opdracht van Rijkswaterstaat, Directie Zeeland. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud, Rapport I.N. 93.07 (WWE nr. 33).
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1993. The macrofauna of the Schelde and Ems estuaries: estuarine zonation and community structure. In: HERMAN P.M. & HEIP C., Eds, Report of the workshop held in Faro, jan 27-30, 1993. Jeep 92: Major biological processes in european tidal estuaries.
- YSEBAERT, T., R. SAMANYA, N. DE REGGE, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1993. Effekten van verontreiniging op macrozoöbenthosgemeenschappen in het Schelde-estuarium - Activiteitenverslag 1993. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud I.N. 93.10, Brussel.
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, N. DE REGGE & E. KUIJKEN, 1994. Effekten van verontreiniging op macrozoöbenthos-gemeenschappen in het Schelde-estuarium - Activiteitenverslag 1994. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud I.N. 94.22, Brussel.
- YSEBAERT, T., P. MEIRE, N. DE REGGE & E. KUIJKEN, 1995. Effekten van verontreiniging op macrozoöbenthos gemeenschappen in het Schelde-estuarium - Activiteitenverslag 1995. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud I.N. 93.17, Brussel.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1997. Watervogels nemen een hoge vlucht langs het Schelde-estuarium. Instituut voor Natuurbehoud, rapport IN.97.08.
- YSEBAERT, T., K. DEVOS, A. ANSELIN, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1998. Watervogels langs de Zeeschelde 1995/96. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 98/16, Brussel.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1998. Macrobenthic populations along the estuarine gradient of the Schelde estuary: role of the abiotic (natural and human) environment. Report Institute of Nature Conservation 98.35, Brussel, 223 pp.
- YSEBAERT, T., K. DEVOS, A. ANSELIN, P. MEIRE & E. KUIJKEN, 1999. Watervogels langs de Zeeschelde 1995/96. Rapport Instituut voor Natuurbehoud 99/10, Brussel.
- YSEBAERT, T. & P. MEIRE, 1999. Macrobenthos of the Schelde estuary: predicting macrobenthic species responses in the estuarine environment. A statistical analysis of the Schelde estuary macrobenthos within the ECOFLAT project. Report Institute of Nature Conservation, Brussel. Report IN 99.19.

Acknowledgements

This thesis could not have been accomplished without the co-operation and help of many people. First of all I would like to thank everyone who contributed to (parts of) this thesis. I also wish to thank my colleagues, both from the Institute as from collaborating institutes and universities, for their help at different stages of my work and for their good friendship. I am grateful to all former and present colleagues from the 'Schelde-group'. My special thanks go to Nico De Regge, who helped me from the beginning, as well as to Jan Soors and Patrick Geers, for their help with data collection and laboratory analyses.

I am extremely grateful to my promotor Patrick Meire, for his guidance and ever lasting optimism, for his encouragement and support throughout this study. I have very much appreciated our stimulating and intense discussions, both concerning « the work » and « life at large ».

The different projects, which form the basis of this thesis, were carried out at the University of Gent, Laboratory of Animal Ecology, Prof. Dr. H. Dumont (1988-1992) and at the Institute of Nature Conservation, Prof. Dr. E. Kuijken (1992 – present). Both institutes provided me excellent working facilities. Especially I wish to express my sincere gratitude to Eckhart Kuijken, my director, who encouraged me to finish this thesis.

The study was supported by the Dutch Rijkswaterstaat, Institute for Coastal and Marine Management (RIKZ) and Directorate Zeeland, by the Flemish Waterways and Maritime Affairs Administration (AWZ), and by projects within the Impulsprogramme in Marine Sciences 1992-1996 of the Belgian Federal Office for Scientific, Technical and Cultural Affairs (contract n° Ms/88/100) and within the Environment & Climate Programme of the European Commission (ECOFLAT-project ENV4-CT96-0216, being part of the European Land Ocean Interaction Studies ELOISE).

Thanks to my parents, family and friends, who always expressed their sincere interest in my work.

To Greet, Tim and Tess.



The Institute of Nature Conservation

The Institute of Nature Conservation is a scientific institution and part of the Ministry of the Flemish Community. The Institute has around 100 employees at the moment.

The Institute became operational on 1st March, 1986 with the following general task; 'to conduct all appropriate scientific studies, research and activities regarding the conservation of nature, in particular with a view to planning actions and determining scientific criteria for the policy of nature conservation. The Institute achieves this by collecting all useful documentation, undertaking all the necessary studies and research, organising surveys and assuring the flow of information to the responsible public bodies.

The research is mainly into with various aspects of biodiversity, in particular the inventory, monitoring and ecology of plant and animal species, population and communities in relation to their environment. In ecological research of the landscape particular attention is paid to ecohydrology, habitat fragmentation and ecosystem processes. The scientific knowledge base is used for reference works such as Red Lists of diverse taxonomic groups, maps of the natural environment (such as biological valuation maps) and area-specific actions regarding nature development, restoration and management. The aim is to ensure the inclusion of spatial and qualitative requirements for nature in the policies for ground use, spatial planning, integral water management and nature conservation. Applications include the determination of ecological networks and areas of international importance and plans for the protection of species.

The Institute is involved in various regional, national and international research programmes and networks. There is close cooperation with universities and other scientific institutes both in Belgium and abroad.

Advising is an important task of the Institute. The Institute offers advice both for the ministerial offices, the Flemish High Council for the Conservation of Nature, the Environment and Nature Council of Flanders, AMINAL, AHROM and other bodies of the Flemish Community.

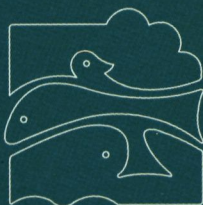
Third parties can commission research by the Institute. This can include specific studies, mapping and expertises, and can involve employing temporary staff.

The Institute of Nature Conservation publishes independent reports and information. The library offers a wide range of journals and reference works on the environment and nature. In addition to this, the Institute also makes information available through the Internet.

Address : Kliniekstraat 25, 1070 Brussels

Tel (+32) 02-558 18 11 Fax (+32)02-558 18 05

e-mail : info@instnat.be - website : <http://www.instnat.be>



Institute of Nature Conservation

Scientific institution of the Flemish Community

Kliniekstraat 25, B- 1070 Brussel, Belgium Tel: 32-2.558.18.11 Fax: 32-2.558.18.05 E-mail: info@instnat.be

Internet: <http://www.instnat.be>

De
Gr
BO

pla
au